

# NEIGHBORS

★★ *in Eurasia*



THE CATHOLIC GEOGRAPHY SERIES

Harold Mc Cormick

561

10 # 3





THE CATHOLIC GEOGRAPHY SERIES



# NEIGHBORS IN EURASIA

*Europe and Asia*

## AUTHORS

Frederick K. Branom

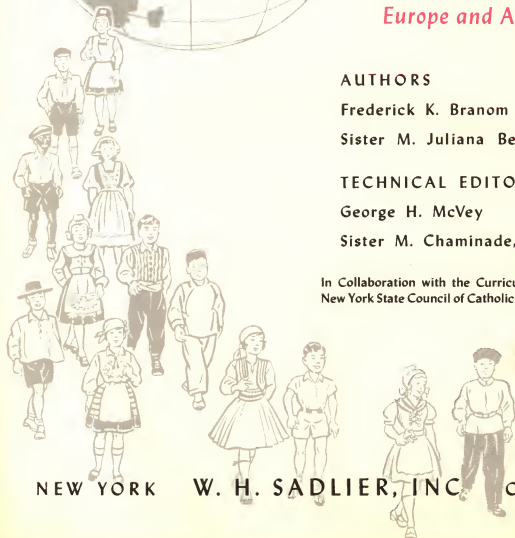
Sister M. Juliana Bedier, Maryknoll

## TECHNICAL EDITORS

George H. McVey

Sister M. Chaminade, Maryknoll

In Collaboration with the Curriculum Committee of the  
New York State Council of Catholic School Superintendents.



NEW YORK

W. H. SADLER, INC.

CHICAGO

## FOREWORD

The appearance of *The Catholic Geography Series* marks the end of a dream and the beginning of an era in Catholic education. The dream was first conceived in the mind of a great Catholic educator, the late Monsignor George Johnson. Into Catholic school systems of America the students of Dr. Johnson carried that dream. Fired by the zeal of their eminent teacher, they resolved that the Catholic schools of America should be dedicated to the development of those universal Christian principles which are the only adequate basis for universal peace among men.

In 1944 Dr. Johnson called to Washington representatives of Religious Communities engaged in mission activities. They met with a group of Catholic School Superintendents to discuss ways and means of introducing a more adequate treatment of the universal Missiology of the Church in the school curriculum. At this meeting a sub-committee was appointed to draw up objectives and a long term plan for achieving them. Within a few months the committee submitted its report. Prominent among the recommendations of this committee was one calling for a complete re-writing of geography courses and the publishing of a Catholic geography textbook. This was designed to show the Church at work in the world, and to study human beings in their spiritual and religious aspects as well as in their ability to produce economic and material wealth.

The publication of *The Catholic Geography Series* leads the way to the fulfillment of this great objective. It ushers in a new era in Catholic American education.

For too many years we imitated the public schools, adopting both their courses of study and their textbooks. While these texts may have never directly attacked the supernatural philosophy of life, they did ignore it. Our teachers, dependent upon such secular materials, were constantly forced to guard against the spread of Secularism among their own students. A positive Catholic approach has removed this danger.

*The Catholic Geography Series* does not neglect important geographic concepts and skills essential to a true knowledge of man's physical environment. It goes far beyond this. It stresses people: their struggle against natural environment and their dependency on one another in the overall effort to attain eternal happiness. It is Catholic in the sense that it points out the universal oneness of the human family. It stresses religious living and Catholic social living all over the world. It teaches an appreciation of natural resources as God's gift to man. Finally, it points out our responsibility for all our fellow men as members of the Mystical Body of Christ.

With such teaching in the Catholic schools of America our students will learn that Supernaturalism offers the only adequate basis for the establishment of world peace and world security. They will become Catholic in the broadest and most complete sense of that term. The Church, our Nation, and the World will be the better for their having lived.

REV. THOMAS J. QUIGLEY, Ph. D.

Superintendent of Schools, Pittsburgh, Pa.

# CONTENTS



## I. Near Neighbors 4

1. Eurasia, One Continuous Land Mass 6
2. The Peoples of Europe and Asia 10
3. Europe, A Small Continent 14
4. Asia, The Largest Continent 18

## II. Lands Where Our Civilization Began *Preview* 25

## III. European Lands Where Christianity Spread 40

1. How People Live and Work in Italy 40
2. The People of Spain and Portugal 55
3. France: Land and People 69
4. The People of Great Britain 85
5. How People Live and Work in Ireland 100
6. The People of Switzerland 110
7. Germany: Land and People 118
8. The People of the Benelux Countries 128
9. The People of Scandinavia 138
10. The People of Finland 148
11. How People Live and Work in Poland 154
12. The People of Czechoslovakia 157
13. Austria: Land and People 161
14. Hungary: Land and People 165
15. Life in the Balkan Countries 169
16. The Soviet Union: Land and People 184



## IV. Asia, Land of Many Cultures 199

1. How People Live in China 199
2. How People Live in Japan and Korea 218
3. The Peoples of Southeastern Asia 240
4. Life in India, Pakistan, and Ceylon 250
5. The Peoples of Southwestern Asia 267



A child and a girl are seen from behind, standing on a checkered floor and looking at a large mural. The mural depicts a spiral path of world travel, starting from the bottom left and winding upwards. Along the path, various modes of transport are shown: ancient canoes, horseback riders, early airplanes, and steamships. At the top of the spiral, a large industrial city with smokestacks is visible. The child is wearing a blue shirt and grey pants, and the girl is wearing a red dress. The mural is framed by a classical archway with decorative carvings.

## I. NEAR NEIGHBORS

During thousands of years in the past, the oceans of our globe separated the continents from each other. Men dared not venture far from land in their small canoes. Travel overland, on the continents, meant weary journeys on foot or horseback. Sometimes a distant land was settled by desperate tribes fleeing from enemies, or by hungry nomads in search of game and pastures. Once there, however, the families usually stayed "at home," because traveling back and forth was too difficult.

For hundreds of years, the people of Europe did not know that such lands as Australia and the Americas existed. When men built larger ships and harnessed the winds to make them move, sailors grew bolder and made longer voyages. The sea rovers of northern Europe sailed the Atlantic Ocean as far west as Greenland, and some of them landed on the coast of North America. South Sea islanders, expert seamen, probably came across the Pacific Ocean to Peru and Mexico in their great double canoes. However, the voyages were still long and dangerous.

Someone invented the mariner's compass, and European sailors began to use it. Then it was easier to go far out on the unmapped ocean and find the way back again. Columbus made his famous voyage, and after that the people in the "old world" began to learn more about the "new world." Soon ships were sailing around the earth, and regular trade lanes for shipping were set up. The oceans, which had been barriers for so long, then made travel easy and cheap. The American continents were settled by people from Europe, Asia, and Africa. The use of steam power brought the continents closer together in travel time, but ships still had to follow certain routes, governed by the shapes of oceans and lands, and the location of seaports and of ice-free harbors.

When the airplane came into use, a new "ocean"—the atmosphere—could be navigated. This sea of air spreads over the whole earth. Ships that sailed in it could take routes that did not depend on harbors or the shapes of continents. The airplane's great speed brought countries still closer together. Columbus took seventy-one days to reach the New World from Spain. *The Mayflower* spent sixty-six days at sea before the Pilgrims landed on Cape Cod. The Yankee Clippers, streamlined sailing vessels of a hundred years ago, made the voyage from New York to England in thirteen days. In 1927 Lindbergh flew from New York to Paris in thirty-three and one-half hours. Fifteen years later a United States bomber flew from Newfoundland to England in six hours and forty minutes. New records are made every year.

Only a few hours are needed now to make a journey to any part of the world, for good or ill. Men can carry medicines and food from one continent to another to help the stricken victims of earthquake, flood, famine, or plague. Men can carry the story of Christ to the jungles and the tundras. By undersea cables, messages are sent from continent to continent; and by radio, people can hear men talking on other continents. Thus we can learn to know and understand our neighbors in lands no longer far away.

We of the United States are now near neighbors to the peoples of the whole world. But near neighbors are not always the best friends; they are sometimes the worst enemies. We and all the peoples of the world can keep God's laws, if we will, and make wise arrangements to live together in justice and charity. If men choose evil, they will soon destroy one another. If men have the good will to try, they can set up God's kingdom on earth. The time has come. It is necessary to make up our minds now which way we will go.





## I. Eurasia, One Continuous Land Mass



AWAY BACK in the beginning of time, God created, out of nothing, the mysterious stuff that we call "matter." Out of it He made light and heat, fire, air, and water; rocks and metals; specks of dust and worlds. Into the vast darkness of space He flung millions of shining stars; He set them in motion and gave them laws to follow. One of the smaller of those stars God made specially for us. It is a sun with several dark globes floating around it. God chose a certain one of those dark globes, and fitted it out to be our home, the planet earth. For millions of years the

earth has gone whirling its way in a "lopsided circle" around the sun which lights and warms it.

**The beginning of a continent.** At first the earth was entirely covered with water. Then the Creator raised up a body of land and gathered the waters together into one place. Around the whole planet lay a thick envelope made up of a mixture of gases which we call air or atmosphere. It is likely that the mass of land was at first all in one piece—a great world island, surrounded by one tremendous ocean. Moved by the forces that God built into all matter, changes constantly took place.

At times great glaciers covered the earth with ice and snow. Then, the climate grew warmer and the ice melted; tropical plants flourished and animals roamed the land for thousands of years. Rains and melting polar ice caps raised the level of the ocean, so that much of the land was flooded. In some places movements within the earth caused great bodies of land to sink beneath the water. In other places the ocean floor was pushed up out of the sea. Parts of the land were separated from the "heart land," and the continents found their places as we know them. The earth's surface crinkled and rose in great folds, making the mountains. Many rivers and lakes were formed. Wind, rain, frost, and heat tore away at the rocks, leveling mountains into hills and lowlands. So we see the earth as it is today.

**Eurasia's place in the world.** Even now, if we look down upon a globe from above the north pole, we can see the huge land mass that we call "Europe and Asia," or Eurasia, with Africa still attached to it by a narrow isthmus. The Americas are barely separated from it, with Antarctica dangling out of sight beyond the tip of South America. Australia, once connected with the

*O Lord my God, thou art exceedingly great. Thou hast put on praise and beauty: and art clothed with light as with a garment. Who stretchest out the heaven like a pavilion. . . .*

THE BIBLE

Eurasian continent, lies separated now; and thousands of small islands show only the tops of lost mountains, now under water.

**Life on the earth.** One day during the changing ages, a wonderful thing happened. Life came to our dead planet of water and land. God created plants, probably very simple ones at first. He brought them on through different stages until the earth had its living green carpet: grass and trees, ferns and roses, desert cacti, and reindeer moss growing under snow. Air, water, minerals, heat, and light were all just right to keep this precious life safe on the earth. God saw to that. As time went by, He added to His creation, drawing living matter out into ever-more-beautiful forms. Fishes, birds, and beasts filled ocean and forest with motion and sound. Finally there came a day when a wonderful new creature stood up, thought, laughed, and spoke. He was made in God's own image. He could plan and decide, and reason, and choose between good and evil. He knew God, his Creator, and spoke to Him. Earth had a new being walking upon its green meadows; the new being was man.

#### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

On the classroom globe find answers to the following questions.

1. Is Eurasia in the Eastern Hemisphere or the Western Hemisphere?
2. How does Europe compare in size with Asia? with the other continents?
3. Which continents are entirely north of the equator? entirely south of it? Which does the equator cross?
4. Find the four great oceans. What continents does each separate?

ATLANTIC OCEAN

ARCTIC

MEDITERRANEAN SEA

EUROPE

ASIA

## EURASIA



Farm land  
and pasture



Desert



Tundra  
(frozen swamp)



Forest



INDIAN OCEAN



OCEAN

### EUROPE

Area: 3,750,000 square miles

Population: 420,000,000



Each figure stands  
for 50,000,000 people

### ASIA

Area: 17,000,000 square miles

Population: 1,270,000,000



Each figure stands  
for 50,000,000 people

PACIFIC OCEAN

### NORTH AMERICA

Area: 9,028,716 square miles

Population: 206,410,000



Each figure stands  
for 50,000,000 people

## 2. The Peoples of Europe and Asia



It is believed that Adam's first home, the earthly paradise, was in south-western Asia. After Adam sinned and was banished from the Garden of Eden, his descendants made their living in lands close at hand. Southern Eurasia had soil, climate, mountains, and rivers all well fitted to make a good home for man. Here in warm, fruitful valleys earth's first civilization began and developed. Only after a long time did men move north to colder lands, after they had learned to build and keep fires, to heat their houses, and to store food for winter months. Civilization began in warm countries.

**Early days of men on the earth.** Somewhere near the place where Europe and Asia meet, the early human families looked out upon the earth and called it home. They were simple people, who gathered seeds and fruit from wild plants and killed small animals for food. Fire, started perhaps by lightning, was captured by them, and put to use. Later, men learned to make fire by rubbing dry sticks together. The earth was wide and fruitful. Not much shelter and clothing were needed in the warm climate. Money and machinery would have seemed useless to those unhurried folk. In each family, the father was the head, and the mother was his helpmate. The people knew and worshiped God, their Creator. However, they were not perfectly happy, for their fore-



English Phyllis rides her bicycle. Her home is in Europe. Chinese Ah Sam lives in Asia.

father Adam had sinned against God. All men inherited Adam's sin and his punishment.

The sons of men multiplied and spread farther over the earth. Some members of the human family were the descendants of Adam's son Cain, the murderer. Possibly they were the owners of those strange bones sometimes found deep in the earth; bones of short, squatty men with powerful jaws and with bony ridges over their eyes. Ages ago those men disappeared from the earth, perhaps by God's punishment in the great flood. Man as we know him today was left to re-people the world.

**Different races.** The people of early days differed from one another, just as people do today, and children of each family took after their parents. Some were tall; some short. Some were strong; some weak. Some were timid; some fierce. Some were light in color; some darker. As families drifted away to farther parts of the earth, their descendants grew more unlike the families that were left behind. Various kinds of food and drinking water, more or less sunshine, and different habits of living caused still greater changes in men's looks. In time some parts of the earth were inhabited by dark-skinned

people of the black race, and some parts by lighter people of the white race. However, most of the human family was and still is yellow or brown. All of this happened according to God's plans, and all the people were His beloved children.

**The hunters' civilization.** Some men learned to make spears and arrows, and began to kill big animals. Tribes banded together for hunting. They grew fierce and warlike; killing game or men was the important thing with them. The dog, the oldest domestic animal, became man's adopted friend, and began to live in man's simple shelter and to eat the left-overs from the family meals. Many of the hunters lived in what is now the Sahara. There was no desert in northern Africa in those days, only a vast grassland filled with game. Other hunting tribes migrated into far parts of Europe and Asia. Small, timid peoples fled away from the fierce hunters to the farthest ends of the earth and into the deep forest.

Each tribe was ruled by a chief, who decided how and where to look for game. When hunting was poor, the tribe went hungry; when a big kill was made, everybody gorged. Women were looked down upon as of little use. People no longer lived a virtuous family life. They began to worship devils and the "spirits of animals" instead of God. Men made statues and drawings of the animals they hunted, and composed songs to be sung for good luck in hunting. So art and music were born; and also the worship of idols, and the use of spells and magic.

**The peasants' civilization.** Not all of the people on earth lived by hunting. Some learned to plant the wild seeds and roots they had gathered for food. They pulled the weeds and watched the little patches of grain and vegetables until harvest time. It

was no longer necessary to wander through the grasslands in search of game or wild seeds, so the tribes chose good places to settle, and then cultivated the fields. The wild pigs began to live near the houses of men, to eat up the left-overs of human food. The water buffaloes of the swamps were tamed and used for plowing. These animals could easily be butchered and eaten as food. Men still did some hunting and fishing where wild life was plentiful, and women were the farmers and gardeners. The women also made baskets, and, later on, clay pots to store food supplies. The hunters' life of starving and gorging was not the peasants' way.

The skirt or tunic was the dress of both men and women of the peasant civilization. Women were important: they were the cultivators; they worked with the fruitful soil to feed their families. Later, the men, too, began to till the fields and raise crops. The peasants were peaceful people, except when invading tribes threatened their lands. Then they would fight like cornered tigers. In time the peasant peoples fell away from the worship of the Creator. True, they remembered Him dimly as the great Father in heaven. But the devils seemed nearer at hand, to give good weather and to keep away floods, droughts, and plant diseases. A man could easily worship the evil spirits without troubling himself to lead a good life. The people, therefore, feared and honored demons instead of God.

The peasant peoples spread out into the more fertile parts of Asia. East they went overland, crossing that continent, finally making their way over narrow waterways into America; other groups drifted west and south into Africa. On the African continent a great civilization of farmers grew up along the Nile River, on a strip of land called

Egypt. The peasant life also spread into Europe, reaching the basin of the Danube River and the shores of the Mediterranean Sea.

Peasant people lived close together in large numbers; new ideas quickly passed from one to another. Someone began to make clay pots on a revolving wheel, and this wheel may have been the first on earth. Little did that early potter dream of the wheels that would be used later, on carts, wagons, and war chariots, in grist mills and hydroelectric plants, on automobiles, airplanes, and a million factory machines. Clay seals with designs, first made and used by the potters, grew into a system of writing. Words were written on clay bricks, which were then baked until hard. Some records were carved into stone. Written history had begun. Later the skins of animals and the reeds that grew along the river banks were

12

made into sheets that could be written on with ink. Exact learning could now be kept for later ages and also carried far and wide.

**The herdsmen's civilization.** In some places where the grasslands were plentiful, a third type of civilization grew up. This was the herdsmen's civilization, and it spread far over Asia. People kept herds of animals and followed them from pasture to pasture, living on the meat and dairy products from their herds, using their hair and skins for tents and clothing. In the north, nomad families followed their great herds of reindeer. In other places, sheep and goats, camels and donkeys lived on grassy pastures, and the people used the animals for food and some of the other necessities of life. The herders formed great families or clans, in which all members were related. Fierce wars between clans took place. Quarrels arose over pastures and water holes; there were cattle raids and family feuds.

Money began to be used for trade, first in the form of animals. The word "capital," from "caput," Latin for head, still means money; and "cattle" comes from the same word. We still say a man has so many "head" of cattle or horses. Men who had bad luck with their herds went to work for richer families, so in time there were masters and servants, owners and wage earners. It was among the nomad herders that men began to ride horses, and trousers came into use as part of man's attire.

**Those who remembered.** Among the herdsmen, with their free outdoor life and

These children live in Asia. Kim Maria is a Korean.



Ali of hot, dry Arabia enjoys some water.



Radi of India has jewelry of thin gold.



The island boy holds a big bat which he caught.



These children live in Europe. Ludmila is Russian.



Claude and Georges are French schoolboys at a summer camp.

Luigi lives in the sunny land of Italy.



Gertrud lives on a farm in Germany. John and Michael are Irish.



long hours of quiet and loneliness under the stars, the sharp memory of God stayed pure and clear, longer than it did among the hunters or the peasant civilization. One tribe of herders grew into a nation under God's special guidance. Those people were the Jews, the descendants of a rich herder named Abraham, and the home God gave them was the land of Palestine. There they finally settled into a mixed civilization of herding, farming, and fishing (which is a type of hunting). They were never very rich or powerful, but they were to have the greatest effect of any nation upon the history of the world.

Prosperous, civilized states grew up around Abraham's descendants, near the Mediterranean Sea and in Asia's far east. Men there grew very clever; they had learned how to dig metals from the earth and make them into tools. They were artists, poets, rulers of nations, conquerors, traders, merchants. However, under all the glitter of their civilization was something cruel and horrible. This was the result of Adam's sin. Many lived upon wealth made by the blood and sweat of slaves. Most men led evil lives, and they worshiped devils instead of God. Nearly all the peoples of the earth seem at some time to have lowered their human dignity by bowing down to devils. This devil worship has been done in many ways, but it has always been dark and cruel and evil.

Often it has led to murder, the sacrifice of human victims, and even to the eating of human flesh. However, while the rest of the world neglected its dimly-remembered Creator, the Jews of Palestine kept alive the worship of the One God.

#### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

##### Learning From Pictures and Maps

The pictures on pages 12 and 13 show children who live in different countries of Europe and Asia. Use the map of Eurasia on pages 182 and 183 to find the places where they live. Copy the following table and complete it.

Name	Country	Continent
Ali		
Claude		
Luigi		
Radi		
Gertrud		
Michael		
Kim Maria		



### 3. Europe, A Small Continent

Ages ago, men called the eastern part of one great land mass "Asia," which probably means "sunrise"; and the western part "Europe" or "sunset." Europe is really a peninsula on the edge of Asia. It is the smallest of the continents, except Australia. The boundary between Europe and Asia is not very definite, but it is a real boundary. On either side of the line, some different plants, animals, and trees are found. The people of Europe look different from those of Asia, and often their ways of living are not the same. Europe "faces the Atlantic Ocean," while Asia "faces the Pacific."

**A rich and pleasant land.** Most of Europe lies in the comfortable North Temperate Zone, and it is almost surrounded by warm seas. Even though part of this happy continent reaches within the Arctic Circle, winds from a warm ocean current close to the northwestern coast keep harbors ice-free and the climate mild. Though Europe is small, its irregular shape gives it an enormous coast line and many excellent harbors. There are mountains, high and rugged or low and rounded, to give variety to the climate, crops, and living conditions. The main mountain ranges do not run north and south, as do our Rockies. They run roughly east and west, so the warm westerlies, moist breezes from the ocean, are not shut out from the interior of the continent. As the air moves eastward, it loses more and more of its moisture, so eastern Europe is drier than the western area. However, enough rains reach nearly every part to make crops thrive. Europe has no large hot deserts.

Inland seas and lakes are numerous. Mighty rivers cover Europe with a network of deep streams flowing north, south, east, or west. Water power is plentiful. Water-

falls and rapids are few in the large rivers, so they are easily navigable. For long ages, peoples have used these rivers for trade and travel. The islands and peninsulas of Europe are part of the continent's natural wealth. Many of them are blessed with mild climate and all their people can live close to the fertile sea.

**The first families of Europe.** Europe was practically next door to the first home of mankind. Migrating families soon found it, and settled in the fertile lands along the seas, lakes, and rivers. From time to time, new waves of immigrants came out of Asia, overran parts of Europe, and settled down. There were some squabbles over lands and boundaries, and some wars between tribes; but otherwise, each little group lived in its own section without much communication with other peoples. So it came to pass that each tribe had its own language, dress, and customs, which, as time went on, differed more and more from those of other peoples.

**Roman civilization.** The warm, sunny lands around the great inland sea, the Mediterranean, were thickly settled with people who practiced both herding and farming. People lived close enough together to exchange ideas, and life was rather easy, so they had time to study, to read and write, to build up sciences, and to practice arts. The people of Greece led in many of these arts and sciences. However, in time, the small nation of Rome seemed to stand out more than all the rest. The Romans learned all that the Greeks and other peoples could teach them, and they had something else besides. They built up a fine army that few enemies could conquer, and they had a wonderful skill in keeping law and order.

The Roman army conquered most of the

civilized nations around the Mediterranean Sea. To the north, where Germany, France, England, and other European nations are now, tribes of barbarians lived in the forests. Rome conquered many of those wild tribes, built forts, and left officers with a garrison of Roman soldiers in each place. Roman law and Roman order, kept in force by the Roman army, prevented many wars and raids between tribes. Inside the great Roman Empire were peace and prosperity. It was a great honor to be a Roman soldier, and many men from conquered tribes joined the army. In time even the commanders of the armies in many conquered districts were natives who came to be called "kings." Such native kings were subject to the Emperor of Rome. The Roman soldiers settled down, taught their Latin language and civilized ways to the tribesmen, and married native women. As a result, wild barbarians gradually grew to be civilized peoples within the great Roman Empire. Most of them did not know how to read or write their own languages. Those who learned usually learned Latin, and Latin was the language of the educated. Books were written in Latin, or they were not written at all.

15

Ruins of the Parthenon, an ancient pagan temple of great beauty, may still be seen in Greece. The glorious Catholic cathedral is in Amiens, France.



**The failure of pagan Rome.** As the Roman Empire spread ever farther over the world, the Romans themselves grew powerful and rich. Taxes were collected from all their conquered peoples, and prisoners taken in battle were kept as slaves to do the work. Slaves labored on the Roman plantations and in the great houses. Masters and mistresses grew ever more fat and lazy, more luxury-loving and idle. God does not send many children to such people. In time there were few young Romans to enter the army and keep up its strength. More warlike tribes from Asia were pouring into Europe. Gradually the power of Rome was weakening, and the nations of the empire no longer held together. Europe would have fallen apart, and Roman civilization would have been lost, except for one thing. That one thing was very bright and clear and solid: it was the Catholic Church.



## EUROPE Center of Christian Culture



At the seacoast.



A great waterway.



Europe is about two fifths as large as North America, but it has twice as many people. It is a thickly settled continent.

**The Church saves civilization.** Christ was born in part of the Roman Empire, and He lived all His life in a country occupied by the Roman army. It was a Roman governor who sentenced Him to death. Saint Peter, the first Pope, moved to Rome a few years after Christ left this earth for heaven. Rome, the capital of the empire, has been since that time the center and capital of the Church.

Christians were few at first, but the Church grew very fast. Much of the time it had to stay hidden, for the pagan Roman Emperors persecuted the Christians and killed many. The civilization of pagan Rome had made life very easy for Roman citizens. They had reached about as high as a man

could get, without God. But men found that their hearts were not satisfied. Empty souls, hungry for truth, flocked to the Church and found happiness in Christ. The poor and the slaves learned that God cared for them, and that they had souls to save. The rich discovered joy in Christian living and self-denial. All were taught that slaves and masters were equal before God. Christian converts often set their slaves free. Not only in Rome but also in the Roman garrison towns of France, Germany, and England, little groups of Christians began to form, led by their bishops. While the pagan society of Rome was slipping into decay, there was a sound core of Christianity inside. The Church grew up within that society and



PEOPLE OF EUROPE



PEOPLE OF  
NORTH AMERICA



EACH FIGURE STANDS FOR 50,000,000 PEOPLE



On the great central plain.



In the mountains.

made it over. What was good in Roman civilization was saved for future ages, and it was the Church that saved it.

Many times the civilization of Europe has been in danger. We shall learn more about these things as we study the different countries. Europe concerns us Americans closely because our culture, our learning, and most of our forefathers came from there. Europeans led the world's affairs for two thousand years. Until late years much of the world was under the control of Europeans or their descendants. Their customs, their laws, and their ways of thinking are those of Roman civilization united with Christianity. Europe is the place where the Church grew from a tiny beginning. From

there, the great Church Universal, the Church Catholic, reached out to the whole world.

#### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Complete each sentence by choosing the correct ending.

1. Most of Europe is located in the (Temperate, Torrid, Frigid) Zone.
2. Europe is larger than (Asia, North America, Australia).
3. The continent of Europe has (a short, an irregular, a regular) coast line.
4. Roman civilization was saved by (the Greeks, the Catholic Church, high taxes).
5. The population of Europe is (about the same as, greater than, smaller than) that of North America.



A Chinese peasant hoes his soil. Neat, water-covered rice fields fill the land.

Asia, the largest continent, is the place where more than half of the earth's people live. It reaches from the frozen seas within the Arctic Circle to the tropical waters near the equator. It is a continent of great contrasts. Within its boundaries are the coldest spot on earth, in northern Siberia; the rainiest spot, in the jungles of India; and a very hot spot, in the sun-baked deserts of Arabia. The continent is so large that much

#### 4. Asia, The Largest Continent

of it is far from the sea; hence great regions have what is called a continental climate, with extremes of heat in summer and cold in winter. In Asia are the most closely cultivated farm lands in the world. Millions of people in China and India live crowded close together with an acre or two of rice land per family. On the other hand, the deserts of Arabia and Mongolia, the steppes (grassy plains) of Siberia, the Arctic tundras, and the tops of the high mountains support few people.

**Everything on a big scale.** Across the Eurasian land mass, from Spain to China, lies a great fold in the earth, making mountain ranges that extend, with little interruption for many thousands of miles. In Asia, between India and China, the mountains are the highest on earth. They are the Himalayas, and their name means "Abode of Snow." The passes in the Himalayan peaks reach a height of 16,000 feet, higher than many mountain tops in other lands. The Himalayas have forty peaks more than 22,000 feet high, and at least one peak over 29,000 feet (five and a half miles).

The highest region in the world is in south central Asia; there several million people live and work all their lives on the snowy, stormswept plains of Tibet, 15,000 feet and more above sea level. There the temperature often reaches thirty degrees below zero—yet Tibet lies farther south than the warm Mediterranean island of Sicily, with its oranges and figs. It is interesting to recall here that Mount Whitney, the highest mountain in the United States, reaches only 14,501 feet and has seldom been climbed. The lowest point on the earth's surface also lies in Asia: the basin of the Dead Sea, in Palestine, is 1,300 feet below sea level.

Asia seems to be made on a gigantic scale. Its rivers are many and mighty. Its Lake Baikal is over a mile deep—the deepest known lake in the world. Its grassy plains are of tremendous size.

**Barriers to trade and travel.** The Sahara, the great desert of Africa, may be said to extend into Asia after an interruption by seas and mountains. In Asia it becomes the Great Sandy and Gobi deserts, two of the world's great waste spaces, plagued by extreme heat and cold, wind and dust. Deserts and mountains form barriers difficult for man or beast to cross. Travel overland is often hard and dangerous. In eastern Asia great nations grew up, with customs quite different from those of peoples living farther west. The old civilizations of China, Japan, India, and the Asiatic islands remained almost unknown to Europeans for many ages. However, traders' caravans did make the difficult journey, and in time sea-going craft were built big and strong enough for long voyages. Then the riches of Asia and the clever work of Asiatic craftsmen became better known in Europe, and commerce grew. Regular trade routes were set up between the continents.

Much of Asia's wealth is due to the islands that lie like a fringe along its shores. On these islands lived many peoples, both civilized and savage, whom Europeans set out to trade with or to conquer. The people of Asia have had great effect upon modern civilization. While making a voyage to reach part of Asia—the East Indies—Christopher Columbus stumbled upon a *strange continent that lay in his way*.

**Cradle of civilization.** From Asia, the first home of the human race, came the very beginnings of our civilization. The science of medicine, and the study of the stars, of arithmetic, and of building, all began among

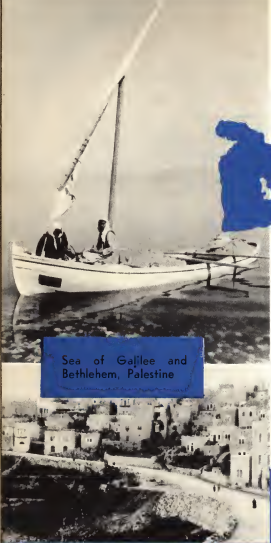
the people of the land between the Tigris and the Euphrates rivers, in what is now Iraq. Thousands of years later, the Greeks and Romans of Europe inherited this body of learning and improved on it, just as we are still doing.

Men have been coming out of Asia since early days on earth. Before history was written, men from Asia peopled the fertile valleys of Europe and the huge grasslands of Africa, the tropical islands of the South Seas, and the distant continents of the Americas. With them they brought their arts and sciences, as well as many useful animals and plants. The dog, the cat, the cow, the horse, the sheep, the hog, the hen, many vegetables and fruits, as well as the rose, the lily, and numerous other garden flowers, came from Asia.



A camel driver leads his herd across the hot, dry sands of Asia's great desert. The Himalayas, near the border of India, tower high above the clouds.





Asia is almost twice the size of North America, with six times as many people. It is almost five times as large as Europe, and has twice as many people as Europe and North America put together.

## ASIA Land of Ancient Civilizations



**Home of Christ and cradle of the Church.** In Asia on the Mediterranean coast is the place where the One God was best remembered and worshiped. There God made His promises to His few friends, gave them His commandments, and inspired them to write down His messages to men. There, in the little strip of land that is now Israel, Jesus Christ, the Son of God, was born. There He died to redeem men. There He set up the framework of His great kingdom, the Church. There He gave the Church its orders—to bring together all God's scattered human creatures, who had forgotten Him. Out of Asia to Rome, and thence to the whole world, spread the Church of Christ.

### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

#### Explaining Why

1. Explain why Asia has such a great variety of climate.
2. Explain why transportation across Asia is difficult.

#### Test Yourself

- Complete each sentence by choosing the correct ending.
1. The largest continent is (North America, Europe, Asia).
  2. The continent with the largest population is (Europe, Asia, North America).
  3. The highest mountains in the world are in (Europe, Asia, North America).



## Salt Water

Three quarters of our globe is covered with salt water. The continents are only masses of land in this vast ocean, often called "the sea." This watery part of God's world is in itself a world filled with living creatures. The pulling force of the sun and the moon draws up millions of tons of sea water into great tides. Every twelve hours these tides rise and swell in a flood along the shores of continents, then quietly ebb away. Breezes raise white-capped waves on the blue surface of the sea, and storms lash it into foaming, watery mountains.

Slow streams, called currents, flow constantly through the ocean. Warm currents flow through cold waters, and cold currents through warm waters, bringing warm climate or cold to the shores of the continents they approach. Because water heats and cools more slowly than land, the great bodies of water temper the climate of our earth. Without the neighboring oceans, continents would be barren deserts lacking rainfall; and the days would be almost boiling hot and the nights too cold for any living being.

The ocean floor is not level, but made up of mountains and plains, valleys and canyons. The ocean teems with life, ranging in size from creatures too small to be seen by the naked eye to the largest of all animals, the whale. The coral polyp builds islands with its bony skeleton, growing up from the ocean floor in warm, shallow waters. Even cold, deep waters where the sun never shines are full of life. Scientists have dared to go down into those depths in strong steel shells which held up the pressure of thousands of tons of water overhead. Through a heavy glass window, the lone watcher, shivering with cold, may see the dark underwater world a-glitter with lights like a city street with neon signs. The deep-sea fishes swim unharmed under water so heavy a man would be crushed; and, like fireflies, they carry their own light with them.

The sea washes all the shores of the world, giving up level plains to be used by man, and receiving old continents and islands into its depths. Into it all waters flow, and from it come all our rains and moisture-bearing winds. It is the life-giving water that enfolds our world, a sign of God's mercy and wisdom.

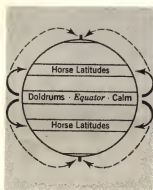


# OUR PLANET'S AIR-CONDITIONING SYSTEM

1 The earth's surface, warmed by the sun's rays, acts like a great stove, heating the air. In the zone near the equator, the sun shines more directly than it

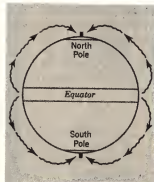


does in other zones. The air grows hot, is forced upward, cools, and forms moisture as it condenses. Rain falls almost daily in tropical countries. An area of rising air is a "low pressure" area, with few steady winds. Sailors used to dread these calms which they called "the doldrums."

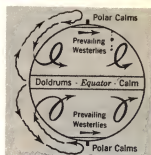


4 Not all of the heated air that overflows from the equator reaches the poles. Around the thirtieth parallels, much of it sinks earthward, to flow again toward the equator. Where this cool, dry air sinks on either side of the equator, there extends a high pressure belt called "horse latitudes." Here the weather is calm and clear, and rainfall is scanty. Here, too, lie some of the world's great deserts.

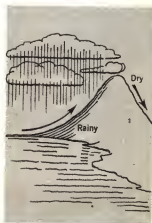
2 High up above the earth, in cold altitudes, the air, pushed on by warm air rising from the equator, moves away from the tropics towards the poles. There it grows cooler and heavier, and sinks down toward the earth. These regions of sinking air, called high pressure areas, make calm, clear, dry weather at the poles.



5 From the horse latitudes the winds blow along the earth towards the belt of equatorial calms, but they do not blow straight toward their goal. The earth is always turning toward the east; therefore, the winds are swept aside from a north-or-south direction. North of the equator they blow from the northeast; south of the equator, from the southeast. Sailors and airmen rely on these steady, dependable "trade winds."



3 This cold, heavy air then begins to blow away from the poles, along the surface of the earth. Higher up, the warm currents of air are still coming toward the poles. Where the cold polar air meets the warmer air, whirls develop and bring a succession of storms and clear weather, dry spells and moderate rains to the temperate lands. They move, generally, from the west, forced along by the winds, called "prevailing westerlies."



6 High mountains, continents, and great bodies of water cause local changes in this world pattern of wind and water. By this system, heat and cold, moisture, cleansing storms, and cool, fresh air are distributed for our well being. Without it, we could not live. The great Architect planned His system well.

## For My Geography Notebook

### Questions for Review

#### A

1. Mention some things that kept families of ancient times from traveling great distances. 2. What invention made it possible for sailors to cross the great oceans? 3. How did the invention of the steam engine help to bring about the settlement of the American continents? 4. Mention at least three ways in which the airplane has made it possible for us to aid our neighbors in other lands less fortunate than ourselves. 5. Give some reasons why it is more important than ever for us to understand the customs and ways of living of people in other lands.

#### B

1. Explain some of the wonders of God's creation of the universe. 2. Into what three parts could the earth be divided? 3. What caused the disappearance of the great glaciers that covered the earth during the ice age? 4. What are some of the forces that are still at work making changes in the earth's surface? 5. Why do we think of Eurasia as the heart of the world island? 6. Give some reasons why God in His infinite wisdom created man.

#### C

1. On what continent do we believe the first man lived? 2. Give some reasons why the first civilizations developed in southern Eurasia. 3. Give some reasons why people throughout the world may differ in appearance and habits of living. 4. Explain why the hunter's civilization caused people to worship devils instead of God. 5. Why did the peasant's civilization bring great advances in man's knowledge? 6. How did the people of the herdsmen's civilization feed and clothe themselves? 7. Why did the memory of God remain pure and clear longer among the herdsmen than it did among the hunters and peasants?

#### D

1. How does Europe compare in size with the other continents? 2. Give some reasons why

Europe can support such a large population for its size. 3. Explain why Roman civilization failed. 4. Mention some of the good things in Roman civilization that were saved for future ages by the Church. 5. Why is the culture of Europe of such great concern to Americans?

#### E

1. How does Asia compare in size with the other continents? 2. Why does a large part of Asia have a continental climate? 3. What parts of Asia are very densely populated? very sparsely populated? 4. Give some reasons why trade and travel within the continent of Asia are very difficult. 5. Mention some reasons why Asia is referred to as the cradle of civilization. 6. In Asia are the highest and lowest points on earth. Name each of them. 7. In what way are people alike who may be born of different color, of poor parents, or in a different country?

**Using Geography Words Correctly.** The following list contains words used in this chapter. Use each in a sentence.

- |                      |                         |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. mariner's compass | 11. nomads              |
| 2. atmosphere        | 12. capital             |
| 3. jungle            | 13. tides               |
| 4. tundra            | 14. currents            |
| 5. planet            | 15. caravan             |
| 6. glacier           | 16. peninsula           |
| 7. globe             | 17. boundary            |
| 8. continent         | 18. westerlies          |
| 9. isthmus           | 19. continental climate |
| 10. peasant          | 20. steppes             |

### Making and Using Graphs

1. Make a small thumbnail sketch to represent each of the following: Columbus' ship, *The Mayflower*, a Yankee Clipper, Lindbergh's plane, and a bomber plane of today. Draw a line graph for each to represent the time it took to cross the Atlantic Ocean.

2. Using the picture graphs on page 9, answer the following questions: (a) How does Europe compare in size and population with Asia and North America? (b) How many times as many people live in Asia as in Europe? as in North America?



Trans-Arabian oil pipe line is guarded by inspectors in airplane and automobile, and watched by a desert Arab in flowing robes.



## II. LANDS WHERE OUR CIVILIZATION BEGAN

Mighty, moving forces within the earth, long ago, formed the great wrinkle of mountains across Europe and Asia; they also forced down some parts of the continents, so that sea water ran in and covered the land. In this way a large inland sea was made with a number of divisions. People of ancient times thought this sea was in the center of the earth, and they named it Mediterranean, from Latin words meaning "middle of the land."

**The sea of history.** The Mediterranean Sea's deep blue waters were ideal for the small sailing vessels of long ago. Stormy winds sometimes blow over it, but this warm inland sea does not have the strong tides, the fogs, the snow, and the ice of the great Atlantic Ocean. A chain of peaks lies across the land to the north, acting as a wall to keep out cold winds. Much of the coast is indented with natural harbors. Islands and peninsulas abound. Even small boats manned by oarsmen can navigate the Mediterranean, going from headland to island, keeping always within sight of land.

Saint Paul made many of his mission journeys to and fro across this famous sea. In the Bible he tells us much about sailing in those days, and what it was like to be shipwrecked in storms.

The Mediterranean is an open lane connecting three great continents. As the ancient civilizations about its rim prospered, the people exchanged products with one another. They set up trade routes around and across the sea. The people built port cities for commerce, and each city was surrounded by its villages of peasants with

their fields, their orchards, and their flocks. Schools, art and music, painting and literature flourished. Harbors were full of ships; caravans of camels and donkeys set out on desert trails that led to the neighboring regions.

Cities were located a little distance inland, for fear of pirates. People usually built on a hilltop, or some other place easily defended. Walls and towers helped the inhabitants protect themselves from enemies. In each city was a market place where goods brought in by the caravans were sold. Many cities, too, had slave markets, where unhappy people captured in war or kidnapped stood chained together. They were sold like animals into a life of hard toil.

The Mediterranean Sea and the overland trade routes linked the busy cities with India and the Far East. Then navigators found the way around the southern tip of Africa, and for hundreds of years trade with the Far East by-passed the Mediterranean entirely. In the nineteenth century, the Suez Canal was dug across the narrow isthmus between the Mediterranean Sea and the Red Sea. Then once again trade lanes with eastern Asia were busy across the landlocked sea. Ships from the Atlantic Ocean enter the Mediterranean through the narrow gateway at Gibraltar, and leave it by way of the Suez Canal.

Those ancient lands on the Mediterranean's rim, where our civilization began, are now also connected by airways with one another and with the outside world.

**Sunny lands.** The Mediterranean Sea and its bordering countries lie along the

edge of the trade-wind region and the horse latitudes. During the summer, the climate is like that of the desert lands to the south and east, tempered somewhat, however, by the great bodies of sea water. During the winter, some of the storms common to more northern lands (in the region of the prevailing westerlies), sweep down upon the Mediterranean countries.

The Mediterranean climate is found with some slight differences in countries near the Mediterranean system of seas. These include the historic lands of North Africa (Egypt and the Barbary States), the coastal countries of southwest Asia (Turkey, Syria, Palestine, and others), and countries on three peninsulas of southern Europe; that is, Spain, Portugal, Italy, and the Balkan countries. The Mediterranean type of climate is found also in southwestern California and parts of South America, southern Africa, and Australia.

The lands bordering the Mediterranean with their hot, dry summers and mild, rainy winters have special kinds of fruits and crops, and their own way of life for human beings. In summer a Mediterranean town closes up during the midday hours, and goes to sleep. The dazzling sun shines down on dusty roads and brown hills. People come out toward evening and go about their business of trade, visiting, and merrymaking. Work is done mostly in cool mornings.

In winter, a little snow shows on mountain tops, but no frost reaches the lowlands. Rains fall on the parched earth; fields and trees burst into bloom. Crops grow during the winter; some are harvested in late spring; citrus fruits ripen all year long. People of the ancient civilizations lived well on their diet of figs and dates, olives, olive oil, and wheat bread, with some meat and dairy products from their sheep and goats.

**Eternal plans.** Wheat bread, oil from the olive, and wine from the grape are the main food in the daily lives of dwellers around the Mediterranean rim. They were common, homely things in the life of the boy Christ; and, also, the precious water that had to be carried from the village well and used frugally. The Son of God took them for His great sacraments. Water, oil, wine, and bread—little ordinary things of Mediterranean life—go with the Church now, carrying blessings to the ends of the earth. It is not by accident that these things are so used: God had them in mind from the beginning of time.

The Mediterranean Sea, with its easy communications and its bordering, civilized lands, was also planned by God for the quick and easy spread of the Faith. The new Church, persecuted in Palestine, had little chance to thrive there. But Rome was the capital of all the Mediterranean world, and it was the natural place for the headquarters of the Church. Roman peace, law, and order reigned throughout most of the great Roman Empire, and good roads led out from Rome to all the civilized world. These conditions were all part of God's plan for the great outward thrust of His Christian Church. Soon many of the civilized lands around the Mediterranean had great thriving Christian communities. The Church flourished there for centuries.

**Swords out of the desert.** One day a man of the Arabian deserts, named Mohammed, declared himself to be God's prophet. He promised heaven to all men who should die in battle fighting to spread his new religion. The fierce nomad herdsmen of the deserts joined Mohammed by the thousands. In time these warrior missionaries, called Moslems, swept through Arabia, Syria, Palestine, Persia, northern Africa,

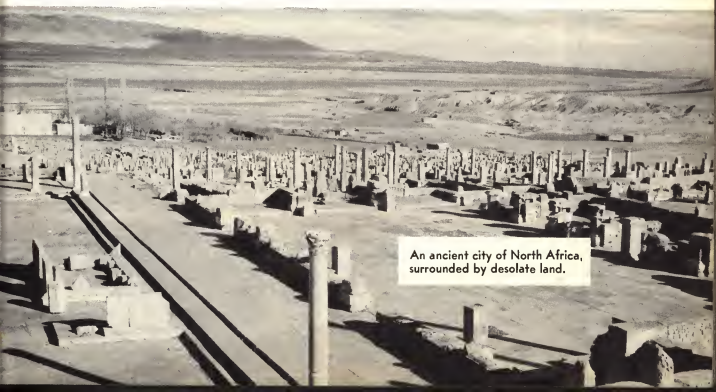
and across into Spain. The Christians of Europe fought the invaders in desperate battles on land and sea, while the Pope and all Christendom prayed to Our Lady for mercy. The Moslems were turned back from Europe, so that the source of our American culture stayed Christian.

In a large part of the Mediterranean world, the followers of Mohammed were successful. Churches were ruined, and thousands of Christians died by the sword or became Moslems. The slave trade was a big business in the Moslem lands, and many a Christian captive was sold into a life of hard labor. Women no longer held a place of honor in the home, for a Moslem might have a number of wives at the same time, and divorce was easy and frequent. The fierce Arab warriors were better at destroying civilization than they were at building. Over all the Near East and north Africa they settled like a blight.

**The ruined lands.** For centuries rich farm lands of the Near East and north Africa had supported great civilizations. The lands of the Bible were said to be flow-

ing with milk and honey, so fertile were they. But these lands have been the scenes of wars by various conquerors, one after another. Irrigation systems have been destroyed, and terraces broken down. The poor and discouraged people who survived the fighting had no way to rebuild. Too many herds of sheep, goats, camels, and donkeys pastured on the scanty grass. Too many people cut down forests. The good soil blew or washed away. Governments were weak and corrupt, caring little for the good of the people, taking heavy taxes, doing nothing to build up and repair.

Today the ruins of great cities lie partly buried in desert sand. Half-starved populations take a scanty living from the barren earth. Good soil has gone, and so have Christian souls. A few Catholic missionaries, often at the risk of their lives, try to give the Faith once more to the people of the Near East and northern Africa. In the land where Christ lived and spoke to men, and in places where the Church once flourished and saints walked the earth, now spreads the Moslem world.



An ancient city of North Africa,  
surrounded by desolate land.



◀ Stephen is a Greek boy. His country, now poor and torn by years of war, was an ancient Mediterranean land of high culture and civilization.

America was unknown to Europeans until long after Mediterranean peoples were civilized and Christian. Two little friends in North America. ▶



Esther lives in Israel, part of Christ's own home land of Palestine. It has never been a Christian land, and Catholics there are few at the present time.



Pedro, South American Indian, lives in a continent undiscovered until 1500 years after the time of Christ. The work of the Church there is still unfinished.



◀ Iraq, Abdulla's home, was well known to the Apostles and soon had many Christians. Now it is a Moslem land where the Church is unwelcome.

Romono and Doloroso live in the Philippines, the only Catholic oriental country. The islands of the Pacific were unredeemed by the Apostles. ▶





◀ These two children live in a Moslem land of North Africa, on the Mediterranean shore. Their ancestors may have been Catholics long ago.

Saburo of Japan lives in a country unknown in Europe until rather recent times. The great St. Francis Xavier brought the Faith to Japan. ▶



## THE MEDITERRANEAN: Sea of Civilization, of History, and of Faith

The region around Europe's land-locked sea was in ancient times the known, civilized world. It alone was mapped and charted, and beyond its limits the rest of the globe was explored only slightly or not at all. When Christ said, "Go, teach all nations!" His Apostles thought only of the Mediterranean countries and their near neighbors.

But the eyes of Christ, looking beyond mountains and oceans, saw the Far East, Australia, the great American continents, and the islands of the Pacific—vast territories undreamed of even by the most learned scholars of ancient Greece and Rome. Christ knew what He meant when He gave the Church its marching orders.

Tanya lives in Russia, a land little known to the ancient civilized nations. At the present time the Church is forbidden there. ▼



Radi lives in India and like most of her people she is a non-Christian. St. Thomas the Apostle is said to have visited India, but it is still a mission land. ▼



◀ Switzerland, the home of Gertrude and Rosetta, is a prosperous Christian land. To ancient peoples it was a little known, uncivilized region.

Same parts of Africa were known to the Apostles and soon became Christian lands. Equatorial Africa, where this boy lives, is still pagan. ▶



## PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Answer each of the following questions in a complete sentence.

1. Why did the ancient people call the great body of water south of Europe the Mediterranean Sea?
2. Why did the Mediterranean Sea become an important highway of commerce?
3. Why was the Suez Canal dug to join the Mediterranean and Red seas?

4. Why do people living in the lands bordering the Mediterranean Sea do most of their work during the morning hours?

5. Why can crops be grown during the winter season in Mediterranean lands?

6. Why did the Catholic Faith spread easily in many of the countries bordering the Mediterranean?

7. Why were many of the ancient lands near the Mediterranean Sea left in ruins?

8. Why were some of the ancient cities in the Mediterranean lands located short distances inland?

**Where civilization began.** Egypt and Iraq are two of the more important Moslem lands of today, and they are the countries in which the most ancient civilizations began. Iraq does not border on the Mediterranean, but it lies near that sea and its coastal lands. Here in the valleys of the Tigris and Euphrates rivers, it is believed, was the earthly paradise, man's first home. Scientists, digging into the earth, are yearly discovering more signs of man, his cities, and his early civilizations in this region of Mesopotamia (Land Between the Rivers).

**Iraq.** In Iraq was Ur, the birthplace of Abraham, father of the Jewish nation and ancestor of Christ. Abraham with his family, his flocks, and camels slowly traveled from Ur to Palestine, the land God gave him. Abraham's caravan may have been months or years on the journey. Today, the road across the five hundred miles of sand in the Syrian Desert is covered by automobile in twenty-four hours. But the drivers are still careful to travel with others in caravans, for one machine may stall and its passengers die of thirst in the burning heat of the desert sun. The banks of the Tigris and the Euphrates rivers are oases fringed with green palm trees, but most of Iraq is desert.

Babylon, a city of wealth and luxury three thousand years before Christ, is now

a heap of ruins where lizards warm themselves in the sun. Fifty-five miles away, the ancient city of Baghdad still stands, but its old wealth and glory are gone. It is the capital of Iraq. This is the old Arab city about which the *Arabian Nights* tales were written. Here Catholic missionaries have carried on a slow, careful, and patient work for centuries, often in danger, sometimes giving martyrs to the Church. The missionaries know they cannot make many converts. If they show Christian charity and make friends among the Moslems, they do well.

Hundreds of years ago, a network of canals carried water over the flat country of Iraq, and turned it into a land of rich farms and gardens. Forty million people once prospered there. Fierce Mongol invaders from eastern Asia destroyed the irrigation system. The wealth of the land vanished. Gone was the flourishing civilization of ancient times.

Iraq is now a land of the poor, vexed by drought and flood, where civilization, learning, and industry are all at low ebb. Only petroleum, discovered in modern times, provides some income for the people. Oil pipelines lie across the desert to the sea, and airplanes follow that pipe line to find their way above the sandy waste. To the east of Iraq lies Iran, the Persia of ancient times. It, too, is a Moslem land today; a land of des-

erts and mountains, of camel caravans and modern oil wells. Here, too, the Catholic Faith hardly exists. A few priests and sisters carry on mission work.

**Egypt, land of ancient history.** On the map Egypt is a large, rectangular country; in reality it is a long, narrow oasis, set in a vast, surrounding desert. Although Egypt is on the continent of Africa, the desert shuts it off from other African lands. As a result, Egypt has more dealings with the countries of the Near East and the Mediterranean, than with those on its own continent. Here, in the hot sunshine and dry air of the horse latitudes, a mighty river runs through the desert. The Nile is a river almost without tributaries. No rain falls on the burning sands to feed this broad stream; the four thousand miles of life-giving waters flow from the central African region of tropical rains and steaming jungle.

After the season of heavy rainfall in the tropics, the flood surges down the Nile. On the flat land of Egypt, flood waters spread out for miles on either side of the river. Fine particles of fertile silt, carried by the waters, settle down on the level land. When the flood waters withdraw, the mud flats are left, fertilized, full of moisture, ready for the work of the Egyptian peasants—the digging, the plowing, the sowing of seeds. Large dams have been built across the Nile. They store up water for use when the river is low.

√ It was to the Nile Valley that a part of the human race migrated from its early home in Asia. The fertile parts of Egypt on both sides of the Nile made a natural setting for the growth of an ancient peasant civilization. The people worshiped pagan gods: the sun, the moon, the ox, the Nile River—all the things that had to do with seasons and crops.

In the desert near Cairo, still stand the pyramids, tombs of Egypt's ancient kings, and the sphinx, the human-faced stone lion that guards the tombs. They are some of mankind's oldest monuments and tell us much about the riches and power of Egypt long ago; about the pagan worship of monstrous gods and devils; and about the pitiful longing of the ancient people for eternal life. Explorers who opened the Egyptian tombs in modern times found King's corpses wrapped in linens, all ready for the resurrection, and surrounded by jewels and many useful trinkets. In some tombs were found bodies of wives and servants who had been buried alive on some sad day long ago, to be company for their ruler after death.

**Once a Christian land.** Egypt is near Palestine. Into this land of plenty came the ancestors of the Jews, seeking food when their own land suffered from drought and crop failure. The Baby Moses was hidden in the reeds at the Nile River's edge. He grew up and led his people away from pagan Egypt where they had been enslaved. It was in Egypt that the Jews learned to worship the ox, and made themselves a golden calf-god in the desert. Joseph and Mary fled into Egypt with the Child Jesus when King Herod was hunting for the newborn Christ.

Saint Mark preached Christianity in Egypt, and later many monks lived holy lives in the desert. For some centuries the Egyptian people were Catholics, but the coming of the Moslems changed all that. Today, among a population of some fourteen million Egyptians, only about one person in every ninety-three is a Catholic. Few missionaries are now at work in Egypt.

**A Moslem land.** All over Cairo today can be seen the Moslem houses of worship called *mosques*. Each mosque has a tall



Moslems of Egypt turn their faces toward Mecca and pray to God the Merciful.

tower like the bell tower of a church. However, no bell calls the Moslem to worship. Instead, five times a day, a man climbs to the balcony on top of the tower and repeats, in a long, musical cry, the statements that there is only one God, and Mohammed is His prophet. Each pious Moslem who hears the cry turns his face towards Mecca, the birthplace of Mohammed, and kneels to pray.

Moslems believe prayer should take place only in a clean and honorable spot and long ago they began to carry rugs on which to kneel at the hour of prayer. Thus the manufacture of beautiful rugs and carpets became a widespread industry in Moslem lands. The Moslem prays with his head covered, but he touches his forehead to the earth when he bows down before God. For that reason Moslems wear special headgear: Egyptians wear the fez, a hat without a brim; Arabs wear a cloth held by cords.

No longer do great armies of Moslems, united under one leader, go forth to invade and conquer other lands. Moslems now are

split in sects, much as Protestant Christians are; and the various Moslem nations are divided by jealousies and quarrels.

Moslems worship the God of Adam and Eve, of Moses and Abraham. Unfortunately, Moslems do not have correct ideas about God, however, for they think Jesus was only a prophet, less important than Mohammed. The Moslems are often very sincere in their love of God. They are not ashamed to mention His name respectfully in conversation, or to kneel at the hour of prayer in public places. They give alms to the poor, are hospitable to strangers, and are loyal to friends.

**Libya.** Westward along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea lies Libya. It was once a land of life and beauty. Later it became a sea of sand where marble ruins of great cities tell of old wars, populations butchered, an irrigation system destroyed, and civilization gone. Today a few people pick a scanty living from its oases and a narrow strip of coast. Most of these are Moslems; many are Bedouins or nomads of the des-



erts who live in tents and herd camels and horses and sheep.

**Barbary Coast.** Farther westward along the Mediterranean coast are the Barbary States—Tunisia, Algeria, and Morocco. These form the largest and most thickly peopled region of this North African world. Here were the great Phoenician cities of ancient times. The natives of the Barbary States include two groups: the Berbers, a tall, dark-skinned people whose forefathers were Christians; and the Arabs, people of paler skin, who conquered the land for Mohammed. Both races are Moslems today. A few Catholic missionaries work in these countries at present, but with scanty success.

On the coast of Algeria, near the French seaport town of Bône, lie the ruins of the rich, ancient city of Hippo. Thousands of Catholics once lived there, and the great Saint Augustine was their bishop. At the modern city of Tunis are more ruins of past glory. That is all there is left of the pagan city of Carthage; its temples for the worship of the gods of impurity and cruelty lie in ruins. So do the great Catholic churches that were built long ago.

**The Near East.** On the Mediterranean shores of the Near East, we find the Holy Land of Palestine, where the Son of God walked our earth. This was the first home of the Christian Church, but it has never been a Catholic land. A part of Palestine belongs to the Moslem world. A section of Palestine is owned and occupied by Jews, most of whom have fled from persecution in many other lands. This new Republic of Israel has been in modern times the scene of fierce and bloody battles between Arabs and Jews.

Lebanon, a small and proudly independent republic on the coast north of Palestine, is largely a Christian country. From its high

mountains came the famous cedars of Lebanon, used by King Solomon to build the temple of God; some majestic trees still stand on the mountains but the forests are sadly overcut. Industrious merchants do a thriving business in the cities of Lebanon and neighboring Syria.

In Syria is the old city of Damascus, where Saint Paul was baptized and where the Church once flourished. Today it is a Moslem city, where Christians have been slain even in modern times.

**Turkey.** In this Moslem land the people are not Arabs. Their ancestors came out of the Mongol country of central Asia about nine hundred years ago, and conquered those regions. They even took Emperor Constantine's great city of Constantinople. They turned the gorgeous Cathedral of Santa Sophia (Holy Wisdom) into a Moslem mosque and so it stands today.

Turks were formerly a backward people, whose soldiers cruelly butchered native Christians by the thousands. Armenia, a Christian nation, was for a long time under the rule of Turkey and the Christian Armenians suffered much for their Faith. In recent years Turkish rulers have tried to transform the Turkish people into a modern nation. There are several hundred Catholic priests, Brothers, and Sisters in Turkey today, mostly conducting schools. They are not allowed to make converts in this strongly Moslem land.

Just inside the borders of Turkey is the city of Antakya, or ancient Antioch. Saint Peter stayed there for a while to set up the Church, and thriving Christian communities developed in the whole section. Near Antioch lived the famous Saint Simeon Stylites, who spent many years on top of a tall stone pillar, without shelter from sun, wind, or rain. Pious people brought him his

scanty food and drink. Pilgrims by the hundreds went to see him, to beg his prayers. Even an Emperor and his Empress were among them. The crowds became so troublesome to the good old saint, that he built his pillar higher and higher, in order to be alone with God.

Saint Christopher, patron of travelers, lived somewhere in this neighborhood. Other hermits and monks, also, prayed and did penance in these desert regions, where today the Church hardly exists. These holy men of the desert lived at a time when Christians were not obliged to hear Mass every Sunday. Sometimes it was even impossible to do so, because of persecution. However, there were priests among the monks, and at times all gathered together for Mass and the sacraments.

**Home of Santa Claus.** Turkey sits astride the Bosphorus, a narrow strait between Europe and Asia. The Bosphorus is part of the passageway for ships between the Mediterranean and the Black Sea; the other part is the Dardanelles.

Inland, not far from the coast, lie the ruins of the ancient city of Myra, diocese of Saint Nicholas, the real and original Santa Claus. The good bishop lived long ago, when the Church was young. Thousands of Christians made up his flock. Saint Nicholas was greatly loved, particularly because of his kindness to the poor and to children. His feast day (December 6) comes near to Christmas and it was natural for people to think of him as bringing gifts to good children on the birthday of Christ, Who taught us to love and to give. However, the real Santa Claus was not a roly-poly, red-suited man, nor did he drive reindeer. He probably wore his Bishop's robes; and when he traveled, his steed was a horse. His name, and the generous spirit

of the Christ Child Whom he loved, are now known all over the world. However, the city where he toiled and prayed is now a heap of ruins in a region of Moslem mosques, where no cross stands on any church tower, and at Christmas no bells ring.

#### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Fill in the blanks with the correct word or words.

1. Two leading Moslem lands are \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Adam and Eve probably lived in the region located between the \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ rivers.
3. The land between these rivers is called \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The tombs of Egypt's ancient kings are called \_\_\_\_\_.
5. A Moslem house of worship is a \_\_\_\_\_.
6. A Christian country on the eastern shores of the Mediterranean Sea is \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Baghdad is the capital of \_\_\_\_\_.
8. The \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ are two straits between the Mediterranean and the Black Sea.

**The Balkans.** The African and Asiatic shores of the Mediterranean have few good harbors. In some places, vast desert lands, instead of populous states, lie beyond the shores. Trade and commerce are somewhat scanty on the south and the east of this sea. However, on the European side there are a multitude of inlets and harbors, and well-settled countries. Just where Asia ends and Europe begins, a large peninsula juts out into the sea. This is the Balkan Peninsula. A number of small nations occupy this part of Europe. Thus Greece, Yugoslavia, Romania, Bulgaria, Albania, and part of Turkey form the Balkan States.

These old Balkan countries have had a troubled history. Some of them were once

part of ancient Greece, then of the Roman Empire. Invaders from the north overran the region and mixed with the population. As a result, in some parts the people and their language are closely related to the Russians; in other places, the people are more like Italians, and speak a modern form of Latin.

At one time the Church prospered in this area, and saints and martyrs of olden times lived and died here. Moslems conquered parts of these lands, and some of the people

still follow Mohammed. Others fell away in the great Eastern schism and have national churches. One war after another has torn these Balkan States, and at various times parts of them have been ruled by many different powers. In modern times, all of these countries, except Greece, were overcome by Communist groups, under orders from headquarters in Russia. The Communist leaders tried to destroy all religion and to do away with all church services. Greece stayed out of the Red slave

The deep blue Mediterranean on the coast of Italy.



machine, but only after a bloody civil war and much help from our own United States.

Greeks were among the world's first great sailors, traders, merchants, and fishermen. Once the seat of ancient civilizations, Greece was at the crossroads between Europe and Asia and ruled much of the world. The little country has suffered from one invasion after another for centuries. It is now a poor land of bare, eroded hills and rocky islands. Near Athens, the old city of arts and learning, still stand ruins of the beautiful temple built by ancient pagan Greeks in honor of the goddess of wisdom. Greek sailors and ships still ply all the seas of the world. Saint Paul preached in the cities of Greece, and its people became Christians in early times. Here we see the sad result of an old division in the Church.

Today the Greeks have their own Church. Their priests are real priests, Mass is really offered, and the people receive the sacraments. Yet the Greek Church is not part of the Catholic Church. It is called the Greek Orthodox Church and is in schism, that is, "cut off" from the Catholic Church. Today priests and people of the Greek Orthodox Church may know no better; many are pious and good. The harm was done long ago by proud and self-willed churchmen and statesmen.

**The lands once great.** This chapter has been a preview of the countries around the southern and eastern rim of Europe's great, land-locked Mediterranean Sea. In this region civilization began, and the Catholic Faith flourished for hundreds of years. We have seen what most of these countries are like today, and how they lost their ancient greatness. At the present time both civilization and the Faith are at a low ebb. What was once thriving has decayed.

In many parts of this region, the ancient, fertile soil has gone; life-giving irrigation systems have long been destroyed; and great, wealthy populations have ceased to exist. Soil and souls and civilization have all wasted away. The Faith flourished only for a few centuries, and then died out. The Church did not make these countries her headquarters. She moved west to Rome, built her capital there, and set out from there to conquer the world. Civilization went with the Church, and was kept alive and spread by the Church.

Later, in our geography, when we deal with the continents of Asia and Africa, we shall again take up the lands of ancient history one by one. We shall then study their products, their trade and industry, their people and the way they live. For the present, we shall go with the Church to Rome. From there, we shall follow Christianity into the countries of Europe, and go on to other parts of the world.

#### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Supply the missing name in each blank space.

1. The three continents which touch the Mediterranean Sea are \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Greece, Yugoslavia, and Romania are on the \_\_\_\_\_ Peninsula.
3. The only Balkan country that is not controlled by Communists is \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The section of Palestine owned and occupied by the Jewish people is called \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The Greek city that was once the great center of learning in the Mediterranean lands was \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Moslems follow the teaching of \_\_\_\_\_.
7. A country that gave Greece a great deal of help in its fight against Communism was \_\_\_\_\_.

## For My Geography Notebook

### Questions for Review

#### A

1. Describe what is meant by a Mediterranean climate. 2. Name some of the countries of Europe that have a Mediterranean climate. 3. Where in the United States do we have a Mediterranean type climate? 4. Name some of the crops that grow in lands having a Mediterranean climate. 5. Who was Mohammed? 6. What were the followers of Mohammed called? 7. Why were the followers of Mohammed better at destroying civilization than they were at building? 8. Why is it difficult to live in desert lands? 9. Name some important Moslem countries of the present day. 10. Where was man's first home believed to be located? 11. Give a reason why automobiles usually cross desert lands only in caravans.

#### B

12. Why do so many of Egypt's people live along the Nile River? 13. What were the ancient pyramids of Egypt used for? 14. What is a mosque? 15. How do the Bedouins make their living in the desert lands? 16. What three North African lands are known as the Barbary States? 17. Name several of the small Mediterranean countries located in Asia. 18. Which city of Greece was famous as the center of art and learning in the ancient Mediterranean world? 19. Why is the Greek Church not considered part of the Catholic Church? 20. Where in the Mediterranean area did the Church build her capital?

**Making Pictures Tell A Story.** Write a short paragraph in answer to each of the following.

1. Why is the transportation of oil by the method shown in the picture on page 24 best for the oil companies that have wells in this part of the world?

2. After studying the picture on page 27 give some reasons why this ancient city was deserted by the people who once lived there.

3. Why are the Moslems in the picture on page 32 all kneeling in the desert with their faces turned toward Mecca?

**Using Geography Words Correctly.** The following list contains words used in this chapter. Use each in a sentence.

- |                          |               |
|--------------------------|---------------|
| 1. Mediterranean climate | 5. oasis      |
| 2. pyramids              | 6. irrigation |
| 3. mosque                | 7. sphinx     |
| 4. Bedouins              | 8. fez        |

### Making Maps Tell A Story

Answer the following questions using the map on pages 28 and 29 to help you.

1. In what part of the Mediterranean World did the Faith get its start?

2. From what two centers shown on the map did the Faith spread?

3. What large body of water made it easier for the Apostles to carry the Faith to countries of southern Europe?

4. Find on the map the ruins of three ancient cities that saw the spread of Christianity in Mediterranean lands. Tell where each is located.

5. Mesopotamia means "Land Between the Rivers." What are the two rivers between which Mesopotamia lies?

6. What three countries of North Africa are called the Barbary States?

7. In which of the ancient Mediterranean lands did each of the following preach Christianity: Saint Paul, Saint Augustine, Saint Nicholas, Saint Simeon Stylites?

8. In which country is each of the following old cities located: Damascus, Baghdad, Tunis, Athens, Cairo, Antakya, Ur of the Chaldees?

9. Study the pictures surrounding the map and name some of the faraway lands that have become strong Catholic countries.

### Pause and Think

1. Can you give an example of how people in ancient times used and misused the soil?

2. For what gifts of nature should people in the Mediterranean lands be grateful?

3. Can you show how ancient people felt the need for worshipping God?

4. How can Catholics everywhere help to bring back the Faith to the lands of the Near East and North Africa?

5. Why do you think it will be interesting to study the peoples of other lands?









## Studying the Map of Europe

### A


1. Name and locate the important mountain regions in Europe. 2. Which three mountain ranges have the highest summits? 3. Name the two mountain ranges which form most of the border between Europe and Asia. 4. Name an important mountain peak in the Alps. 5. Find and locate each of the following mountain ranges: Pyrenees, Apennines, Carpathians, Urals, Kjolen. 6. In what way would you expect the people who live in these mountain regions to make their living?

### B

1. What body of water separates Norway, Sweden, and Denmark from the British Isles? 2. What large sea lies along the southern border of Europe? 3. What two great inland seas form part of the border between Europe and Asia? 4. Name the sea that extends far into the great central plains of Europe. 5. Name the bodies of water that separate the British Isles from the mainland of Europe. 6. Find and locate each of the following bodies of water: Adriatic Sea, Aegean Sea, Bay of Biscay, Irish Sea, Dardanelles, Bosphorus. 7. Find five islands or island groups in the Mediterranean and name the country to which each belongs.

### C

1. Name the long river in southern Europe that rises in Germany and flows into the Black Sea. What countries does it touch or cross? 2. Name three important rivers of western Europe that flow into the English Channel or the North Sea. 3. Find each of the following rivers, give its source, and name the body of water into which it flows: Rhône, Po, Dnieper, Volga, Vistula, Oder, Thames.



### III. EUROPEAN LANDS WHERE CHRISTIANITY SPREAD

#### I. How People Live and Work in Italy

The Italian city of Naples, with the volcano, Mt. Vesuvius.

The peninsula and islands which make up Italy reach far into the Mediterranean Sea. From the region of the Alps Mountains in the north with cold, snowy winters to the warm, almost tropical island of Sicily in the south, there is a great difference in climate. The Apennine Mountains run like a backbone through the whole peninsula, so that much of Italy is mountainous and rocky.

The Italians, in their small, crowded country, must use all of their limited resources in order to make a living. Rich and poor lands are made to produce as much as possible. There are swamps and marshes that could be drained to add a little land, but such projects require great sums of money. The country has been left poor by wars and internal troubles, so such works go slowly.

**The people of Italy.** The Italians are descended from the ancient Romans, and from other tribes of people who invaded the country. They speak a modern form of the

Latin tongue, which was the language of learning in Europe for centuries. Europe owes much of its civilization to the people of this small country.

Italy has always been a farming country, yet its towns and cities have been very important in the history of the world. The Mediterranean region differed from northern Europe in having a city civilization. While France, Germany, and Britain were covered with great forests and inhabited by wild tribes of hunters, peasants, and herdsmen, the people of the Mediterranean lands were trading in their market places, going to plays in their theaters, and chariot races and games at the circus, and listening to political speeches in their forums.

Their towns are not like our enormous, modern cities, which must be fed by long lines of shipping and land transport. The ancient and medieval town belonged to the surrounding farm land. It was a market for the peasants, who sold their produce in the town and bought what they needed.

In early times, along the seacoast of this rocky peninsula, little villages gradually grew into towns, each with its surrounding fields and pastures. A number of the townsmen decided to join together for trade and protection from their enemies. This union of towns with the surrounding land was called *Latium*. The people spoke Latin. The chief town, Rome, was built on seven hills, to be safe from any attacking enemy on land, and a little away from sea and pirates.

This union of towns grew in power and wealth. Its strong armies conquered much of the known world of that day. The Romans learned many of the arts of civilization from the Greeks and other people whom they ruled. They passed on this civilization, in some degree, to many of the more savage tribes which they conquered.

In spite of their fine buildings, their art and science, the Romans were pagans who worshiped false gods. Pagans are often cold-hearted and cruel. Work in Roman homes was done by slaves, who could be beaten or killed if their owners wished. In the great stadium called the Colosseum, on every holiday, thousands of people sat watching games at which slaves killed one another for the crowd's amusement. The fact that even the poorest slave is God's child was forgotten. The Roman world was bright, hard, and pagan. Hearts were not happy.

**The revolution.** In the meantime, something tremendous happened in one of the small Roman colonies to the east. Out of Palestine there came to Rome a traveler who had a new light in his eyes and an earth-shaking message on his tongue. A little later, there arrived a second travel-worn stranger, also a Jew from Palestine. On his face, too, was the same strange brightness. On his lips was the same glad news: that all men are God's children,

whether white or black, slave or free; that God had visited His people and had died to save them; that He had founded a Church to gather His people from the far ends of the earth, to care for all their needs, to answer all their doubts and fears, to forgive all their sins, and to lead them all to happiness forever.

The two strangers were Saint Paul, the first foreign missionary, and Saint Peter, the first Pope. In the city of Rome, they made converts and set up the Church; there they died as martyrs for Christ; and in Rome their bodies are buried. During the early centuries, many Romans turned to the little, new Catholic Church and were baptized. Emperors tried hard to destroy the Church. Christians were tortured and burned, or fed to lions in the Colosseum, while the pagan audience cheered.

In time, however, a Roman Emperor, Constantine, became a Christian. He moved his capital away from Rome to a new city, on the Bosphorus. He named it Constantinople in honor of himself. This new capital of the Roman Empire stood at the gateway for trade between Europe and Asia. Constantinople grew rich and powerful, while Rome fell into poverty. Savage tribes on the warpath invaded Rome and plundered it. Later, it was to be known as the Eternal City; but then, it was only a poor, weak town, full of rubble, with its days of glory gone. However, the Pope, always the Bishop of Rome, lived there and governed the growing group of Christians. During the centuries, the Catholic Faith has become part of the daily life of the Italian people. It colors their way of living, their learning, and their arts. Numberless saints have walked on the soil of Italy, and great religious orders have gone out from there to conquer the world for Christ.



Pilgrims from America call on the Pope. Yearly, thousands come to see the Holy Father for reasons of piety or business. The Pope plans new houses for homeless families. Jesuit scientists explain an instrument in the Pontifical Observatory.



## VATICAN CITY

During many centuries, only the Popes were left to govern Rome and to save the city from enemies who arrived to wage war. Catholic princes gave a large section of Italy to the Pope, who ruled it as a papal state. There the Church could be free from the meddling of kings and queens and politicians. Great walls were built to protect Vatican Hill. Some Popes met and turned away barbarian armies; some Popes had to flee, or were persecuted, imprisoned, or exiled. But always they returned to Vatican Hill and ruled the world-wide Church from there. Vatican City is all that remains of the papal state now.

Just as our city of Washington, D. C., does not belong to any of our States but is set apart to be our Nation's capital, so this part of Rome called Vatican City is set apart for the Church's capital. It belongs to the Catholic Church and has the Pope as its ruler. The area was once covered with temples where pagan gods were worshiped. The Emperor Can-



The great church of Saint Peter, near the Tiber River, stands on the Vatican Hill. It is the largest church in the world. Saint Peter, first Pope, lies buried here.





1. Basilica of St. Peter 2. Residence of Pope Pius XII
3. Sistine Chapel 4. St. Peter's Square 5. Swiss Guard's Barracks
6. Governor's Palace 7. Radio Station HVJ 8. Ethiopian College 9. Gardens
10. Museums 11. Libraries 12. Post Office
13. Newspaper and Printing Shop 14. Mosaic Factory 15. Railroad Station.



Young men from Ethiopia study for the priesthood in Vatican City. Pilgrims crowd St. Peter's at Mass.



Rome is famous for its fountains. This one is in the plaza before St. Peter's. The Brothers of Charity run Vatican City Drug Store and First Aid Station.

## Capital of Christ's Kingdom

stantine, who later became a Christian, himself helped build the first church of Saint Peter on the Vatican Hill, in the year 324, using stone and marble from old pagan temples.

The Pope lives in the palace which we call the Vatican. In Vatican City are the homes and the offices of the Cardinals who help the Holy Father in the business of running a world-wide Church with more than four hundred million members. Here is the headquarters of the Church's army of missionaries, who carry the Faith to far ends of the earth.

A few thousand people live in Vatican City, mostly workmen and their families. The little state has its own governor, its own police force and jail, its own post office and postage stamps. Vatican art galleries contain some of the world's most famous paintings and statues. The Vatican library has not only great numbers of books, but valuable manuscripts that scholars from distant countries come to consult.

The mosaic artist, working from photographs or paintings, makes pictures for church walls of small bits of colored stone set in cement.



Tall soldiers from Switzerland have done guard duty for the Pope since 1510. Michelangelo designed their uniforms. The colonel's son, age 13, is the youngest Swiss Guard. He plays the flute.






## THEY CHANGED THE WORLD

*Blessed are the patient; they shall inherit the land.*


—THE WORDS OF OUR LORD.

On a mountain top in a wild, rugged region not far from Rome, stand the massive stones of the Abbey of Monte Cassino. This old monastery has been

destroyed by armies several times during the troubled ages, and each time has been rebuilt by its patient monks.



The Catholic Faith had already made some headway among the half-civilized pagan people of the known world when a new movement began within the Church. Monte Cassino was its source. In western Europe many of the old Roman Army posts had little flocks of Christians. But Europe, once conquered and kept in order by the Roman Army, now was swept by war and full of barbarian invaders. Roman roads and bridges were left unrepaired. Farms were ruined; robbers roamed the countryside. Many Christian communities had been destroyed. Men could live only if they banded together under some strong leader ready to do battle at any moment.



Into the world of war and disorder there came streaming, from the gaunt mountain top of Monte Cassino, a peaceful army of patient monks. Their leader was a man who did much to reform the world. His name was Benedict. European and American civilization bears his stamp to this day.

Benedict had no idea of the effect he was to have on future ages. He was only one man, but he was a saint. Being a saint, he let God use him as a tool. A willing tool in God's hand can change the face of the earth, and that is just what Benedict did.

Saint Benedict was a strong and gentle soul who fell in love with God. He was a young student in Rome when he grew impatient with the empty talk and the shallow company that wasted his time. He had to find peace and quiet, to get better acquainted with his heavenly Friend. He left Rome and found a bleak mountain top where he stayed, praying joyfully for three years. Other men heard of the happy hermit and joined him, imitating his life.

Benedict had rare good sense and the old Roman love for law and order. As more and more young men flocked to him, he started the monastery of Monte Cassino where all could live a life of prayer and silence and work. In time, monasteries spread over Italy. Each one was the home of a family of monks, who obeyed their abbot as a father and did whatever work he assigned to them. The saints in the deserts of Egypt and Syria had led very hard lives of penance and fasting, but life in Saint Benedict's monasteries was not so severe. His monks ate and slept enough to keep up their strength, for in addition to his prayers each monk had some manual work to do every day. "Pray and work" was Benedict's motto.

Benedictine houses multiplied quickly, as more and more young men joined the order. Convents of nuns were set up, too. Some Benedictines went out of Italy and settled all over western Europe. They were missionaries, converting the barbarian warriors to a Christian life. They were experts in agriculture, supporting themselves from their own farms and teaching agriculture to the people, who gradually settled down to



lead orderly, law-abiding lives. They were teachers, educating some of the children in an age when great masses of the population cared nothing for book learning. They were artists, making pictures, statues, and all things for use in the churches that they built.

Villages grew up around each monastery, as people settled there to be near the church for religious services and instruction. The abbots and bishops had roads repaired and bridges built. And each monastery had a guest house, where passing travelers could stay in safety if there was no good inn in the neighborhood. Guests did not pay anything if they were poor; but if they were rich, they made whatever donation they thought was right.

One of the most important works of the monastery was done in the scriptorium, a room set aside for writing. There monks who were skilled artists spent their working hours copying books by hand, making letters of rare beauty, and adding little pictures in rainbow colors and gold. In those early years, these were the only books that people had, because the printing press had not been invented. When savage armies were burning and looting, the monks hid their precious books until the war was over. Then they usually converted the savages. Or at least, they went on copying books again.

The Pope sent Benedictines into faraway England, where they turned the land into a Catholic country. From England monks went to Germany, Denmark, Norway, Sweden, and Iceland. At one time there were three hundred houses of Benedictines in England alone; and in all of western Europe, there were thirty-seven thousand monasteries.

Many a nobleman and prince found his life empty and vain, and went into a monastery for the great adventure of finding God and serving mankind. In the monastery he took a new name, and his high station was forgotten. A man who lived in the year 1083 wrote that he had seen counts cooking the meals, and other noblemen feeding pigs at a monastery. Many monks became canonized saints. Even a swineherd from a mud cottage might become a monk. Although few men learned to read or write in those times, the monks were well-educated. If a monk were intelligent as well as good, he might in time become abbot, or bishop, or cardinal, or even pope. Democracy was working, where all could see it.

In the old pagan world, a poor man was held of little account. A master might whip or kill his slaves at will. Labor was despised. Only slaves worked with their hands. But the monks laboring in the fields could be seen both by slaves tending their lords' flocks or herds and by armored knights riding proudly on the roads near by. Thus sermons were preached without words. Labor was holy; Christ had worked as a carpenter. All men were born equal before God. Every man had his dignity as a child of God, made in God's image. The lesson was well taught. A slow, quiet revolution was at work in Europe. The revolution lasted to our day.

Through Saint Benedict and the monks of his order, the Church changed the course of Europe's history. Wherever Benedictines worked, men began to understand democracy, Christian dignity, and gentleness. Benedict set up a pattern for Christian living. Europe's civilization was stamped with that pattern; and so is our civilization.



## PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Fill in the blanks with the correct word or words.

1. The mountain range that forms the backbone of the Italian peninsula is the \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Part of the Alps extend into the \_\_\_\_\_ part of Italy.
3. Vatican City lies within the city of \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The large Italian island that lies at the tip of the peninsula is called \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Many Italian people have difficulty making a living because their country lacks \_\_\_\_\_.
6. St. Peter and St. Paul are buried in the city of \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The name of the great church that stands on Vatican Hill is \_\_\_\_\_.
8. The order of monks who did much to spread Christianity to different parts of Europe were the \_\_\_\_\_.

**Modern Italy.** Although Italy is the home of one of our oldest civilizations, it is young as a nation. Modern Italy came into being only about a hundred years ago. A number of small states were united by treaties, after several wars had been won.

After the first World War, Italy was full of disorder. Soldiers coming home could not find work. Some factory owners had grown rich making war materials. Wages were low, and many of the working people were hungry. A man named Benito Mussolini, a publisher of newspapers, made himself popular with the poor by promising them better living conditions. In a short time, he took over the whole government. For years there were no free elections in Italy. The people were afraid to speak out against the new Fascist government. Anyone who spoke his mind might be beaten by Mussolini's police; or he might be taken from his home in the middle of the night and put into prison.

However, Mussolini did many good things for his country. He had swamps drained to

make farm land; he organized business to provide jobs for workers; he brought cities up-to-date; he improved railroads and made trains run on time.

Mussolini's government did not last very long. He led his country into war, and brought it nearly to ruin. He himself was disgraced and killed toward the end of World War II.

**Catholic Action.** When the war was over, again there were disorder and hunger in the peninsula. The Communists, who were worse than the Fascists, tried very hard to gain power. However, our own United States sent money and food to Italy, and saw to it that the Italians had a chance to vote without fear for a new government.

Factory workers, lawyers and doctors, teachers and school children—all classes of people joined Catholic Action groups and set to work. The Communists started lunch counters for the poor workers to gain their votes. Catholic Action started better ones. The Communists started summer camps for children, to turn the children away from religion and to gain their parents' votes. Catholic Action started better camps and sent a million poor children to them.

Catholic Action leaders organized big meetings, and speakers told the truth about Communists to thousands of people. They printed and distributed papers to give the people information. They spread the truth and helped the poor. Every member of the Catholic groups did all he or she could for God's cause. The people of Italy had found out that their Faith was in danger, and that they had to work hard to save it and to save their country. They did work hard, and Italy was saved.

**Some interesting things about Italians.** Italy, with its large families, has a problem in finding land and jobs for everybody in a

small, mountainous country. Thousands of Italians emigrate to other lands, where they become hardworking and loyal citizens. If we consider only resources and industries, Italy is one of the poorer countries of the world. Italy is a rich country, however, in the sacredness of her family life and in her people, who are wise, sensible, and talented. It was an Italian scientist, Marconi, who invented the radio.

Italy is rich in her common people, with their good sense and their dignity. They know how to work hard and how to coax crops skillfully from barren land. They

know how to rest a little, sing and dance a little, and take an occasional day off from work for a happy time with friends.

Italy is a land of music lovers and artists. Great singers with beautiful voices are plentiful. The opera, a kind of play in which the words are sung instead of spoken, has long been part of Italian life, not only for the rich but for the common people. Painters and sculptors have filled Italian churches and palaces with art treasures.

Italy is rich in her people, with their Catholic Faith and culture dating back almost to the time of Christ.

47

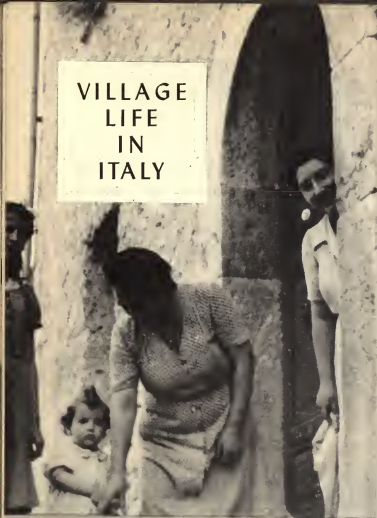
"Labor is beautiful and ennobling. Because it is productive, it continues the work begun by the Creator. Your art has the noble character of every profession that works with the earth. The farmer moistens the earth with his sweat and sows seeds that grow in its breast and furnish men with bread and fruits. The miner toils to take from the earth its

most deeply hidden treasures for the good of man. You potters work with this earth to change it from a dark and shapeless mass into something useful, beautiful, and brilliant."

—Adapted from an address of Pope Pius XII to a group of Italian potters.



# VILLAGE LIFE IN ITALY



Villagers live in houses grouped around church, school, and fountain. Such a small village was the home of a barefoot boy who grew up to be the Church's great and saintly Pope Pius X.



8 Spaghetti cooked with different delicious sauces is a favorite food. Schoolmaster Cherubini and his family enjoy it with salad, olives, and a bottle of sour, red Italian wine instead of coffee or tea.



1 Mr. Cherubini, the schoolmaster, after the pastor, is the most respected man in the village. The public school is a Catholic school. Religion and other studies are well taught. Girls have their own school. Italy has 26 universities, some over 500 years old.



5 Flocks of sheep and goats, owned by the families and herded by village boys, pass through the streets on way to new pasture. Sheep furnish wool, and goats provide milk and cheese. Both are butchered and sold for meat.



9 The schoolmaster helps his young son with his homework. Sometimes he reads to the family from the works of the great poet Dante, or they have a musical evening singing and playing together.





**2** Most village people are farmers who go out daily to tend small plots of land. Here one family's onion crop is prepared for market.



**3** The villager irrigates his small farm by hand with bucket and windlass during dry, hot summers. Hard work coaxes along big crops of sugar beets and rice.



**4** A few families own larger farms and teams of oxen. These animals are used to pull the plow and to haul loads of grain to market.



**6** On Sundays and holidays people from outlying farms come in to attend Mass. Afterwards they visit their friends who live in the village.



**7** Mocaroni and spaghetti are made in the village. The farmer's wheat is ground into flour, mixed with warm water to make a stiff dough. The dough is forced through small holes in a simple utensil. The long strings are then hung out to dry in the hot sun. The art of making this wholesome food was brought from China by Italian traders long ago.



**10** Young Pietro Cherubini is learning to play the flute. His father leads the band at all the important events.



**11** When grapes are harvested there is a festival with plays, band music, dancing, singing, and prayers to thank God for His gifts.



**12** The village priest is teaching metal craft to the older boys. He knows everybody in his parish and is honored and loved by all.

## PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Telling a Story. Choose any one of the following subjects and prepare an interesting story for your classmates.

1. Take an imaginary plane trip to Rome and relate what you see there, concluding with a visit to the Holy Father.

2. St. Peter and St. Paul lived with Our Lord. What arguments do you think they used to convert the Romans?

3. From what you have read in this chapter and from other books, tell the class how Rome became a great power and what caused its downfall.

4. Imagine that you have visited one of the early monasteries. Describe to the class the work which the monks were doing in and around the monastery.

5. Tell how the life of an American boy in a small town differs from that of an Italian boy who lives in a village.

**The cities of Italy.** During the Middle Ages Italy was not a united nation. There was no strong central government. In northern Italy the cities of Florence, Milan, and Venice, growing richer from trade and commerce, became separate states. Their citizens were skilled workers and merchants. Working men organized themselves into bands and governed themselves in a democratic way. Southern Italy and Sicily, on the other hand, were overrun by warriors from northern Europe, called Normans. In this region, people set up great estates under landowners who had peasants to work their farms for them. This difference in way of living between northern and southern Italy still goes on. There is much industry in the north; in the south, there are still some large landowners and many peasants on small plots of land.

Venice, a famous old city, is built on more than a hundred islands and has canals for many of its streets. Long, narrow boats called gondolas carry passengers through

the canal streets. People walk along passageways and over the many stone bridges to go from house to house. Venice is the chief Italian port on the Adriatic Sea.

Florence is built in a beautiful location near the steep slopes of the Apennines on the Arno River. It is another famous, old city, long a center of Italian culture. Its art galleries are known all over the world.

A great triangular area, in northern Italy, from Turin to Genoa to Milan, covers a powerful manufacturing and commercial region. Trains and factory machinery are run by hydroelectric power produced in the Alps. Railway lines connect the region with other parts of Europe. Canals, rivers, and lakes form a network of waterways for commerce. Five hundred years ago, Milan silk was famous; now silks, velvets, and other fine textiles are beautifully made by skilled workers. Milan's churches, cathedral, and art galleries, though less important than those of Florence, hold some of the greatest art treasures of the world.

Turin, on the Po River, is a city of factories which turn out silk, furniture, and iron and steel goods. Here are the Academy of Science and a university founded before Columbus was born. In this city, in modern times, Saint John Bosco started his schools and homes for the sons of poor working families. His followers now teach useful trades in their schools all over the world, and they train boys to live as good Christians. Their schools are located in Europe, the Americas, Asia, and from the African deserts to the cold plains of Patagonia.

Genoa, a busy port on the northwest coast, is Italy's leading seaport. It is through the port of Genoa that many of the raw materials needed in Milan and Turin are imported. The manufactured products of these cities and others in the Po Valley are



exported through Genoa. Textiles, paper, leather goods, and furniture are made here. Its palaces were built by rich traders long ago. Many fishermen live along the shore. This city was the home of Christopher Columbus.

Naples, a large seaport, lies on the shore of a beautiful bay, with the volcano Mount Vesuvius spouting fire and smoke at its back. Fertile lowlands near the city make a rich farming region. It is an important port and handles much of the trade of southern Italy.

Assisi, in central Italy, is built on a hill among olive groves and vineyards. This charming, quiet place was the home of the gentle Saint Francis of Assisi. He lived at a time when the people of Italy were all Catholics, and every town and village had its church. Great cities had grown in wealth and power. The Mediterranean Sea was a busy shipping lane. Trade between Europe, Asia, and Africa passed through Italian seaports. Rich merchant princes built palaces and churches glowing with pictures. Musicians and writers found work to do and patrons to pay for the work. Italian scholars studied and taught at great universities. Scientists, inventors, and explorers were numerous and busy. The land was full of money and trade, art and song.

Life was easy and prosperous and men began to love riches more than God. It seemed that men's hearts were again growing cold and selfish. Then the young man named Francis came out of the charming town of Assisi and went through Italy like a flame of fire. He walked barefoot, clothed in a

garment made of an old sack, singing of the love of God. Other young men joined him, and went throughout Italy, preaching the joy and the love of poverty for Christ's sake. The Franciscan Order spread over the world. Its members did much to carry the Faith to the Indians of America. Our city of San Francisco was at first a mission for the Indians and is named after Saint Francis.

Rome, the capital of Italy and the religious capital of the world, is built on low hills along the Tiber River. Here are the ruins of ancient buildings that were built when Rome ruled much of the known world. Still standing are parts of the Colosseum, a large stadium where early Christians were fed to the lions. Outside the city is the vast system of tunnels called the catacombs. There the early Christians used to hide in times of persecution; there they buried their martyrs, and there the priests celebrated Holy Mass upon the tombs of the saints. Pilgrims to Rome have always made loving visits to the catacombs and the Colosseum—places made holy by the early Catholics who suffered very much for the Faith that comes so easily to most of us. Rome is filled with famous, old churches containing relics of saints and works of art.



Venice, called the "Queen of the Adriatic," is built on 118 islands separated by canals crossed by 378 bridges. Passengers and freight pass through the city in steamers, motorboats, and rowboats called gondolas. Venice was once a rich city with fleets of trading ships.

# THE ITALIANS: Their Land and Work

Italy, about the size of the State of New Mexico, has about ninety times as many people. It is one of the most densely settled countries in Europe. Most of Italy is a peninsula. It lies in the direct path of the great Eurasian mountain system, and much of its land is steep and rugged, with volcanic peaks which erupt from time to time.

Italy is a sunny land with mild winters, except in the northern part. Notice how the high, rugged Alps lie in a half circle around the northern part of Italy. The mountains protect the lowlands of the Po Valley from cold north winds. Most of the rain, brought in by westerly winds, falls on the western slopes.

Find the Po River on the map. For centuries it has been filling in the Adriatic sea with silt, making more fine, rich farm lands every year. The Po Valley makes up about one fifth of Italy and about half of the people live there. It is a great farming and manufacturing region, often called the garden of Italy. Po Valley farmers raise corn, wheat, sugar beets, rice and hemp. Rice is grown in wet paddies by means of irrigation. Mountain streams furnish water, since summers are somewhat dry. It is in the northern part of Italy that silkworms are fed on mulberry trees and spin the raw silk used to make beautiful cloth.

The lowlands of the peninsula, the "boot" part of Italy, have the typical Mediterranean climate: hot, dry summers and mild, somewhat rainy winters. People live out of doors most of the time. Farmers raise Mediterranean-type crops on the lowlands, and graze sheep and goats on the hillsides.

Although Italians are hard working, clever farmers, they can scarcely raise enough food in their small mountainous country to feed their large population. Some farm land has been added by draining swamps, and in some places two or more crops are grown on the same land every year.

Wheat is the chief cereal raised, and it is ground into flour for use in bread and spaghetti.

Throughout Italy grapes are raised in vineyards on the mountainsides, and much of the crop is made into wine. Italian farmers practice "three story farming."

They plant fruit trees with grape vines between them. The vines are held up by the trees. Then grain is sown on the ground between trees and vines. Great skill is needed and plenty of vegetable and animal waste for fertilizer must be used to make the soil produce such an abundance of crops.

The olive tree grows on rocky hillsides and in dry sections. It can stand the dry summers, and produce crops from poor soil. Olives can be preserved while they are green, or eaten when brown and ripe. Many are put into bags and pressed until the olive oil is forced out. Ripe olives and olive oil are rich foods, full of vitamins.

Raw materials are scarce in Italy, and not much manufacturing is done. Italy is poor in most minerals. Mountain waterfalls are harnessed to generate electricity—the substitute for coal. Near the Mediterranean shore some people manufacture salt from sea water by evaporating it in shallow vats.

Beautiful white marble is quarried in a number of places especially at Carrara in the northern Apennines. It is used throughout the world. From ancient days this marble has been carved into beautiful statues and made into altars and monuments.

Fishermen sail their small boats all along the Mediterranean shores. They bring in large catches of sardines and other fish. The canning of fish in oil is an important part of the fishing industry.

Sicily, about the size of the state of Vermont, is a land of hardy peasants who make the volcanic rocks of their island support them and their families by planting every spot with vineyards, lemon and orange orchards, and almond and olive groves. The climate is almost tropical. The fertile sea provides the rest of their living. Mt. Etna often erupts and has been known to bury whole villages in lava. The people mine the sulphur deposited by the volcano, and export it to other countries.

Sardinia, another mountainous island, is much like Sicily as to climate and crops, but there are fewer people. About seventy smaller islands are also part of Italy.

52

1 Compare the climate and surface of the northern part of Italy with that in the southern part of the country. Name at least two factors that have a definite influence on the climate.



Total population 47,000,000. Catholics number 46,837,400. Estimate the percentage of Catholics.

2 With your finger trace a triangle from Turin to Genoa to Milan. This is the great manufacturing and commercial region of Italy. What products are manufactured?



What grain do Italians raise and impart to make flour for their favorite food?

3 Italian farmers are clever. Their country is mountainous and small. Describe how they get the most out of their God-given resources. What crops do they grow?



**6** Where is Mt. Etna and why do people continue to live near it? Name products and exports of the island on which Etna is located. How do the products of Sardinia compare with it?



If you could go to Italy, what cities would you choose to visit and why?

**5** Make a list of products according to regions: 1. the Po Valley in northern Italy; 2. the section around the city of Naples; 3. the coastal plain northward from Rome.

**4** Why do Italians have few dairy cows? They use olive oil instead of butter. Why is olive oil a good and easily obtained substitute for butter?

© Capital City

--- International Boundary

Scale of Miles

0 50 100

General Drafting Co., Inc.



Do you think the home town of Columbus had much to do with making him an explorer and navigator? Why?

## Catholic Employer

In the hilly land of northern Italy, not far from Venice, lives a Catholic nobleman who is both an important business man and a good Christian. His family controls fifteen textile factories and employs fifteen thousand workers.

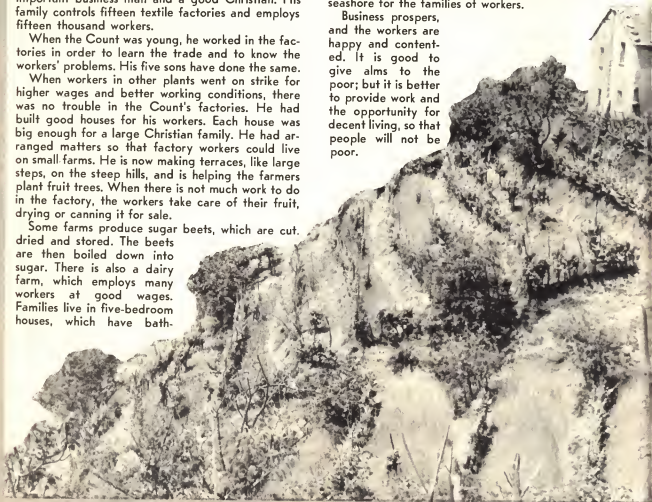
When the Count was young, he worked in the factories in order to learn the trade and to know the workers' problems. His five sons have done the same.

When workers in other plants went on strike for higher wages and better working conditions, there was no trouble in the Count's factories. He had built good houses for his workers. Each house was big enough for a large Christian family. He had arranged matters so that factory workers could live on small farms. He is now making terraces, like large steps, on the steep hills, and is helping the farmers plant fruit trees. When there is not much work to do in the factory, the workers take care of their fruit, drying or canning it for sale.

Some farms produce sugar beets, which are cut, dried and stored. The beets are then boiled down into sugar. There is also a dairy farm, which employs many workers at good wages. Families live in five-bedroom houses, which have bath-

rooms on the first and second floors. Each family has a little plot of land and can keep two pigs and chickens. Some families buy their houses and land. The Count has built a fine vacation colony on the seashore for the families of workers.

Business prospers, and the workers are happy and contented. It is good to give alms to the poor; but it is better to provide work and the opportunity for decent living, so that people will not be poor.



### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Copy the cities in Column A. Next to each write the item found in column B for which the city is famous.

- | A         | B                        |
|-----------|--------------------------|
| 1. Venice | capital city of Italy    |
| 2. Turin  | home of St. Francis      |
| 3. Naples | manufacturing fine silks |
| 4. Rome   | on island of Sicily      |
| 5. Assisi | city near Mt. Vesuvius   |

6. Palermo city of islands and canals
7. Milan world famous art galleries
8. Florence Italy's leading seaport
9. Genoa manufacturing city on the Po River

Give a good reason for each of the following statements.

1. Olives and olive oil are good substitutes for butter.
2. Italian farmers do not raise enough food to feed the large population.
3. The canning of fish in oil is an important industry in Italy.

## 2. The People of Spain and Portugal

### Living in Spain

From ancient times to the present day, travelers have loved to visit Spain for its sunny skies, its great variety of climate and scenery, and most of all, to see its charming, happy people. Cool summers in the mountains, warm winters near the coast, beautiful scenery, plenty of water power from mountain streams, fertile farming areas—all these are valuable natural resources. But Spain's greatest resource is her people. They are a quiet people, with courage and good manners.

After a squadron of our American Navy had visited Spain, our admiral said: "The Spanish people are proud and stubborn. So are we. The Spanish people merit our understanding and friendship." By "proud and stubborn," the admiral meant dignified and strong of will.

**Spanish background.** Spain was once a Roman colony. The Spanish language is a modern form of Latin. The Spanish are a mixture of various tribes who settled in Spain in ancient times. They have been Catholics since very early days. Saint James, the cousin of Jesus, is said to have started the Church in Spain. Part of Spain was conquered by the Moors, a Moslem people from northern Africa. The Spanish had to fight fierce wars to drive out the Moors and regain freedom. This long contact with the Moslems left its mark on the Spanish people. They gained some learning and culture from the Moors; they also became skilled in warfare and in the stern defense of their Catholic Faith.

Spaniards have always been seafarers and adventurers. They explored and conquered great areas of North America and South

America, and a large part of the New World was settled by them. It was the good Queen Isabella of Spain who sent the Italian, Christopher Columbus, on his famous voyage from Palos. Isabella and King Ferdinand were pious Catholics, and they wished Columbus to make it possible for missionary priests to sail to the Far East. When Spanish settlers went to America, the King of Spain sent missionaries along; and the Spanish people gave vast sums of money to build churches and missions for the American natives, who were mistakenly called Indians, because Columbus thought he had reached India.

Spain was once a great, rich land with many colonies in the New World. Spanish ships sailed the oceans, bringing home gold, silver, and jewels. However, the Spaniards were beaten in several naval battles against England. In time her colonies in America won their independence. Spain lost much of her empire and her riches, and most of her glory departed.

**The greatest glory.** However, during later years, when men turned against God and much of Europe was lost to the Church, the Spanish people kept their Faith. The Catholic Faith was part of their lives. Missioners from Spain had been going out to the non-Christian areas of the world bringing millions of souls to Christ, civilizing and educating savages and even cannibals. Saint Dominic of Castile and his followers preached to non-Catholics. A famous disciple of Saint Dominic was the Italian, Saint Thomas Aquinas, one of the greatest thinkers who ever lived. The Dominicans started missions, schools, and colleges in many lands.

Saint Ignatius Loyola, born in the Basque



country, started the great religious "army" called the Company of Jesus. Its members are always ready to go everywhere to do whatever is needed to defend or spread God's kingdom. Spanish Jesuits in South America started the great civilizing settlements among the Indians, some of which are known as the Reductions of Paraguay. A Spanish woman, Saint Teresa of Avila, founded a branch of the Carmelite Order of nuns, who do not teach but spend their time praying and doing penance for sinners and for God's kingdom.

**Church and state.** In our own United States, our Government makes laws and enforces them, and takes care of certain other matters that concern us all. For instance, our Government—"Uncle Sam"—runs the United States mail, puts up Post Office buildings, and pays salaries to postmasters and letter carriers. However, "Uncle Sam" does not build any churches or pay the salaries of priests. The Catholic people take care of these expenses by putting money in the church collection on Sundays. In our country the Catholic Church is free to preach and teach, and Catholics may practice their religion as they wish. All other kinds of religions are also free. Thus we have what is called separation of church and state.

In Spain, Church and state are not separated. They are united. The Catholic Church is the state Church. The public schools in Spain are Catholic schools, where religion is taught and children are led to live as pious Catholics. Churches are built and supported by the state, and priests receive salaries from the state, as our postmasters do from "Uncle Sam."

Spanish Catholic citizens support the Church by paying taxes which in turn keep up their church and school. Divorce is not

allowed by law. Therefore, families are usually kept together, and children are spared the shame and sorrow of having parents separated. There are lax Catholics in Spain as elsewhere, but their children learn their Faith in the public schools, in spite of unhappy home conditions, and so have a chance to be good Catholics. Often the children even bring such parents back to the practice of the Faith.

**Trouble in modern Spain.** During modern times, many of the Spanish people, like some of us, began to take their Faith too easily. Life is pleasant for a pious Catholic, saying his prayers, attending Mass, receiving the sacraments, living in peace, and trying to save his soul. That is, however, not enough. The Catholic Faith is not a sleepy religion. Catholics must be happy warriors, always on a crusade for God. Many Spanish Catholics forgot this. In some places, they forgot to tell the story of Christ to the little children; forgot to teach the poor; forgot to give just wages and working conditions to the laborers among them. For hundreds of years there were not enough schools, and so many people knew little about their religion.

Spain is a farming country, and most of its people were, and still are, peasants. A few wealthy people owned much of the land and paid very low wages to their laborers. Many families lived in great poverty. Mothers had to work in the fields all day. The children had no chance to go to school. Those peasants who owned land had so few acres that only a very poor living could be scratched from them.

A great Spanish statesman wrote to the Queen Mother Marie Christine, "The poor people have lost their patience because the rich people have lost their love and charity."



This is the kind of situation that Communists love. Where people are poor, untaught, and unhappy, the Communists move in and start trouble. In Spain they fought in a terrible civil war, in which a million people were killed. The Communists hate religion. When they were in control, churches were torn down, and priests and nuns were tortured and killed. Finally, the Communist armies were defeated, and peace was restored.

**Spain today.** Spain is the first European country to defeat the Communists. The Communists took away millions of dollars belonging to Spain, and left much of the country in ruins. However, Spain paid her debts and began to rebuild long before much richer nations. The Spanish people learned a hard lesson and now have made some good laws to help the poor and the workers, and to provide education. Many of these laws follow exactly the rules given by recent Popes for making society better everywhere. Gradually, they are being put into effect.

According to the new laws, everything must be done to keep families together. Their object is to help every Spaniard to own a home, some property, tools, and his own business if he wishes. When a business makes extra money, the owner is encouraged to share the profits with his workers. Men who do good work are rewarded by special money prizes; those who knowingly do poor work may be fined. Men may not be discharged from their jobs, but a woman worker must give up her job when she marries. She then receives a nice gift of one month's pay for each year she has worked in the factory or business.

The Spanish Government lends money to any good man who wishes to start a small business. Government loans are also

## MODERN HEROES



Luis

During the war against the Spanish Communists, something took place that shows the noble Spanish character. Colonel José Moscardo and his troops were defending the fortress called Alcazar. For a long time they were encircled and bombarded by the Communist forces, but the colonel refused to surrender. The Communists thought they knew a way to break him down. They had captured his young son, Luis. They forced Luis to speak to his father by telephone, across the battle lines.

"Papa," began Luis.

"What is it, my son?"

"They say they will shoot me if you don't surrender!"

"Then commend your soul to God, cry 'Hurrah for Spain!' and die like a hero."

"That is simple, Papa. I can do that."

"Good-bye, my son."

"Good-bye, Papa."

The Communists shot young Moscardo. The colonel did not surrender the fortress.

granted to young couples who wish to marry and set up housekeeping. A fourth of the loan is forgiven for each child that is born. Large families receive money payments for each child under eighteen. Special help is given for the children's education. Taxes are reduced for fathers of large families; bus lines provide special, cheap tickets for such families; and business firms give the fathers first choice at good jobs.

By law, builders who put up houses which are rented to working people at low rates are given special bounties. The law also aims to make owners of large estates divide up their land into smaller farms for peasant owners. When farmers are settling on new lands, large families are allowed first choice; in the cities, large families have first claim on low-rental houses.

Spain badly needs irrigation systems and river projects like our Tennessee Valley Au-



The Spanish love bull fights. Here the bull has unhorsed a fighter and is about to charge him. At the end of a fight the bull is killed and sold for beef.

Devout Catholics of Seville carry the statue of Christ's Mother in a procession through the streets.

A ship approaches Gibraltar, Europe's rocky southwestern tip.



Holy Mass is celebrated on a mountain top in the Basque country of northern Spain. Priests go along with the villagers on their holiday climb up the mountain.

Music and folk dancing on the island of Majorca, the playground and vacation spot of Spain.

thority. Millions of acres of land are too dry to yield much to the hard-working farmers. The Spanish Government cannot carry on such expensive public works, since the civil war left much of the country in ruins. It has, however, set up a number of electric power plants. Some of these produce electricity by burning soft coal, and others, by using water power.

**Some interesting things about the Spanish.** Spaniards are among the world's most famous writers, musicians, artists, and thinkers. Spanish writers and publishers put out many new books every year. One of the world's great Catholic universities, at Salamanca, was founded five centuries ago.

Spanish missionary priests, Brothers, and Sisters, still go out to India, China, and other mission lands, as well as to the needy parts of South America.

Spaniards like to go on pilgrimages to Santiago to pray to the Apostle Saint James. Spanish soldiers and marines, with their officers, make the journey across country on foot, singing hymns. The Catholics of Spain do not know anything about "fish on Friday." Hundreds of years ago, the Pope excused the Spanish nation from keeping the Friday abstinence because of the hardships of the long wars during which they drove the Moslems out of Europe.

There are only a few thousand Protestants in Spain, and about half of them are foreigners. They are allowed to build Protestant churches and to worship in them. They are also allowed to build and support their own schools. If their children go to public schools, they must study the Catechism as the other pupils do.

In northern Spain near the French border, from the mountains to the sea, stretches the little land of the Basques. These people

are not really Spanish. They speak a language unlike any other in the world, and have their own customs. Some scholars think the Basques descended from a few people who were left alive when Atlantis, a continent known in fables, sank into the ocean. The Basques are independent, hard-working, and skillful fishermen, peasants, and foresters. They are devout Catholics. The great Jesuit missionary, Saint Francis Xavier, was the son of a Basque nobleman.

#### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Answer each of the following questions in a complete sentence or a short paragraph.

1. What are Spain's most important natural resources?
  2. Why are Spain's people considered her greatest resource?
  3. What Moslem people from North Africa were driven out of Spain many centuries ago?
  4. Where did Spain establish many colonies after Columbus' voyages?
  5. How does the Catholic Church in Spain differ from that in our own country?
  6. Why were the Communists successful in starting a civil war in Spain?
  7. What lesson have the Spanish people learned from their civil war with the Communists?
  8. Mention several ways in which the present Spanish government has been able to help the poor people of Spain.
  9. What will be needed before Spain can become a greater producer of food crops?
  10. Give two reasons why Spain can truly be called a Catholic country.
  11. In what part of Spain do the Basques live?
- Write an interesting story on one of the following. Look up some additional facts in other books.
- a) A Catholic family in Spain
  - b) A Spanish pilgrimage
  - c) Seeing a bullfight
  - d) Spanish explorers in America

1 List the minerals mined in Portugal. Transportation is poor and electric power is scarce. How do these factors affect the development of mines?



Total population of Portugal 8,402,000. Catholics 7,782,000. What percentage is Catholic?

2 Make a list of Portugal's exports. From these items conclude what are the chief industries. Name the kind of fish which is exported.



Only about one third of Portugal is cultivated, although the people are mostly farmers. Give two reasons for this.

3 Many Portuguese have emigrated to America. Why do so many live in Gloucester, Mass., and in other New England coast cities?



4 Which parts of Spain would you judge to have a mild climate? Mention several reasons for this. What fruits thrive in this area?



In world production of olive oil and quicksilver Spain is first. Note where each is produced and find out their uses.

5 Study the map and make a note of where you would place irrigation systems. What are some of the advantages that would result?



Total population of Spain 27,502,700. Catholics 27,452,700. What percent is Catholic?

6 There is a high, dry plateau in Spain. Locate it. Madrid is near the center. Why is it dry? What are the main industries in this area?

# THE SPANISH AND PORTUGUESE: Their Land and Work

The southwestern tip of Europe extends out into the Atlantic Ocean and bottles up the waters of the Mediterranean. This tip of Europe is called the Iberian Peninsula. It is like a clenched fist reaching out from Europe into the stormy Atlantic.

The rocky fortress of Gibraltar at the "bottle neck" can command ships of commerce and war that move between Mediterranean waters and the Atlantic. On this Iberian Peninsula are two famous old countries, Spain and Portugal. The great mountain system that runs through Eurasia begins here. Most of the land is hilly, and the Pyrenees Mountains separate Spain from France. The climate is rather dry, although the westerly winds bring considerable rain to the northwestern regions.

Despite dry climate and mountainous land, most of the people of Spain and Portugal are farmers. Irrigation is used to produce grain and vegetable crops where there is a supply of water. Steep slopes are planted to tree crops. Grapes, olives, oranges, lemons, and the cork oak do well in the Mediterranean climate which is dry and hot in summer, mild, with some rain, in winter. Spaniards who came to America in early days found this same type of climate in California, and introduced their native fruits there. In the cooler, moister climate of northwestern Spain, vegetables and grain thrive. Many Spanish and Portuguese herd sheep and other animals on the mountain pastures. Cold mountain air makes the sheep grow thick coats, and some of the world's finest wool is produced here. The Spaniards and Portuguese make warm blankets from it.

Among minerals mined are iron, coal, and quicksilver. The mountainous sections where these minerals are mined lack many railroads and highways. That is why mining has never become a very important industry here.

Manufacturing is done mostly in the homes and in small workshops, using the country's natural products. Peasants work their land with animal power and small implements.

The Guadalquivir River valley in Spain has fertile soil and a delightful Mediterranean climate. Here irrigation is used to grow fruit, and cattle graze on the pasture lands. Seville is the chief city in this region.

Along the coast in southeastern Spain is another region of fine sunny climate and mild winters. Val-

encia is the chief city and seaport. Here, besides the usual Mediterranean crops, some people raise mulberry trees and silkworms.

In northeastern Spain in the Ebro River valley, there is fertile soil. Fine crops are raised wherever there is water for irrigation.

The interior of Spain is a high, dry plateau, dusty in summer, and swept by cold winds in winter. There are few trees; some farming and herding are done. Madrid, the capital of Spain, is near the center of the plateau, and the railroads and highways lead to this important city.

At Miranda de Ebro there is a large plant where wheat and rye straw from the farmers' fields are made into rayon thread for use in weaving cloth.

Shipbuilding is done at Barcelona on the Mediterranean Sea. The new shipyards and dry docks are among the best in Europe, with up-to-date buildings and offices, and expert workmen who are trained in a modern school. Ships' machinery and Diesel engines are made at Valencia.

At Coruna, large deposits of soft coal are used to make petroleum and chemical fertilizers. At Bilbao high grade iron ore from northern Spain is shipped to Great Britain.

Portugal lies along the seacoast, and its sons have known ships, winds, and salt water for thousands of years. The country does not front on the gentle Mediterranean, but on the storm-lashed Atlantic Ocean. The beaches are rocky, swept by gales, and hardy Portuguese sailors and fishermen are among the world's best.

In some places grapevines grow on steps dug in canyon walls by generations of hardy farmers. Port wine from Portugal is famous all over the world. Windmills using sea breezes for power, grind grain into flour. They are set on nearly every hill top.

Lisbon, the capital, was the home of the great Saint Anthony of Padua of whom the Portuguese are very fond. Lisbon with one of the best harbors in Europe is the chief seaport of Portugal. Today the city is also a great center for air transportation. A person may fly from Lisbon to important cities in Europe, North America, South America, and Africa.

Another important Portuguese port is Oporto. The city is famous as a shipping point for the port wine made from the grapes that grow in many parts of the country.

61



Certain styles of houses called Spanish. What are they like?

7 Locate a well-watered section near the coast of Spain where the people live by farming and fruit raising.



What two industries are necessary to the wine-makers of Spain?

8 On the map find a place connected with: St. Teresa, Columbus, St. Francis Xavier, Our Lady's Immaculate Heart, St. Dominic, St. Ignatius, St. Anthony.



In Europe Spain is first in the production of wool and second in rice. Where is each produced?





### Living in Portugal

Portugal is a country of bright sunlight and waving palm trees. Its white or pale colored houses with roofs of red tiles are surrounded by gardens spilling over with flowers of scarlet, violet, and bright sky-blue.

It is an old Catholic country, where only one tenth of the population is non-Catholic. Signs of a Catholic culture are everywhere, in the fine old churches and monasteries, and in the courtesy and kindness of the people. It is a Latin country, once part of the Roman Empire. One thoughtful traveler has remarked that in all Latin countries children are especially loved. In Portugal many people have large families, their houses filled with boys and girls. Grownups are delighted to talk to children, and older brothers and sisters like to play with the younger ones.

**Portuguese background.** During the great years of discovery and exploration, Portuguese adventurers were among the boldest. Portugal grew rich in trade and in colonies. The little country, not quite so large as our State of Virginia, soon held much of the known world. The rich merchants of Venice and other Mediterranean cities were



A Portuguese fishing fleet closes in on a catch of struggling fish. The floats of a long line of nets can be seen stretching out into the open sea. One daring fisherman has jumped into the water to get his fish.

sick at heart, for the new trade lanes around Africa by-passed them and the greatness of their cities was no more. Spain and Portugal were rivals in exploring and settling South America. Instead of fighting it out, they quite sensibly allowed the Pope to act as umpire. The Holy Father divided up the continent between them. Portugal, therefore, settled Brazil, and Spain took the countries to the west. Portuguese is, to this day, the language spoken in Brazil; while Spanish is used in most of the other parts of South America. In time Brazil became an independent republic, and the mother country lost much of her wealth and power. However, Portugal still has island possessions and colonies in Asia and Africa.

**Real glory.** In the old days of her mighty empire, Portugal was great in something more important than trade and riches. Portuguese Jesuits went out to teach and preach in many parts of the world. They learned difficult tongues and invented ways of writing many languages never before put on paper. They published grammars and dictionaries for other missionaries who were to follow. They wrote books about the geography, history, and customs of people in unknown parts of China, Brazil, Japan, Tibet, India, and Africa. They translated great Chinese books into European languages, and taught science to Chinese scholars. Before the days of airplanes, automobiles, trains, or steamships, they made adventurous journeys to the ends of the world. Portuguese missionaries left a network of Christian settlements wherever they stayed.

In Brazil the missionaries laid the foundation of a Catholic state. It is still one of the world's best examples of friendliness between people of different races and colors. Unfortunately a weak Portuguese king, misled by an evil man who was his favorite and advisor, ordered the Society of Jesus disbanded and all Jesuits imprisoned. Since thousands of the missionaries of that day were Jesuits, the work of civilizing and Christianizing in many parts of the world was given a setback from which it has never recovered. Just as a man like Saint Benedict can change the world for good, so sometimes one bad man can spoil part of God's Kingdom and bring ruin to millions. These things happened about the time a boy named George Washington was growing up in America.

Portuguese fishermen bid goodbye to the statue of their patroness, Christ's Mother. They are sending it as their gift to the Portuguese Catholic fishermen's church of Our Lady of Good Voyage at Gloucester, Massachusetts.

**Modern Portugal.** Portugal was a kingdom for hundreds of years. In modern times a group of its citizens started a revolution. The king was shot down and there was a wild period of disorder in the country. A so-called republic was set up. The country had long been badly run, both by its weak kings and its dishonest leaders. They taxed the people and spent the money on themselves. Roads were mere mule trails. Telephone and telegraph lines were few. The nation was deeply in debt with no money in the treasury.

The leaders of the successful revolt hated the Catholic Church. They persecuted Catholics and made fun of religion in their books and newspapers. During these years of trouble there were still many good and pious Catholics in Portugal, especially among the poor people, the peasants, and the fishermen. It was to the children of such poor families that a wonderful thing happened, about the time that the first world war was drawing to an end.



## A Message for Our Times



A photograph taken in 1917 of Jacinta, Francisco, and Lucia, shepherd children of Fatima.

At an open place near a tree, while crowds looked on in wonder, the Blessed Virgin visited the three children many times and spoke to them. "Pray and make sacrifices for sinners," she said. "Many souls go to hell because there is no one to make sacrifices for them. Say the Rosary, and after the 'Glory be' of each decade add 'O my Jesus, forgive us our sins, save us from the fire of hell, lead all souls to heaven, especially those most in need of Thy Mercy.'"

Our Lady also told the children that a chapel should be built there in her honor. World War I was going on at the time. There were great suffering and sorrow in the world. Our Lady told the children:



Pilgrims now come to pray, to place flowers before Our Lady's statue, to do penance, to beg for favors, and to give thanks.



The pair peasant parents of Jacinta and Francisco. A woman whose husband was cured walks 300 yards on her knees to thank Our Lady.



Mr. Mendes, mayor of the town, doubted. He repented his sins and believed after the Miracle of the sun. Many sick people came and same are cured. The man on the right, once a cripple, now walks.

"God wishes to start in the world, devotion to my Immaculate Heart. If people change their bad lives, pray, do penance, say the Rosary, many souls will be saved. The war is going to end but if people do not stop offending God, soon a more terrible war will start. I ask for the world to be consecrated to my Immaculate Heart and for people to receive Holy Communion the first Saturday of each month to make up for everybody's sins. If these things are done, Russia will be converted and there will be peace. If not, errors will spread through the world . . . there will be wars and persecutions; nations will be destroyed; but in the end my Immaculate Heart will win. Russia will be converted. Peace will come."

So spoke Mary, God's mother, to the three children. Then she worked a great miracle while thousands of people watched. The sun whirled around and shot out rainbow colors. People flocked to Fatima, and many did penance and prayed. World War I ended. But men were still wicked, and World War II began as Our Lady had foretold. Communism spread from Russia to many parts of the world. Today men, women, and children all over the world say the Rosary for sinners, pray and do penance, and receive Holy Communion on Saturdays for Our Lady.



The chapel which Our Lady asked for has been built. 200,000 pilgrims from all over the world join in the candle-light procession at night. At the crowning of the statue of Our Lady 500,000 were present. Fatima is no longer a quiet village.





### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Give a good reason for each of the following statements.

1. Portugal is called a Latin country.
2. Portuguese is spoken in Brazil.
3. Portugal has island possessions and colonies in Asia and Africa.
4. Pilgrims come by the thousands to a Portuguese village called Fatima.
5. Spain and Portugal settled their territorial troubles in South America without fighting a war.

**A bright future.** After the visits of Our Lady, Faith and good Christian living grew stronger in Portugal. The people were tired of their very bad government. With the help of the army and some of the generals, the people turned out the dishonest leaders and chose wise and honest men with Catholic ideals to guide them. In a short time the land was at peace, and the people were at work building a new Portugal. The nation's money affairs were set in order for the first time in hundreds of years.

Portugal, unlike many larger and richer nations, now has no big debts and needs no very heavy taxes to run her government. The country has now been improved with a few fine motor roads, some railways, and telephone and telegraph lines. However, transportation and communication are still poor. Harbors have been improved and many houses built. New laws have been passed to help the people. Church and state are separate, and both Catholics and non-Catholics may worship as they please.

**An interesting republic.** Portugal is no longer a kingdom. It is a republic, but considerably different from our own. It is governed by what we call a *corporative state*. A corporative state may be explained in this way. A man lives first in his family, sec-

ondly in his work. In Portugal, men who work at one trade belong to a society like a big club. They call this "club" a guild. Fishermen, farmers, wine makers, and cork industry workers—each trade has its own guild. As workers have their guilds, so managers and employers have theirs. At one time working men all over Catholic Europe belonged to guilds and managed their business affairs through them. The guild system stayed on in Portugal until very modern times. Then wars and foreign rulers brought the country nearly to ruin, from which it has slowly been recovering.

The new state is a modern way of working out a guild system. The Portuguese guilds elect members who meet and take part in the government of the country. That is, workers and managers of each kind of business choose a member to represent them in a house of law makers. The members of this group represent different trades and industries. Disputes between workers and owners are settled peacefully; labor troubles are few. Strikes, which in other countries are quite proper as a means of obtaining justice, are not necessary in Portugal.

**A model Catholic state.** The new Portuguese state was laid out after a plan suggested by Pope Pius XI in his encyclical called, "Forty Years After." Portugal's laws give everybody the right to own property. The laws also regulate prices and wages so that no one group of people shall impose on another. The aim is to have as many families as possible owning farms or small businesses.

It is possible that one large farm run by a wealthy man with expensive machinery might produce crops efficiently and make large sums of money for the owner. This is not good if as a result many families must live with no land at all. It is likely that one





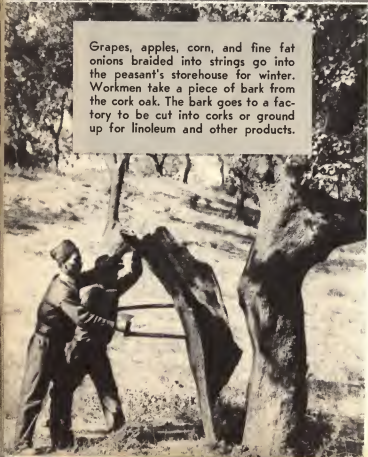
The Portuguese love children. In the city of Coimbra there is a children's park with fifty little cottages just the size for children to play in. It has a little cathedral, fairy castles, small streets, fences, gates, and lamp posts, also tiny, child-size statues. Flowers bloom everywhere.

large company with a fleet of steamships could catch fish more efficiently than many poorer fishermen owning their small boats. But this should not be if it prevents many men from owning property and enjoying good living conditions. The Popes favor

those plans which insure a good way of life to the families of a nation. God's world does not exist merely that business may run smoothly. The world was made to be shared by all, and to help every man in soul and body.



Grapes, apples, corn, and fine fat onions braided into strings go into the peasant's storehouse for winter. Workmen take a piece of bark from the cork oak. The bark goes to a factory to be cut into corks or ground up for linoleum and other products.



In Catholic Portugal there are very many small farms run by peasants who own their land. There are also many fishermen who own their boats. These small owners are increasing, not decreasing as in many other countries. The laws of Portugal make things easier for the owner of a small home industry. The laws also protect families and help parents support their children, raise, and educate them. Families are supposed to work together as much as possible. The Portuguese law does not favor large blocks of crowded flats for working people's homes. Each family is to own a separate house, with outdoor play space for the children.

#### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Copy each sentence and complete it by choosing the correct ending.

1. The name of the peninsula on which Spain and Portugal are located is the  
Iberian      Balkan      Scandinavian
2. The climate in much of Spain and Portugal is  
rainy      dry      cold
3. The Pyrenees Mountains separate Spain from  
Portugal      France      Switzerland
4. The interior of Spain is  
a plain      a plateau      mountainous
5. Spain is an important country in the production of  
cotton      silk      wool
6. The part of Spain where high grade iron ore is obtained is the  
north      east      south
7. The capital city of Spain is  
Barcelona      Madrid      Valencia
8. A city that is a great center for air transportation is  
Lisbon      Seville      Cadiz
9. A tree product for which Spain and Portugal are famous is  
cork      lumber      chestnuts
10. Spain leads the world in the production of  
iron ore      soft coal      quicksilver

### 3. France: Land and People

France lies about halfway between the North Pole and the equator. It is in the same latitude as Newfoundland which has cool summers and cold winters; yet warm winds from the Atlantic Ocean and the Mediterranean Sea make France a pleasant land where the weather is mild and crops are plentiful. Spring comes early, autumn is long; winter is short and the snows soon melt. There are no long droughts and no heavy torrents of rain.

Much of France is a lowland plain, but there are highlands in the south and east. France has much natural wealth and every kind of land—forests, hills, mountains, and plains. The country is bordered on two sides by high mountains: the Alps on the south-east, and the Pyrenees on the south. Her coasts face the North Sea, the Mediterranean, and the Atlantic Ocean, with a broken coastline and plenty of fine harbors. France is a crossroad of trade and shipping, linked with the busiest nations of Europe and the rest of the world.

Great rivers add to the riches of the wide, fertile plain, which makes up most of the country. These rivers are not nearly so long as our Mississippi, yet they are knit together, by a system of canals, into a solid network of inland waterways. Here the busy barges keep up a constant stream of cheap transportation, carrying farm products and goods of all kinds to and from cities and villages. There are fine highways for auto traffic, and you can go almost anywhere by train in a few hours. France is not a very densely populated country, yet all its farm land is in use and well cared for.

**French background and people.** In early days France was a land of great forests, inhabited by people of different tribes.

They were peasants and river boatmen, lovers of adventure, brave, savage, and pagan. The Roman army under Julius Caesar conquered all these people, who were called Gauls. The Romans civilized these tribes, mixed with them, and taught them the Latin language.

France is an old Catholic country with a Catholic culture. Her soil has been made holy by numbers of saints, including one of her kings, Saint Louis. In Roman times, almost as soon as the Catholic Church was founded, little settlements of Christians began to grow up in Gaul. It took a few hundred years to convert all the pagan people of that region to the Church.

A number of small states were joined together, hundreds of years ago, to make up France. Tall, blue-eyed Norsemen from Scandinavia invaded the land and stayed. Their section came to be called Normandy. Other tribes pushed over the borders, settled down, and mixed with the inhabitants. So at last the French people, as we know them, came to be.

The French are hard working, thrifty, thoughtful people, who think and speak clearly and well. Their language, a modern form of Latin, is beautiful and clear. The people are artistic and clever at making beautiful things. France has famous writers, scientists, and inventors, as well as artists and musicians. Frenchmen love their own country, and do not like to leave it. The Frenchman also loves liberty, and he speaks up freely, criticizing himself and his own government as well as others. He loves law and order, but he will not be pushed around. When he has been made to suffer injustice he has risen in terrible anger and bloody revolt.



## THE GREAT CATHEDRALS

Behold the tabernacle of God with men, and He will dwell with them and they shall be His people; and God Himself with them shall be their God.

—From the Bible

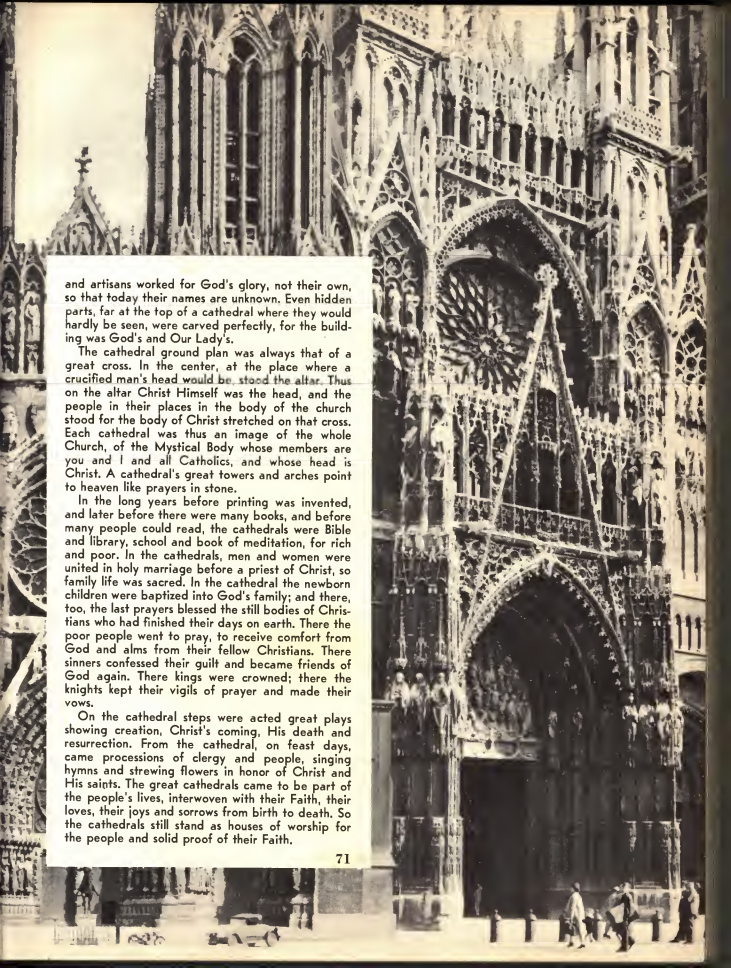
Throughout Europe, in many of the fine old cities, there stand majestic houses of prayer, pointing their towers to the sky. These great cathedrals are like nothing else in the world. They are books in stone, telling us the story of a people's Faith.

As the tribes of western Europe became civilized Christians, gradually they began to build churches. Soon they invented the tall, pointed arch, which was the special mark of their structures. This special arch came to be called Gothic. Slender pillars of stone towered up into the skies, with great windows of colored glass between them. Stone arches, pillars, and doorways were all carved into delicate lacework of great beauty. They set forth the stories of the Bible: the stories about the creation of the world, about Adam and Eve, about Christ and His Mother, and about many of God's saints.

It was in France that the Christian people began to build the great Gothic cathedrals. The most famous one was set on an island in the Seine River, where the city of Paris stands. It was called, in honor of Christ's Mother, Notre Dame which means Our Lady. The Cathedral of Notre Dame took seventy-two years to build. Its builders and the workmen of the other great cathedrals were not gangs of beaten slaves like those who had put up the temples of pagan Rome. They were free people, rejoicing in their Catholic Faith, and expressing it in stone.

All worked together to make what are perhaps the noblest buildings in the world. And all the Catholic people helped in whatever ways they could. Kings gave some of their treasures, and queens gave some of their jewels. Lords and ladies and merchants gave their gold. Carpenters, makers of armor, and innkeepers offered their savings. Quarrymen, singing, dug out stone from the hillsides. Noblemen, butchers and bakers, rich merchants and chimneysweepers, peasants and soldiers, with their own hands pulled carts full of stone, cheering and singing hymns to Our Lord and Our Lady. Masons and stone carvers worked joyfully. Makers of stained-glass windows lived in tents near the rising walls and set in place the thousands of rainbow-colored pieces. Architects





and artisans worked for God's glory, not their own, so that today their names are unknown. Even hidden parts, far at the top of a cathedral where they would hardly be seen, were carved perfectly, for the building was God's and Our Lady's.

The cathedral ground plan was always that of a great cross. In the center, at the place where a crucified man's head would be, stood the altar. Thus on the altar Christ Himself was the head, and the people in their places in the body of the church stood for the body of Christ stretched on that cross. Each cathedral was thus an image of the whole Church, of the Mystical Body whose members are you and I and all Catholics, and whose head is Christ. A cathedral's great towers and arches point to heaven like prayers in stone.

In the long years before printing was invented, and later before there were many books, and before many people could read, the cathedrals were Bible and library, school and book of meditation, for rich and poor. In the cathedrals, men and women were united in holy marriage before a priest of Christ, so family life was sacred. In the cathedral the newborn children were baptized into God's family; and there, too, the last prayers blessed the still bodies of Christians who had finished their days on earth. There the poor people went to pray, to receive comfort from God and alms from their fellow Christians. There sinners confessed their guilt and became friends of God again. There kings were crowned; there the knights kept their vigils of prayer and made their vows.

On the cathedral steps were acted great plays showing creation, Christ's coming, His death and resurrection. From the cathedral, on feast days, came processions of clergy and people, singing hymns and strewing flowers in honor of Christ and His saints. The great cathedrals came to be part of the people's lives, interwoven with their Faith, their loves, their joys and sorrows from birth to death. So the cathedrals still stand as houses of worship for the people and solid proof of their Faith.



### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Copy each sentence and write the missing word or words in each blank space.

1. France is warmed by winds which blow from the \_\_\_\_\_ Ocean.

2. The southern coast of France is on the \_\_\_\_\_ Sea.

3. The rivers of France have been joined together by \_\_\_\_\_.

4. Paris is on the \_\_\_\_\_ River.

5. France differs from Italy in being rich in \_\_\_\_\_.

6. The ground plan of a cathedral was in the form of a \_\_\_\_\_.

**The revolution.** For centuries the people of France led the world in fashion and many of the arts. Scholars flocked to France to study in the famous schools of learning. France was a rich country. But in time kings and noblemen began to oppress the peasants and the workers, to live in idleness and luxury on money taken from the poor. Then the people of France rose in a terrible revolution, killed their king and many of the nobles, and divided up the great estates among the peasants. The mobs went wild and committed many crimes of violence. Some men who hated religion ruled the government for a while. Churches were looted and priests killed. Finally a soldier, named Napoleon Bonaparte, from the island of Corsica, established order. He became Emperor and made new laws. Many of these were good and are still in force in France. However, he also led France into disastrous wars against other countries of Europe, and caused the death of thousands of people.

**Factory boss saint?** Modern industry was booming in many parts of Europe and America when Leo Harmel had to take over his father's woolen factory in northern France. This young man of twenty-five was not too happy about being a factory manager. He had hoped to be a priest. But the factory and its workers now depended upon

him, and Leo set out to do what he thought God demanded of him.

In the little factory town of Val des Bois, near Reims, church-going and piety were largely left to the women. A man seen at Mass would be made fun of by his friends. Not only that but workers went one way and employers another. Owners took no interest in their workmen's welfare.

Harmel began looking for good Catholic families to work in his factory to set an example for his other working people. He employed all the working members of a family, and paid the complete family wage to the father. Thus he kept families together even during working hours. He thereby upheld the dignity of the father, whom God has made the head of the household. Harmel was also perhaps the first factory manager to give an extra sum of money to a family with many children. He believed that each family should have enough income for its needs; a bigger family of children should have more money.

Harmel worked to improve the whole town and the lives of its people. He arranged for the Christian Brothers to start a school where young working lads of fifteen and older could study for at least an hour each day. Thus the sons of the poor could get some education. An orphanage and a home for working girls were started; also religious societies for men and women, boys and girls. Harmel's house was on the factory grounds, where he could live near his people. Here he also built a chapel where daily Mass was celebrated. So Christ the Workman came to be with the factory workers, and Harmel and his family attended Mass there together with his employees.

Harmel had his factory workers and managers form councils, where matters of importance were talked over and decided.

These matters included factory accidents and ways to prevent them; health and healthful working conditions; kind and amount of work turned out, and wages. Other matters settled in these *industry councils* were old-age pensions, bonuses for large families, the setting up of savings banks, ways in which workers could buy shares in the factory, co-operative buying (that is, families joining together to buy the things they need more cheaply), also the organizing of sports, schools, and the practice of arts among the workers and their families.

Harmel did not force his workers to accept any of his plans, except the insurance which provided money payment for their old age. This they were obliged to take. He built houses for them, but they might live elsewhere if they pleased.

Other businessmen waited for Harmel's business to fail. They said no man could do all those things for his workers and not lose money. To their surprise, his factory prospered. The employees owned shares in the business and worked hard to make it a success, since it was partly their own. When workers in other plants were quarreling with their employers and striking for higher wages, there was no trouble at Harmel's.

People from all over the world came to study the system at Val des Bois. The Archbishop of Reims held Leo's work dear to his heart, for here was Christianity in action in the modern world. Some other Catholic firms followed Harmel's lead. Pope Leo XIII often gave advice to Harmel and blessed his work. He studied its results carefully before writing his great letter to the world on labor. When this encyclical was published, on May 15, 1891, Leo Harmel himself led twenty thousand pilgrims to Rome to thank the Holy Father. There,

cardinals and Roman nobility helped care for these factory pilgrims and served them at table.

Harmel brought up his eight children in great piety. He allowed no luxury in his home, but lived simply. He was honest and exact both in business and in his spiritual life. He made mental prayer daily, practiced various penances, and begged God to send him crosses and sufferings. He died only recently. The first world war stripped his factory and scattered his workers, but his example cannot be destroyed. In Rome there has been talk of starting the process by which Leo Harmel, factory boss, may become a canonized saint.

**Catholic France.** Thousands of French people today keep the Faith and lead lives of piety. Especially is this true in Brittany, among the hardy peasants and fisher folk. Every age of France has seen her saints walking the land, praying, suffering, helping the poor, starting great religious orders and societies for good works which have spread over the whole world. French men and women have sent their sons and daughters out as missionaries to all corners of the earth, and have supported them with their alms.

Not all Frenchmen, however, use their God-given gifts wisely. Some of the greatest Catholic writers are Frenchmen; as are also some of the bitterest writers against God and the Church. Communists, who would like to see God's name forgotten on earth, became active. In France, however, the Faith is blossoming in a new springtime, perhaps the brightest of any place in the world.

In modern times thousands of people began to live close together in the great industrial cities. They worked in factories and mines for small wages and owned no property. Not enough employers followed the example of Leo Harmel. Too many Catho-



A priest workman celebrates Mass in a laborer's apartment in a great city of France. Attending Mass are neighbors who never go to church; they learn to pray, talk with the priest as a friend, and begin to live as Catholics. Christ, Himself a poor Carpenter, is at home among the poor and the working people.

lics thought only of their own problems and left the poor and the working people to themselves. The factory workers' children grew up knowing little of their Faith.

A great pope warned that in some countries the Church had "lost the working classes." Even when a priest converted some of those poor working people, they felt out of place in church among people with better clothes and better manners. They had no place to go for a social evening among other Catholics. They spoke their own language, a kind of slang. Priests, Sisters, and many Catholics were educated people with polite manners and neat clothes. The poor workers felt like strangers among them.

A holy priest named Father Godin tried to make conversions among the workers, but he always seemed to fail. Then one day he had a talk with a missionary priest who

was on a trip home from Africa. The missionary told Father Godin: "We have more Catholics in our section of Africa than you have in Paris. Paris is pagan territory, and you must teach the people as we do the pagans in Africa."

In mission lands, priests go out and live among the people they want to teach. They learn their language and their ways, and become one of them as far as possible. Father Godin decided to imitate them. He left his rectory and went to live in a cheap rented room among the poor. He offered Mass there and taught the workers in their own kind of language. He wore old clothes and lived as poorly as they did. He organized little groups of his converts so they could meet and talk over their affairs. He taught them about Christ, who was a poor workman, and about God's love. He wrote little books with pictures, telling about God in their own lives: in the factory, in their poor homes. He trained his new converts to be apostles of Catholic Action.

Other priests took up Father Godin's idea and many of them got factory jobs, living and working among the poor, speaking of Christ and showing forth Christ in their own lives. So a great movement started from one holy priest, and Catholic Action began its work of saving France for God. Catholics in industrial areas all over the world have studied the work of Father Godin, and in many places his example is being followed.

**France today.** France is a republic, much like our own. There are plenty of public schools, where all children can be educated. However, these are not Catholic schools. Church and state are separated in France, and religion is not taught in public school. However, French Catholics have built their own schools. Some great universities are

located in France, and people from many other countries go to study there. Tourists, students, and artists, especially, like to stay in Paris, one of the world's most beautiful cities. Frenchmen love Paris and are very proud of it. During the second world war, when the Germans defeated and occupied France, the French people let the German army march into Paris without fighting, so their beautiful city would not be ruined.

**France, a farming country.** France is a farming country, and she is well able to feed her own population from her own products. However, France has been in the center of so many of Europe's wars that the crops have often been spoiled, the fields torn up. After every war, the French peasant goes back to his farm and begins again to plow and to sow.

It has long been the custom in France to divide the land equally among all the sons when the father dies. The farms are now as small as they can be for a family to make a living. Many sons and daughters go to the cities to find work. Most of the French farms are less than 25 acres in size, about one sixth the size of an average American farm. These are peasant properties, owned by the people who work them.

The peasant often cultivates his land with small tools, and with horses or oxen instead of machinery. In this way he keeps his soil in the best condition and gets a high yield per acre. Machinery from America is now being used on some of the large farms of France and other European countries, for many men were killed in the wars, creating a labor shortage. Farm animals also are scarce, many having been butchered and eaten. In some parts only one crop, such as grapes, is grown. However, most French farms produce a number of different crops and many other things required. The

French eat a great amount of bread and therefore many farmers raise wheat. They also have fine breeds of horses and cattle.

French farmers usually live close together in villages, not far apart as American farmers do. Thus families are more neighborly and they have more amusements. They are close to church and school. They can live near each other, so the women are not lonely in the daytime while the men are out working in the fields. Even in Brittany where peasants live on their own land, they are not far apart, since farms are small.

Some of the farmhouses are built of stone covered with plaster, and are hundreds of years old. Roofs may be of straw thatch or tile. In mountainous regions where there is heavy rain and snowfall, roofs are sloping. In drier parts of southern France, roofs are more flat.

French farmhouses have electric lights, and many families have radios. Most people, however, do not spend their money on refrigerators and automobiles. The French family takes its pleasure close to home, without hurry.

Cooking is a fine art in France, and people from all over the world go to France to enjoy good food and wines. French people usually drink wine instead of tea or coffee with their meals. They often drink it mixed with water, and not in excess. It does not have a bad effect when taken as part of the meal. The French doctors say wine can be good for the health; being full of vitamins, minerals, and food value.

The grape and wine industries are very important in France. Thousands of acres of land in the sunny river valleys of southern and central France are covered with vineyards, carefully tended. A piece of grapevine, if cut off and placed in the earth during winter, will send out roots and begin

to grow, making a new vine. The young vines are set out in rows and trained to grow on trellises. The growers prune them, that is, they cut off the long ends carefully. In this way the strength of the vine will go to make fruit, instead of long shoots. Vines are sprayed to prevent plant diseases.

At one time a pest of small insects began to kill the vines by feeding on the roots. The French growers imported certain native American grapevines which the insects

would not eat. These were planted for the roots. Since the French vines bear better fruit, the growers grafted shoots of their own vines onto the American roots. This made insect-proof American roots, and French vines which bear fine, sweet grapes.

Many farmers raise sugar beets and sell them to sugar factories. The beet tops and the pulp that remains after the sugar is extracted from the beets are fed to cattle and pigs.



The French peasant wants Christ to bless the wheat field, from which God provides his daily bread.



After plowing, the farmer sows seed by hand.



Midmorning lunch in the fields.



The farmer mows ripe wheat with a reaper.



The children enjoy the harvest.



All help bind and stack the wheat.



Separating grain from straw.



Bread, wine and soup, eggs and salad.



**Crops from mountainsides.** The French peasants are among the wisest and most skillful farmers in the world. No land is left unused if it can be made to produce crops, even at the cost of hard labor and long-time planning. Hilly, rocky soil is of no use for hay and vegetables. However, tufts of grass and weeds grow between the rocks, and goats, which are good at climbing, do well on such feed. Peasants of the mountain districts keep herds of goats, and make some of the famous cheeses of the world from the goats' milk. Cool, moist caves in the mountains are just the right temperature for storing and aging the cheeses.

It is possible by proper reforestation to make steep, rocky, mountainous lands produce good crops of food for men and domestic animals. This kind of planning has been practiced very little in America, as we had plenty of level, rich lands until very recently. However, some European countries have built up their forests for hundreds of years.

The thrifty French people keep forests growing on land which is too sandy, rocky, or steep for farming. The long, tough roots of trees make their way deep into the cracks between rocks, where there is always plenty of moisture. Rocks contain minerals which plants need and which the roots dissolve and take in. The French plant new trees to take the place of those they cut down, and protect them from pests. They take pains to plant only the most useful trees. In the south, chestnuts and walnuts as well as lumber are useful tree crops, and the bark of the cork oak is sold for corks.

In Corsica, a French island in the Mediterranean, the farmers keep the steep mountainsides planted to chestnut trees. Chestnut is a valuable wood used for fine furniture. Goats and donkeys browse on the



Village women take laundry to the brook, work in fresh air and sunshine, and visit with friends. Work is healthful, pleasant, and sociable; linens come out white.

grass that grows between the trees. Hogs, horses, and goats eat the chestnuts and like them better than corn. The ripe nuts can be cooked as a delicious vegetable, or made into rich, sweet meal for people. When a tree gets old a new small one is planted near it. After a few years the old tree is cut and sold. The new tree grows up in place of the old one. Some of the chestnut trees of Corsican farms are said to be a thousand years old. Corsica is the island where Napoleon, famous general and emperor, was born.

#### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Answer each of the following questions in a sentence or a short paragraph.

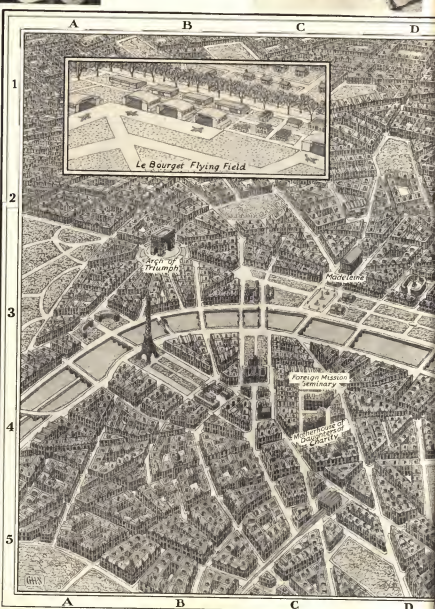
1. Why did the peasants and workers of France revolt against the French king?
2. How does the Catholic Church in France differ from the Church in Spain?
3. What use can be made of sugar beets after the sugar has been extracted?
4. For what crop are the sunny valleys of southern and central France famous?
5. What methods do the French use to keep their forests from being destroyed?
6. What uses are made of the chestnut trees that grow on the steep mountainsides?



A Parisian working man at home with his wife and baby. Paris has plenty of parks where children swim, play ball, look at animals or flowerers, or take rides in a little red goat cart.



Paris is a city of pleasure, with cafes where people eat in the open air, and famous theaters. It is a river port and center of industry, trade, and manufacturing. The great Cathedral of Notre Dame (F-4). It was built on an island in the Seine River over 650 years ago. The city, once an island town, now spreads beyond both banks of the river.

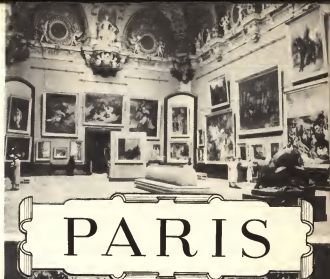


Young Frenchmen who are studying to be missionary priests enjoy a basketball game. Thousands of priests have gone out from this Paris Foreign Mission Seminary (C-4) to do mission work in all parts of the world.





The Arch of Triumph (B-2) and the Louvre art gallery (E-3) are two famous spots in Paris. The city is a center of learning, with great universities, colleges, and book publishing houses.



# PARIS




Paris, largest city and capital of France, is one of the world's most beautiful cities. Here are the famous Eiffel Tower (B-3), and a tree-shaded street, with Notre Dame (F-4) in the background. Paris is a fashion and shopping center for the whole world.




A Daughter of Charity gives our gifts to the poor at Christmas. She belongs to one of the world's largest societies of Sisters, started by St. Vincent de Paul in Paris (C-4) over 300 years ago.




## Lourdes and Heaven's Queen



People come to Lourdes by the thousands. They built a church in honor of Mary, Lady of Lourdes.




Sick people bathed in the spring waters, and many were cured. Sinners come back to God.



About a hundred years ago the Blessed Virgin came to a town in the Pyrenees Mountains, called Lourdes. She showed herself and spoke many times to a poor child, Bernadette, who was gathering firewood. "Pray and do penance for sinners," she told her. A new spring of water started to run from the cliff where Mary had appeared.



Hundreds of cripples, cured, left their crutches.



Thousands still come to Lourdes, asking Mary's prayers.

**Cities and industries.** Marseille is the chief port of France. It is connected with the Rhône River by canal, and with the rest of France by railroads and highways. From here much trade is carried on with French colonies in North Africa, with other Mediterranean countries, and with lands in distant Asia. Marseille is in the midst of a rich region of olive groves. Many things made from olive oil are produced in the city. Oil-bearing seeds and nuts are also imported and processed here.

Bordeaux is a large seaport on the Garonne River not far from the Atlantic Ocean. From here much sea traffic is carried on with America. It is also a manufacturing

city. Le Havre, at the mouth of the Seine River, is the chief ocean port for Paris, and here the large passenger ships usually stop. Some freight vessels can sail up the Seine River a considerable distance as far as the city of Rouen.

Lille, in northern France, has coal, iron, and steel resources and is one of France's big manufacturing cities. Spinning and weaving, which used to be done in the home, are now factory industries. Not enough wool is produced in France to supply the textile factories, so some is imported. Cotton comes from America and other countries. The coal is made into coke, which is used in the blast furnaces where steel is produced.



Lyons is in the center of the rich farming region of the Rhône valley. Here many farmers grow mulberry trees, and housewives add to the family income by raising silkworms. The worms, kept in baskets in the house, are fed on the mulberry leaves. Farmers sell their cocoons to small village factories where the silk is unwound. In Lyons and many smaller cities the silk is spun into thread and woven into silks, satins, velvets, chiffons, and ribbons. Skilled workers weave beautiful patterns, and the clear water of the Rhône River is used to dye the silks in bright, rich colors. In recent years the people of Lyons have begun to make rayon, too.

Grenoble, on the slopes of the Alps Mountains, has plenty of water power which the people use to generate electricity.

**Some interesting things about the French.** Although France is a farming country, manufacturing is important, and the products of skilled French workmen are famous everywhere. Although much of the world looks to Paris for the latest fashions, in many parts of France women still wear the fine old peasant costumes of long ago.

The Mediterranean coast between Marseille and Genoa is one of the most delightful regions of the world. It lies partly in France, partly in Italy, and its sunny skies, beautiful blue sea, and mountain scenery have made it famous. It is called the Riviera, and also the Blue Coast. The Alps keep away the cold north winds, and the warm waves of the Mediterranean wash the sandy beaches.

Geese are hardy fowl, needing little care or shelter even in the coldest weather. They live on grass. They grow fast, increase yearly, and produce many pounds of delicious meat and eggs. Their feathers sell for high prices, for use in pillows and covers. Thrifty peasants of France and other countries raise many geese.

Winter along the Riviera is delightful. The sick come for the winter sunshine; the rich come for the gambling and racing, for sports and gay parties. Artists and writers like to live there and work at their trades. The fine hotels provide work for the natives and comfort for the tourists. Farmers of the region raise sweet peas, hyacinths, roses, and violets, which grow and bloom in the winter. They are sold as cut flowers or used for making perfumes.

The white cliffs on the coast of England can be seen from parts of the French coast. Ships cross the English Channel in about two hours and the airplane in a few minutes. The French and the English have been friends or enemies at different times for hundreds of years.

France rules colonies in the desert areas of Africa, and other parts of the world. Their area is many times that of France. Thousands of young Frenchmen serve in the French Foreign Legion which polices these colonies.

Frenchmen and Americans have always understood one another and have been good friends. They helped us in our War of Independence, and we helped them win their freedom in two world wars. Louisiana and parts of Canada were settled by Frenchmen in colonial days, and French is still spoken in these sections of North America.

France, on the whole, is a smiling, fertile land, which has everything its people need. It is a good country in which to live.





**1** Compare France with the United States in size and climate. Explain how and where the climate of France is affected by winds and water.



Total population 41,000,000. Catholics 31,000,000. Estimate the percentage of Catholics.

**2** Make a list of products according to region; 1. the valley of the Rhone in the southeast; 2. the great sloping plain in the north and west.



Find the mountains in which hydroelectric plants are located. Why are they in the mountains?

**3** Make a list of the minerals mined in France. Find some manufacturing cities which owe their locations to the mines in each area.



Locate the places made famous by saints mentioned on this page and find out something about their lives.

**11** Why are great rivers considered among a country's riches? What are the principal rivers of France? How are they knit together and to what advantage?



Locate the home town of Pauline Jaricot and tell what she did.

**10** Name the important north coast cities that do shipping business with England and America. List some of their imports and exports.



How do you explain the fact that the farms in France are small?



Locate a dairy region and tell why the people raise cattle rather than grapes.

- 4 List the exports and imports of the chief seaport on the Mediterranean. Why is this an important port far trade with Asia?



What textile is manufactured in France from material raised in the country?

- 5 List the imports and exports of Bordeaux. Study the map and discover why more wine is shipped from this port than from Marseille.



What great Cathedral is built on an island in the Seine River?

## THE FRENCH: Their Land and Work

France is about one fourteenth as large as the United States, and has less than one third as many people. It has a mild climate, because the winds from the sea are tempered by the ocean currents. Paris is four hundred miles farther north than Chicago; although Chicago is a cold, windy city with plenty of snow, Paris is famous for sunshine and mild winters. Little snow falls in France, except in the mountains.

Northern and western France belong to the Great Lowland Plain of Europe. The peninsula of Brittany, in northwestern France, is cool and moist. It is a land of meadows and cows. The great river valleys of the Rhône and Seine, and the Mediterranean coast also have level land, fertile soil, and good climate. Some of the mountain regions are too barren and rugged for crops, but grapes grow well on the sunny hillsides. Frenchmen commonly drink sour red wine made from grapes instead of

water at meals, because the water is not always pure in France.

Oak and chestnut trees also grow well on mountainsides and among rocks. Chestnuts and acorns fall to the ground making rich food for the peasants' hogs that roam in the forests.

France is rich in iron ore. Many people of Lorraine in northern France work in the mines. France has some coal, but no very large deposits. Waterfalls in the Alps and the Pyrenees are used instead of coal to furnish electricity. Electric power is used to extract aluminum from its ore. The French make airplanes, machinery, pots and pans of the aluminum.

In southwestern France near the Bay of Biscay, a swampy sandy region has been drained and planted to pine trees and grass. Trees are allowed to grow for about fifty years, and are tapped each year for resin and turpentine. Then they are cut down for lumber, and new pines planted in their places.

Many Frenchmen near the coast are fishermen and oyster gatherers.

France is an old Catholic country. Her soil has been made holy by numbers of saints. Among them are Saint Louis, King of France, whose headquarters was in Paris; Saint Joan of Arc, called the Maid of Orléans; Saint Vincent de Paul, who was chaplain to the galley slaves at Marseille and Bordeaux; Saint Margaret Mary of Paray-le-Monial; Saint Francis de Sales of Annecy; Saint Bernadette of Lourdes; Saint Theres of Lisieux; and Pauline Jaricot of Lyons, foundress of the Society for the Propagation of the Faith, which collects alms for the missions.

- 6 Locate the following cities and tell something interesting about each: Lourdes, Paris, Lille, Lyons, and Lisieux.



If you were taking a trip through France, what cities would you like to visit and why?

- 7 French peasants are skillful. No land is left unused. Study the map and list the uses for rocky mountain slopes, plains, valleys, and coast lands.



What special adventures does France have in its location at the "front door" of Europe?

83

- 9 Pittsburgh in the U.S.A. has coal and imports iron ore. Nancy has iron ore but imports coal. What large industry is the same in both cities?



Why do so many people like to spend the winter on the Riviera? Find it.

- 8 Locate Grenoble where many people manufacture leather gloves. What animals are herded on the mountain slopes to provide the raw material for this industry?



Locate Corsica and tell something interesting about the island.

## For My Geography Notebook

### Questions for Review

#### Italy

1. Why is Rome called the "Eternal City"? 2. Explain how Vatican City is like our own city of Washington, D. C. 3. What are some of the products made by the people who herd sheep and goats in the mountains of Italy? 4. How are spaghetti and macaroni made? 5. Name three important manufacturing cities of the north. 6. What is the chief source of power for the factories in these cities? 7. Why do almost half the people of Italy live in the Po Valley? 8. Explain the connection between silkworms and mulberry trees. 9. What does the Italian farmer mean by saying that he practices "three story farming"? 10. Why is the olive a good crop for Italian farmers to raise? 11. What is the principal use of Italy's grape crop? 12. Why do oranges and lemons grow well in southern Italy? 13. Why is fishing an important industry in Italy? 14. How does the climate of the north contrast with that of southern Italy? 15. What mineral is found in great quantities near Mt. Etna and the other Italian volcanoes?

#### Spain and Portugal

1. How did Spain help spread the Faith to her colonies in the New World? 2. How did Spain lose most of her colonies in the New World? 3. Why was the life of the Spanish peasant a difficult one in the past? 4. Give at least two ways by which the Spanish Government improved the lot of the peasants in recent years. 5. In what part of Spain do the Basques make their home? 6. Make a list of the Mediterranean-type crops that grow in Spain and Portugal. 7. From what port and to what country is most of the Spanish iron ore shipped? 8. Why did many of the Spanish who came to America in the early days settle in California? 9. Name two fertile river valleys in Spain where irrigation is used for agriculture. 10. Name two products in which Spain leads the world. 11. What has hindered the development of the mining industry in Spain? 12. Name two large Spanish ports and name an important product shipped from each. 13. What kind of climate does the interior of Spain have? 14. Find

Lisbon, Portugal, on the map of Europe. Give some reasons why it has become a great air transportation center. 15. Name the Portuguese port that lies north of Lisbon and give the name of its famous export.

#### France

1. What are some of the things that make the climate in much of France very pleasant? 2. Why is the location of France a fine one for trade? 3. How have the French helped to make their rivers more important means of transportation? 4. Why can France raise more than enough food to feed its people while Italy cannot? 5. Make a list of five important products raised on French farms. 6. Mention some of the methods used by French vineyard owners to make sure that fine grapes are produced. 7. Give some reasons why Marseille is the chief port of France. 8. Explain why mulberry trees are grown in some parts of France. 9. Why have the cities of Lorraine in northern France become important manufacturing centers?

**Using Geography Words Correctly.** The following list contains words used in this chapter. Use each in a sentence.

- |                  |                       |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. volcano       | 8. canal              |
| 2. silt          | 9. gondola            |
| 3. paddies       | 10. resources         |
| 4. swamp         | 11. hydroelectric     |
| 5. marble        | 12. vineyards         |
| 6. sulphur       | 13. corporative state |
| 7. reforestation | 14. guild             |

**Pause and Think.** Explain these sentences from your reading. It will help you to refer back to the text.

1. "Labor is beautiful and ennobling." (P. 47)
2. They (Italians) know how to work hard and how to coax crops skillfully from the barren land. (P. 47)
3. "Let the worker share in the prosperity of the employer." (P. 54)
4. The Catholic Faith was part of their life. (P. 55)
5. Catholics must be happy warriors, always on a crusade for God. (P. 56)

## 4. The People of Great Britain

The island of Great Britain is a long, low-lying part of Europe, barely separated from the continent by shallow waters. Ages ago the coast of western Europe sank a little; water ran into the lower places, making the shallow North Sea, the English Channel, and the Strait of Dover. When the work was done, Great Britain was an island. It was near enough to Europe to share in its culture, yet protected by a good-sized "ditch" from enemies inclined to warfare. Its ragged coast line and drowned river mouths, called *estuaries*, provided numberless natural harbors for a seafaring people.

The island of Great Britain contains three countries. They are England, Scotland, and Wales. Great Britain, Northern Ireland, and many adjacent small islands, all together are known as the United Kingdom.

**Climate and surface.** Great Britain is as far north as frozen Labrador, but the winds from over the warm North Atlantic Drift, which is a continuation of the Gulf Stream, help to give it a mild climate. During most of the year the westerly winds blow in from the Atlantic Ocean. Rain often covers the land with a drifting gray blanket, or breaks in sudden showers with bright skies and sunshine between. Winters in Britain are seldom very cold, but they are damp and chilly. The British people have long been used to making warm woolen garments. They consider American houses overheated—and Americans in England often go about indoors shivering and sneezing.

The southern part of Great Britain is a rolling plain. The Pennine Mountains form the backbone of northern England, and there is rugged land in southwestern England; but no part of the island is very high. Beautiful lakes lie between the hills. Wide rivers wander here and there over the plains. The

land is fertile, and once was covered with great forests.

**The people of Great Britain.** People have lived in Britain from very ancient days. European peoples drifted in and settled parts of the country at various times during two thousand years. Romans conquered Great Britain about forty years after Christ was born. They ruled it for four hundred years. Little bands of Christian refugees, fleeing from persecution, wandered as far as Britain. Soon they made Christians among the Roman soldiers, as well as among the native people.

When barbarians began to overrun Rome, the Roman army left its distant outposts and went back home. Then the savage Angles, Saxons, and other pagan bands from northern Europe invaded Great Britain, burning, killing, and pillaging. The Catholic Faith was almost destroyed in the island. Many of the invaders settled down and stayed, worshiping the fire and the thunder as gods, living a wild life as pirates and robbers. It looked as if the light of Faith would be put out forever in that part of the world.

Then came the Benedictines. The Pope sent to England a missionary band of forty Benedictine monks, with Saint Augustine as abbot. They landed at Canterbury, on the east coast near the little seaport of London, and soon started monasteries all over Great Britain. From each of these centers the monks went out as missionaries, preaching to the wild pagan tribes and baptizing them. In time England became a Catholic country. The work of conversion was done mostly by Benedictines, although other religious orders arrived later and carried on the good work.

**A model of democracy.** Saint Benedict had written a Rule for the monks, so life

in all the monasteries was the same. This Rule of Saint Benedict is one of the most important documents ever written.

"Whether the novice be rich or poor, bond or free, young or old, we must not inquire; neither age nor condition matters among monks, for God made no difference between the soul of the slave and that of the freeman."

—*Rule of Saint Benedict.*

The monks of each monastery elected an abbot and then obeyed him. He was usually chosen for his ability as a manager as well as for his holiness of life. Once elected, the abbot was responsible for good government in the monastery. Before anything of importance was done, the abbot had to consult his monks; and if the abbot proved unworthy, he could be removed from office.

The Rule of Saint Benedict gave new ideas to a pagan world where powerful men often oppressed the weak and the common man had few rights, the slave none. A model of democratic government was set up by the Rule. This Rule was to have a lasting effect on the people of Britain.

**Workers gain their freedom.** Under Roman rule, big estates owned by rich landlords had been worked by slaves; later, wealthy English families followed the same practice. During many years, quietly and without violence, the Church did away with

the evil thing called slavery. In a thousand confessionals and pulpits Catholics who owned slaves or serfs were gently urged to set them free. A man on his deathbed could hope to gain an indulgence for his sins by freeing his slaves. The slaves, one by one, were able to find Christian dignity and to make a living as free men.

**Robbers into "gentle men."** The old English landowners were often rude and cruel; they were merely successful robbers. But under the teaching of the Church, they tamed their manners and became Christian knights and gentlemen. They were the police force and the standing army during wild, lawless times. The word "chivalry" was used to mean a high ideal of good manners and fair play, respect for women, gentleness in social life, and honor in war. The Christian knight was supposed to be a "gentle man." During those years the Normans from northern France invaded England, settled down, and stayed. They added many words to the English language, and brought some good customs. The Normans were Catholics, and so the Church kept on growing.

**Merry England.** Great stone cathedrals were erected, graced with beautiful arches and towers, and windows of rainbow-colored glass. Three times a day, bells rang out for the *Angelus* in honor of Christ's coming to earth. Christmas, "Christ's Mass," was the great feast of English cheer and happiness. After Mass, in the huge castle or manor halls, which were decked with holly from the English forests, knight and peasant, master and servant, feasted and danced, sang and frolicked in honor of Christ's birth. Other Church feasts were kept with rejoicing, too. England was Merry England. The people of Great Britain to this day are lovers of sports and games.

SIR AELFRED MAKES HIS WILL

*I, Aelfred, do bequeath for my soul's sake half of my landed possessions to the Church of Saint Edmund. And I do free for God's sake and my soul's need Eceard the smith and his wife and all their offspring born and unborn. And for my sake and for the souls of my father and mother I will that all my serfs be free, both in manor and farm. Let each have his homestead, and his meat cow and his grain. I command in the Name of the living God that no one disquiet them, either by demand of money or in any other way. Christ blind him that setteth this aside. . . .*

—ANCIENT ENGLISH DOCUMENTS





Men and women of Great Britain enjoy a game of bowling on the green at a seaside town. British school boys love their national game of cricket, as we do baseball.



The Benedictine monks, the Franciscans, Dominicans, and others who came later educated the men who joined them, and they set up schools all over England. At Cambridge and Oxford great English universities were started.

**Government of the people.** The head of the English state has usually been a king. The king is not elected by the people, but inherits his crown, in most cases, from his family. From early times England was a democratic country. In early days town meetings, called moots, were held where the common people met to decide on their rights in matters of land, work, and the pasturing of animals. Then, under the Church's guidance, craftsmen banded themselves together in groups called guilds. The guild members elected their officers and made laws governing prices, wages, hours of work, the quality of products, and many other matters. Each man was free to speak up in meeting and to make his opinions known. Each guild had a charter from the king, which gave it a right to operate.

The Rule of Saint Benedict had shown the way for Christians to organize and practice democracy in monasteries. The guilds, built on the same type of democracy, did the same thing for workingmen with fam-

ilies; they made sure that the craftsman and the small shopkeeper, too, had their Christian dignity and democratic freedom.

**Charter of rights.** Englishmen love their freedom with fierce zeal. When they wish, they will speak up and be heard; and if tyrants impose upon them, they will revolt. So it happened that when one of the English kings oppressed his subjects harshly, the people made up their minds to regain their old liberties. Churchmen and nobles drew up a charter that they forced King John to sign. The granting of a charter was an ordinary matter—every monastery and every guild had one, which was like a license, granting certain rights. Since the charter signed by King John related to all England, it was called the Great Charter—or *Magna Carta*. It granted certain rights to the nobles, and these same rights were to be passed on to the common people. It was a charter of liberty. Its ideas on democracy and Christian dignity were the result of the Church's teaching, handed down through the Rule of Saint Benedict

*No free man shall be taken, or imprisoned, or dispossessed, or outlawed, or banished, or in any way destroyed...except by the legal judgment of his peers or by the law of the land.*

—MAGNA CARTA

and the workingmen's guilds. Later, much of the *Magna Carta* was written into our American Constitution and laws.

#### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Complete the following sentences by filling in the missing word or words in each blank.

1. The island of Great Britain is separated from the mainland of Europe by the English Channel, the Strait of Dover, and the \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The drowned river mouths that make excellent harbors along the coast of Great Britain are called \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The climate of much of Great Britain is made mild by warm winds that blow in from the \_\_\_\_\_ Ocean.
4. The only important mountain range in England is the \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Besides England, the other two countries on the island of Great Britain are \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The English document that is like the "Bill of Rights" in our Constitution is called the \_\_\_\_\_.

**Dangerous riches.** Noblemen and merchants who became monks often gave their lands and riches to their monastery. Kings and gentry made gifts of lands and buildings to the monks for their works of charity. Many people who died left property to the monasteries. The monks did not need wealth for themselves. They lived simply, and much was given to the poor; but wealth kept piling up. Some monasteries had more land than the monks could use. They rented some of it out to small farmers, who always preferred the kindhearted monks to more exacting landlords. Each monk himself owned no property, but each monastery owned a great deal.

There came a time when a headstrong and brutal monarch sat on the throne of England. He was King Henry the Eighth, a man who married six times and had several of his wives killed. He quarreled with

the Holy Father in Rome, cut England off from Christendom, and set himself up as England's "popè." Henry needed powerful friends to back him up in his quarrel with the Church. To win friends, he had to have money. All around him were the rich monasteries, and on them he turned his greedy eyes. The monks were men of peace, who carried no swords; it took Henry only a few years to turn the monks out, take over the monasteries, and give them to his friends.

**Lost land.** Dark days began then for England, and the people lost their ancient liberties, indeed. England was at that time a farming country, well able to feed all her people. Neither rich nor poor had the machines and comforts that we seem to need in modern days, but the goods of life were plentiful. The free English peasants usually drank mead—a wine made of honey—at mealtimes. Their tables were generously piled high with meat and fish. Men, women, and children dressed well, in strong woolen cloth. Each hired farm laborer had a big vegetable garden near his cabin; had a cow, a sheep, and geese feeding on the common meadow; and received good wages for his work. Great open hearth fires in castle hall and peasant's hut meant cozy home and shelter from the fog and cold, gray rain.

During the days of Henry VIII, however, the landlords found that they could make much money by raising sheep on the land and selling wool in European countries. Vast areas of land, taken from the monasteries, now belonged to the rich friends of King Henry. The landlords forced the peasants to leave their land, which was fenced in and used for pasturing sheep. A few rich men grew richer now, and the poor had no homes.

**Lost Faith.** During King Henry's time and for many years after, Catholics were

hanged, or fined and imprisoned. There were no monks left to care for the poor, who now roamed the land. Kings and queens who followed Henry continued the work of rooting out the Catholic Faith and setting up the new Church of England. The great nobles who owned the monastery lands worked to keep themselves in power, and they became stronger than the kings. The Puritans—a group who did not like either the Catholics or Henry's Protestants—broke stained-glass windows and statues and tore down fine old churches. The universities and schools were taken over by non-Catholic teachers. The people were told that the Church of Christ was evil. Priests from the newly-formed Society of Jesus made their way into England from the continent of Europe. They lived hunted lives, disguised as peddlers or other laymen, and brought the Mass and the sacraments to the people. Some were found out and martyred.

Now the New World was opened up for settlers. Whole families of British emigrated to North America, and later to Australia and South Africa and other parts of the globe. Thousands of the poor and the Catholics from the prisons of England, Scotland, and Ireland were sent to be slaves on the American tobacco plantations. There, too, they were punished if they tried to practice their Faith. In time the Faith was almost choked out of English life and most of the people no longer knew it. Some kind of Protestant belief was carried everywhere with the English emigrants. They were thus like good people who, without knowing it, pass around counterfeit money. A Protestant civilization grew up wherever Englishmen settled.

**New prosperity.** In England the eldest son usually inherits all the family property;

the younger sons have to go out and seek their fortunes. This custom keeps land and property together, but it does send many young men to faraway places. Englishmen became explorers and navigators, travelers and adventurers. A great British empire grew up. Englishmen, like the old Romans, had a talent for making laws and keeping order, and English law was set to work in places all over the globe. England was no longer a small country that carried on some trade and was able to feed herself. Now Englishmen at home imported more and more things from their colonies and made great fortunes from trade.

**The Industrial Revolution.** Englishmen, always good at inventions, learned to use steam power to turn factory wheels. They made machinery to spin thread and to weave cloth. Cotton from America and wool from Australia could be made into cloth by machines. The machines were costly; only a rich man could buy them. Once he had a factory set up, he could make a great deal of money because much more work could be done by machine than by hand. Spinning and weaving in cottages were soon given up. The movement begun by fencing in the common lands for sheep pastures, under King Henry the Eighth, now reached a climax.

By this time England was no longer a country of farms and villages. Huge cities developed, full of factory chimneys pouring out black smoke. Long rows of dingy houses were the homes of the poor, who starved and shivered through life on scanty wages.

Even the young children worked ten or twelve hours a day in the factories. Coal began to be mined in large quantity for factories, steam engines, ships, and railroads. Miners lived in poverty in the coal-mining towns, and frequent accidents in the mines

killed many. Rich families grew richer, and the poor grew very poor indeed. This movement was called the Industrial Revolution. During this period, some poor working people in the factory city of Rochdale set up a co-operative store. It was the beginning of a world-wide movement which has paved the way to better living conditions for millions of people.

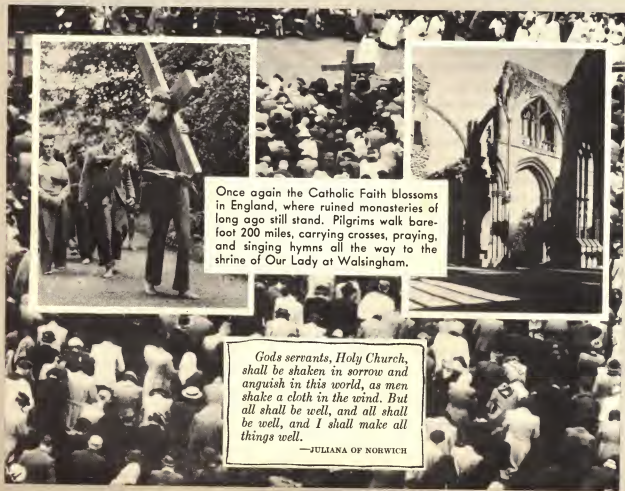
➔ **New charters of liberty.** Finally the workingmen banded together in labor unions, and demanded living wages and decent conditions of work. After a long quarrel between owners and workers, the unions had their way. After a second great world war, the side of Labor grew so strong that it came into power in the government. High wages, pensions, and free medical care were given to all citizens. The government took

over many industries in England.

**The Englishman today.** Four fifths of England's population today live in cities, and work in offices, factories, or mines. The Englishman is also a sailor and an adventurer. Every far corner of the world has been marked with his footprints. He loves his little island, but he has always loved the sea and high adventure, too. "Over the hills and far away" is his song. He is at home everywhere and colonizes faraway countries. He takes his English ways with him and sets up a new little England wherever he goes.

The British are a quiet people, known for good sense and good manners. They respect the law. There are fewer crimes in England than in our own country. Criminals are more speedily caught and punished.

90



Once again the Catholic Faith blossoms in England, where ruined monasteries of long ago still stand. Pilgrims walk bare-foot 200 miles, carrying crosses, praying, and singing hymns all the way to the shrine of Our Lady at Walsingham.

*Gods servants, Holy Church,  
shall be shaken in sorrow and  
anguish in this world, as men  
shake a cloth in the wind. But  
all shall be well, and all shall  
be well, and I shall make all  
things well.*

—JULIANA OF NORWICH

Among Englishmen there are many famous inventors and scientists. The steam engine, the steam locomotive, and now the jet propelled airplane are only a few of the devices we owe to these people. There are many famous writers and leaders who are trying to help their fellowmen. The British government often rewards her great men by knighting them.

Englishmen love freedom. It is often said that "an Englishman's house is his castle," which means that his home life is his own business. There are many Englishmen who live in the country most of the year, and the wealthy families still have big houses on beautiful, old estates.

Two world wars left England very poor. Many cities were ruined by bombing. Many of the old families lost their riches. New blocks of houses are being built for working people with green parks near by where children may play. City workers often have little gardens in the suburbs where they raise vegetables as a spare-time hobby. English homes do not usually have as many household machines as ours, but they are modern and comfortable. Radio broadcasting is supported by the government, so there are no advertising talks between the programs.

Great Britain today has plenty of fine schools where children may get a free education. Many old laws against Catholics have been done away with. The Church grows freely in Britain, with new Cathedrals, schools, and monasteries. The British government pays the salaries of Catholic teachers, whose duty it is to teach religion in school every day. Great English thinkers have become Catholics and have written well about the Faith. However, England is still a Protestant country, not a Catholic one.

## The BRITISH SEAMAN



THOMAS ROSSITER,  
British Seaman

Every man, woman, and child in Britain, every industrial concern and village store is dependent on British shipping.

It is the nation's biggest industry and, before the war, made England foremost in world trade.

Millions of tons of ships sail every day to every part of the world. In seaports like London, Liverpool, and Southampton, work never ceases day or night. You can always hear the roar of sirens as great liners and dirty freighters move in and out surrounded by a fussing army of tugs. In the hundreds of smaller ports dotted every few miles around the coasts of the British Isles, cargoes of every description are handled.

Typical seaport is Liverpool, a sprawling city, pulsing with life. Hub of it is the Pierhead in the heart of the downtown section. To the north are several miles of docks, along both sides of the broad, muddy Mersey River. And behind the docks is the tenement section, where the seamen and their families live.

In one of these tenements, a stone's throw from the docks, lives Mrs. Rossiter and her five children. For about three months of the year her husband lives there, too, when he is not sailing the seas.

Just over 20 years ago Thomas Rossiter "signed on" as a wiper, the lowest job in the engine-room. Today, at 43, he is a donkeyman — equivalent of a navy chief petty officer — and he is, under the engineer officers, in charge of the engine-room crew (numbering 44 in his own ship).

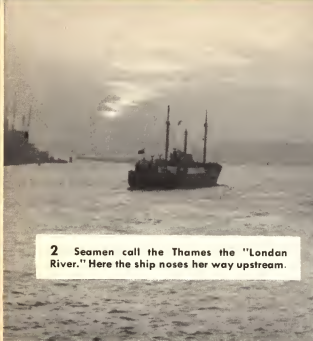
Thomas Rossiter is lucky, because his ship runs to a fairly regular schedule. He usually gets home about every month or six weeks and does not — as so many seamen are forced to do — lose contact with his



1 The Master (Captain) of the vessel himself takes charge in the wheelhouse, watching from the window, as the ships enters port of London.



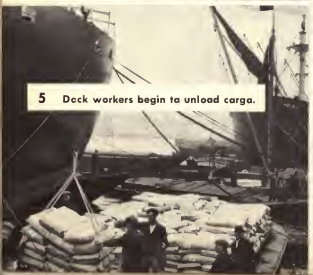




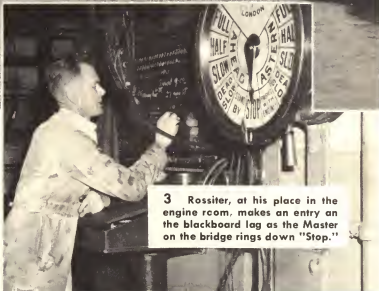
**2** Seamen call the Thames the "London River." Here the ship noses her way upstream.



**4** As the ship enters dock, the chief officer (the mate) stands in the bow and shouts orders to men, who make fast the hawsers (ropes) and moor the ship.



**5** Dock workers begin to unload cargo.



**3** Rossiter, at his place in the engine room, makes an entry on the blackboard log as the Master on the bridge rings down "Stop."



**6** Rossiter goes ashore, visits ship's chandler to buy supplies.



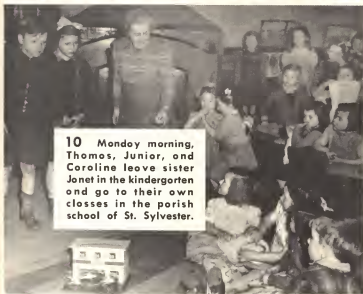
**7** He crosses Leadenhall Street, heart of the British shipping industry, on his way to the shipping company's offices. Back to the ship again he puts out to sea, and in a short time reaches Liverpool.



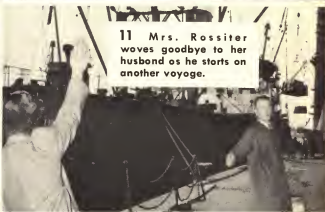
8 Home again!



9 To Church with the family on Sunday.



10 Monday morning, Thomas, Junior, and Caroline leave sister Janet in the kindergarten and go to their own cosses in the parish school of St. Sylvester.



11 Mrs. Rossiter waves goodbye to her husband as he starts on another voyage.



12 A seaman takes his "trick" at the wheel of the outward-bound vessel. He keeps a watchful eye on the compass. Third officer peering through binoculars, has just phoned orders to Rossiter below.

growing family: Patricia, 17; Thomas Junior, 12; Caroline, 9; Janet, 5; and baby Susan, one.

His father was a seaman. His brother was a seaman—torpedoed during the war. Will Thomas Junior, now attending St. Sylvester's parish high school, follow in the calling that maintains Britain's life? The family only say: "We'll wait and see . . ."

The pictures to the right show two important parts of the ship. The wheelhouse and the chartroom are high up on the bridge above the upper deck. The wheelhouse must be kept dark at night, in order that the helmsman can see through the darkness of night. The chartroom is kept lighted up, for here the charts are consulted and the ship's course is laid out. The wheelhouse contains steering wheel and compass, with other necessary devices; also, the engine room telegraph through which orders are given.

Above the table in the chartroom are the ship's clock; a barograph used to judge probable changes of weather; and an electric log which measures the ship's speed. On the chart table is a sextant, used to measure the angles of sun and stars in navigation. Note the pencils in racks, useful when the ship is rolling.



13 Second officer, in the chart room behind the wheelhouse, lay off the ship's course on the chart



H-4

**H-4** The Tower Bridge spans the Thames River. Look at the map on page 98 and find what products come into London harbor of flood tide, and what products go out at ebb tide.



C-4

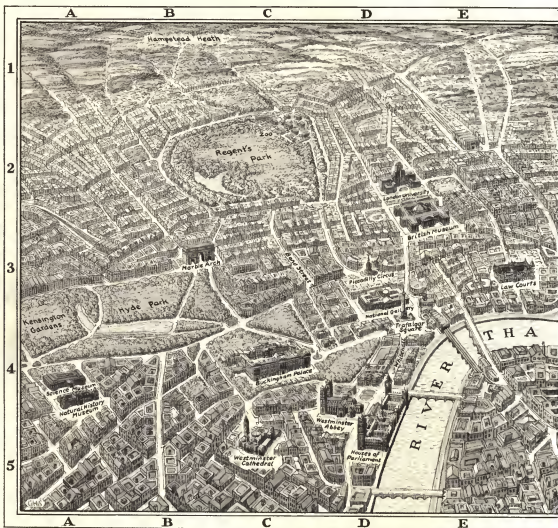
**C-4** Buckingham Palace is the city home of the King and Queen. In Whitehall near by, visitors watch the ceremony of the changing of the guards every day. How does a king differ from a president?

**D-3** Piccadilly Circus is a famous street of fashionable shops, theaters, banks, and hotels. In the picture discover one important way in which British traffic rules differ from ours.



D-3

**B-3** In Hyde Park speakers on all subjects air their views. This priest is telling Londoners something about the Faith. On page 99 find England's population and the number of Catholics. What proportion of the population is Catholic?



B-3

**H-4** The Tower of London. Many famous prisoners spent their lost days here. One was St. Thomas More. Find out something about the life of this happy martyr and why he died.

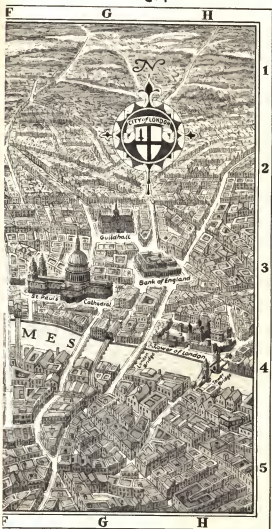
**D-5** London's Houses of Parliament. The name Parliament comes from a word meaning to speak. The British believe in and practice freedom of speech. The tower on the left is the House of Lords. Name the other House of England's Parliament. Compare Britain's lawmaking bodies with those in our own country. The clock on the right is Big Ben.



H-4



C-4



D-5

# LONDON

## Capital of England — World's Largest Seaport

London is one of the world's largest cities, and it is very old. About one sixth of the people of England live there. It is a big business and trading center. Docks, wharves, and warehouses extend sixty-nine miles along the river banks. London is at the head of navigation on the Thames River. That means it is as far up the river as ocean ships can go. Hundreds of years ago it was a village of the place where a wooden bridge spanned the river. It grew, as villages grow, without any special plan. Now it is a maze of streets, wide and narrow, crooked and straight. Much of it was ruined by bombs during the second world war, but now business goes on as usual.

Britain used to have a great empire spread all over the world. Part of our own United States once belonged to that empire. It was said that "The sun never sets on the British Empire," because British possessions were found all around the globe. Many parts of the British Empire have now become free and independent states. Others prefer to stay in the British family of countries called the Commonwealth of Nations. In this group each nation is independent and runs its own affairs, but it is closely related to England and acknowledges the King as its head.

Long ago, while the great abbeys were powerful and the town guilds were prosperous, the abbots and bishops, lords, and other noblemen met at certain times to make laws and to grant taxes for the King's needs in governing the country. Their assembly was called the House of Lords. The people of each district also elected other men to meet in a second house, called the House of Commons. The House of Lords and the House of Commons make up the Parliament, a governing body somewhat like our Congress. Britain still keeps its Houses of Lords and Commons. Commons is now the more powerful. The King no longer has power to make laws. Britain is a truly democratic nation. The fine old Houses of Parliament are in London. A famous clock called Big Ben strikes the hours from the toll tower.

Westminster Abbey, once a monastery (West-Monastery), is now a burial place for famous men. The Tower of London is an ancient prison. Part of it is now a museum.



At Greenwich, 7 miles east of the city, we start counting longitude. The 0 meridian runs through the observatory.





Overlooking the Firth (estuary, or narrow sea arm) of the mouth of the Moray River at Inverness, in Scotland. The surrounding region is wooded and hilly, inhabited by shepherds and fishermen.

**Scotland and Wales.** About two thirds of Scotland consists of rugged highlands covered with grass and a shrub called heather. The highest mountain peak in all Great Britain is Ben Nevis in the Scottish Highlands. It is less than 5,000 feet above sea level. The soil of Scotland is poorer than that of England, but the Scots have learned to live frugally. The climate is moist and foggy. Many Scots are sailors and fishermen.

Most of the people of Scotland live in the lowlands. Here are the big industrial cities, and the great schools and universities. The Scots have long been lovers of education. In the lowlands, farmers raise crops that will grow in Scotland's cool climate. Here are dairy farms, the cattle of which help to feed the people in the big cities.

For a long time the Catholic Church was

small and despised, but it is growing fast in Scotland's great cities where many thousands of fervent Catholics live. The government supports Catholic schools, and Catholic men and women serve as teachers in them. Religion is taught in school every day.

Far back in the mountains live the Scottish Highlanders. Like other mountain people, they are lovers of liberty. When the so-called "reformers" tried to make the people of Scotland give up their Catholic Faith, these people refused to be conquered either by arguments or by armies. Some of them stayed in their mountain homes; others emigrated. Many settled in the eastern part of Canada, which they named Nova Scotia, or New Scotland.

The Scottish Highlands have many beautiful lakes and wild scenery. Deer, grouse, and trout are found. Hardy cattle and sheep graze on the hillsides. Only a few people live there, most of them shepherds and fishermen. Rivers in the Scottish Highlands are used for electric power.

Some of the Scots keep their ancient Gaelic tongue—like that of the Irish. However, English is the language of the majority of Scots. There were wars between England and Scotland for centuries, until a Scottish prince was born who was also the heir to the English throne. Then the two countries were joined peacefully.

Wales has its own language and literature, and its people are somewhat different from the English. Like the Scots, they are related to the Celts of Ireland. They are great singers and lovers of music. Wales was conquered by the English about six hundred years ago and has been part of the United Kingdom ever since.

This little town in Wales has a long Welsh name painted above the station. Try to pronounce it.





Shall I compare thee to a summer's day?  
Thou art more lovely and more temperate.  
—SHAKESPEARE

## Our Language

The island of Great Britain lies far across the Atlantic Ocean from North America. Most Americans have never seen that island, and we do not know the English people who live there, yet we speak their language and read their books. Their great authors belong to us, also. As children we sing of London Bridge and of a king in his counting house. Our laws, our customs, our democratic ideas, our ways of education and of living have come to us largely from England.

The English language is made up of words from all the nations who mingled to make up the English people. This language has, also, a sprinkling of terms from many other corners of the earth. (We can learn the source of a word from the dictionary.) The English language is spoken in a large part of the world, and it has vast treasures of literature and wisdom. Thoughts can be expressed in it with power and clearness, with humor, with exactness, and with great beauty. It is one of the world's noblest languages.

We here highly resolve that this nation, under God, shall have a new birth of freedom—and that government of the people, by the people, for the people, shall not perish from the earth.  
—ABRAHAM LINCOLN

We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal, that they are endowed by their Creator with certain...rights; that among these are Life, Liberty, and the pursuit of Happiness.  
—THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE

O wild West Wind, thou breath of Autumn's being,  
Thou, from whose unseen presence the leaves dead  
Are driven, like ghosts from an enchanter fleeing,  
Yellow and black, and pale, and hectic red...  
—PERCY B. SHELLEY—"Ode to the West Wind"

I will make a palace fit for you and me,  
Of green days in forests and blue days at sea.  
And this shall be for music when no one else is near.  
The fine song for singing, the rare song to hear.  
That only I remember, that only you admire,  
Of the broad road that stretches and the roadside fire.  
—ROBERT LOUIS STEVENSON

Modern British children play outside the ancient cottage of Shakespeare's wife, at Stratford.

### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Explain each of the following in a good sentence or a short paragraph.

1. England is not a Catholic country.
2. Many Englishmen emigrated to North America and other parts of the world.
3. The use of steam power to run machines in factories changed the way of living of many English people.
4. People used to say, "The sun never sets on the British Empire."

Give a good reason for each of the following:

1. Four fifths of England's population live in cities.
2. Today the English are going through a difficult period in their history.
3. Many of the people of Great Britain are engaged in the shipping industry.
4. Most of the people living in the Scottish Highlands are shepherds and fishermen.



**14** Great Britain imports from many other countries four fifths of the breadstuffs and fruits which she consumes. Why?



Find Glastanbury where the first Christian church in Britain was built.



**Legend:**

- Capital City
- Canal
- International Boundaries
- Other Boundaries

**Scale of Miles:** 0 50 100

**General Drafting Co., Inc.**

**Major Cities and Regions:**

- North:** HADDOK COD, HERRIDES IS., OATS, Aberdeen, Mixed Farming, Sheep, Dundee, Firth of Forth, Shipbuilding, Glasgow, Edinburgh, Firth of Forth, Shipbuilding, Newcastle, Coal, Shipbuilding, Hull, Yorkshire, Leeds, Bradford, Manchester, Liverpool, Cotton, Meat, Wool, Dairy Products, Sugar, Grain, Wheat & Flour, Iron, Coal, Clay, Cattle, Sheep, Oats, Barley, Pottery, Machinery, Cotton Goods, Mackarel, Herring, Iron Ore, Tin, Plymouth, Cattle, Mixed Farming, Brown Sea L.
- West:** Ireland, Irish Sea, Meat, Flax, Grain, Linen Goods, Cotton Goods, Machinery, Sheep, Coal, Iron, Clay, Cattle, Sheep, Oats, Barley, Pottery, Machinery, Cotton Goods, Mackarel, Herring, Iron Ore, Tin, Plymouth, Cattle, Mixed Farming, Brown Sea L.
- South:** London, Canterbury, Dover, Woolen Goods & Cotton Goods, Machinery, Tools & Cutlery, Clothing, Wood Pulp, Sugar, Iron, Steel, Copper, Dairy Products, Grain, Rubber, Oil, Wool, Lumber, Tea, Yarmouth, Norwich, Cambridge, Stratford on Avon, Northampton, Oxford, Bristol, Cardiff, Swansea, Bristol Channel, Glastonbury, Southampton, Plymouth, Cattle, Mixed Farming, Brown Sea L.
- East:** North Sea, Belgium, France, English Channel, Strait of Dover.

**12** Study England's exports. Which are manufactured from raw materials of England, which from raw materials of other lands?



Some of the sea-ports are not on the coast. Discover how ships can come and go to these cities.

**11** Most of the people in Great Britain make their living by manufacturing, mining, shipping, trade, and fishing.



Locate the following seaports: London, Glasgow, Southampton, Dover, Newcastle, Hull, Liverpool.

**10** It has been said Britain is made of coal and surrounded by fish. What connections have these facts with Britain's industries?

1 Which countries are on the island of Great Britain? What are these countries together with Northern Ireland called?



Total population 50,019,000. Catholics 3,698,600. Estimate the percentage of Catholics.

2 The United Kingdom is about the size of New York State and Pennsylvania, with twice as many people. Is it thickly populated?



Birmingham is a center for making automobiles, airplanes, railroad cars, machinery, and needles. Why?

3 How far is England from the mainland of Europe? Measure the distance across the Strait of Dover.



What is mined near Cardiff and Swansea? Give the reason for these products: tin, copper, zinc, iron, and steel.

## THE BRITISH: Their Land and Work

On the island of Great Britain are the countries of England, Scotland, and Wales. These, together with Northern Ireland, make up the United Kingdom. The United Kingdom is about the size of New York and Pennsylvania together. It has about twice as many people as these two States. Four out of five citizens live in cities. England is a very thickly populated country.

Near the big island of Great Britain, there are many small islands, where people live by farming and fishing. These islands are interesting and very beautiful, and they, too, are part of Britain.

The distance across the Strait of Dover, from England to the mainland of Europe, is only about twenty-one miles. It takes a few minutes to cross that water by plane, and an hour or so by ship. However, there are treacherous currents and fierce storms in the seas around Britain. More than once a powerful enemy, about to invade Great Britain, has suffered shipwreck and ruin.

Summers in Great Britain are mild even though the island is farther north than the United States. The western side of the island receives the most rain. Only a little snow falls in winter. There are many beautiful lakes in England and Scotland. Farm land and pastures are trim and tidy. English countryside looks like a well-kept park.

Our Indian corn, which needs hot sun to produce a good crop, does not thrive in cool, moist, cloudy Britain. However, cool-weather crops such as oats, wheat, barley, and potatoes are plentiful and important. Britain has long been famous for fine breeds of cattle, sheep, and horses. There are many small market towns where farmers trade. The government sends out experts like our county agents to advise and help farmers. The government also sees that the land is put to good use and well managed. Most farming is done with tractors and other

farm machines. It is said that there are more farm machines to the acre in Britain than anywhere else in the world.

Great Britain has good fertile land, but there is not enough of it to raise all the food needed for its large population. Britons must depend on the people of other countries for more than half their food; they also import many of the raw materials to "feed" their factories. They pay for their imports by selling manufactured products (machines, locomotives, ships, airplanes, and cotton and woolen textiles) and coal to people in other countries.

Most of the people in England make their living by manufacturing, mining, shipping, trade, and fishing. Fine machinery, locomotives, ships, and some of the world's best airplanes are built in Great Britain. Shipbuilding in the wide-mouthed estuaries is one of England's great industries.

There is a great supply of coal, which is used to make steam or electric power to turn the wheels of factories. Thousands of men work in the coal mines, or on the ships that carry coal out of Newcastle, England, and Cardiff, Wales, to other European countries and South America. There is some iron in Britain but not enough for all the factories. Much iron ore is imported from Spain and Sweden.

Fishing is an important industry in many villages on the coast. Herring are caught in nets, cod and haddock by steam trawlers.

Many houses are built of granite quarried in Britain. Limestone from quarries is burned to make Portland cement. Crushed rock is used in building roads. British quarries supply much building stone for world use.

No city in Great Britain is more than seventy miles from the ocean. Fine railways and highways connect inland cities with seaports. Shipping lanes and air routes connect Britain with all parts of the world.

4 Using the map scale find the greatest number of miles any city in Great Britain can be from the seashore.



Much wool is imported by Great Britain. Leeds and Bradford excel in woolen goods.

5 Find the Pennine Chain of mountains. They are covered with forests and grass. What industries are located there?



Stoke on Trent makes dishes, bricks, tiles, jars, vases, and other pottery.

6 Summers are mild in Great Britain. What are some of the cool-weather crops that grow well there?



Manchester is well-known for cotton goods. Through what port is the raw cotton imported?

9 British waters are well-stocked with cod, mackerel, halibut, sole, herring, and haddock. Locate Aberdeen, Grimsby, Yarmouth.



Newcastle makes ships, locomotives, railroad cars, steel rails, bridges, and guns.

8 Trace a line from Liverpool to Hull to Birmingham on the map. In this triangle lies the manufacturing region of England.



Knives, scissors, razors, grinding tools made at Sheffield are world famous.

7 Great Britain has some good fertile lowlands, but the farmers do not raise enough food for the large population. Why?



Herring are caught in nets; cod and haddock by steam trawlers.

## 5. How People Live and Work in Ireland

A great writer, Gilbert Chesterton, tells us that England was once believed to be the edge of the world. Its westernmost tip was the jumping-off place, thought the Roman conquerors, gazing west into the stormy Atlantic Ocean. However, there was another island a little farther west—across the Irish Sea. This was the green isle of Ireland. The Romans never tried to conquer it.

**The people of Ireland.** The people of Ireland are principally of old Celtic origin. The Celts and other invaders came to Ireland before the time of Christ. They spoke the Gaelic or Celtic tongue, and had a written language and literature of their own. The Catholic Faith was brought to Ireland by a young missionary, said to be a member of one of the Christian Roman families of Britain, then under Roman rule. His name was Patrick.

The young missionary came to Ireland with a company of priests and helpers, including a choirmaster to teach hymns, a cook, other servants, a bodyguard, smiths, and carpenters. He brought supplies of food in charge of a storekeeper. His sister and two other good women came along to make vestments and altar linens. Saint Patrick was not only a saintly priest but he was also the son of a Roman officer, with the Roman gift for organizing. In each place where he made a few converts, he built a church and set up Christian worship. At Armagh he built a great school or seminary. Wisely, he educated young Irishmen, ordained them priests, and as soon as possible left each church in the hands of a native pastor.

In a short time Ireland was a Christian land. Great monasteries of monks and nuns

were established, beautiful churches were built, schools and colleges were founded. While much of Europe was torn by wars and overrun by enemies, learning and culture shone brightly in Ireland. Irish Catholic missionaries carried the Faith into pagan parts of Great Britain, France, Switzerland, Germany, Italy, and even to faraway Iceland.

**English conquerors.** From very early times, Ireland carried on trade with Spain and other parts of Europe. Barrels of wine, fine cloth, and gold came in the galleys and were traded at the Kildare Fair for the

Irish herders' cowhides, salted meat, and wool. The Irish were a hardy, outdoor people, used to plain living, fond of music and poetry and learning; loving sports, games, hunting, and dancing. They were fond of fighting, too, and small wars were always going on between the Irish clans.

One day, across the sea came English knights, with new ways of fighting. They wore armor, rode on horses, and were accompanied by skillful archers who used yard-long arrows. Dermot, one of the Irish chiefs, had invited them to help overthrow his rivals. When they succeeded, Dermot gave Irish lands to the English who had helped him, and he himself became a subject of the English king. The English



Carved stone Celtic cross.  
Rock of Cashel, Ireland.

knights, who were Catholics, built castles and towns, married Irish girls, settled down, and became Irishmen. They all learned to live together somewhat peacefully.

**Emigration.** Later, when the Protestants began to rule England, there came black and bitter times for Ireland, too. The Puritans, especially, were determined to destroy the Church. They sent soldiers into Ireland and made laws to punish the people who would not obey. Lands and houses were taken, while their owners fled away into the bogs, the wild, rocky islands, and coast lands. Many Irish emigrated to America. Some of those who had lost their land stayed as tenant farmers, paying rent to the land-

101

Some of the thirty thousand who made the pilgrimage to the little chapel on top of the mountain where St. Patrick fasted and prayed. They offered their prayers for the conversion of Russia.

lords in England. Their herds of cattle were no more; a poor tenant farmer might have only a pig and perhaps a lean cow. It seemed a godsend when a new plant was brought to Ireland from far-off South America.

The Spanish in Peru had found a plant cultivated by the Indians and had taken it to Europe. The Spanish people called it the *patata*. It grew easily in Ireland and produced a heavy crop on a small patch of land. The underground stems were heavy, starchy food. A man could live on them if he had to. It was a good crop for the poor. Soon the food plant of the Peruvian Indians was growing all over Ireland, and came to be known as the Irish potato.

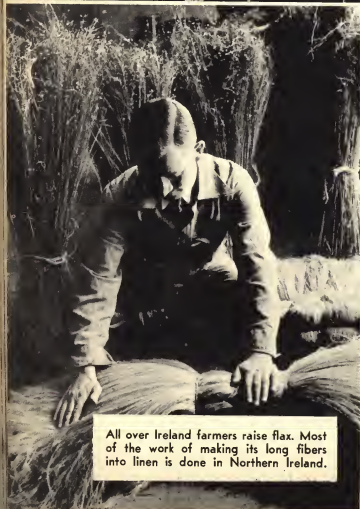
Ireland then became largely a one-crop country. Such a situation is always dangerous: it is bad for the soil, and bad for the people. Suddenly a wilt disease struck the







A shrine in honor of the Sacred Heart of Jesus stands at the corner of the street in downtown Dublin.



All over Ireland farmers raise flax. Most of the work of making its long fibers into linen is done in Northern Ireland.



Irishmen are fine horsemen and know a fine animal when they see one.

Irish potato crop. The disease spread rapidly. Soon the little potato patches were full of dead plants, and the little cottages held starving men, women, and children. Then began another great outpouring of Irishmen to other parts of the world, especially to North America and Australia.

**Free Republic of Ireland.** It is only of late years, after centuries of struggle and suffering, that the people of Ireland have won their independence and have set up their own republic, with a president and bodies of lawmakers somewhat like our own. However, some of the members of the Irish Senate are elected by groups somewhat like guilds. Farmers and fishermen, factory workers and owners, bankers, teachers, and other groups are represented. The Irish in America had much to do with Ireland's gaining her freedom, and most Irishmen realize that their land owes much to the United States. The old hatred of England is disappearing and the two nations live side by side, peacefully trading, and visited by each other's tourists, back and forth across the Irish Sea.

**Quiet country.** In Ireland, the people have struggled long for liberty: for their own government, and for freedom to live and worship God as they please. Once these were regained, farmers and tradesmen found

a small measure of comfort and simple living. Some manufacturing and trading are done, but the Irish people do not care to enter the mad rush for wealth and power that rules so much of the world. Thousands live daily in the state of grace, and the thought of heaven is never far from them. Some wealth, they think, is useful, but not worth exchanging for better things. "Why pile up a fortune? You can't take it with you when you die." In Ireland there is no rush, no strain; trains run slowly, for nobody is in a hurry. People have time to stop and visit, to talk and laugh. The Irish are warmhearted and generous, freely giving to

anyone in need. Farmhouses are never locked, for there are no thieves in the country districts of Ireland.

Many of the young folk have felt the spirit of the outside world. During the years when Ireland was enslaved or starving, there was good reason for her sons and daughters to flee the land. Now there is less reason—but the young people leave Ireland even though it is thinly populated and could support more people than it now has. Once in foreign lands, they seldom go on farms, such as they knew at home. Most of them work at jobs for wages, marry and settle down in crowded cities.

## THE IRISH: Their Land and Work

The island that we call Ireland is about the same size as South Carolina. It is shaped somewhat like a platter, with a low center and a raised rim of mountains around the edge. The ragged coast line has good harbors. The center is not flat but somewhat rolling. Except for the big Shannon River, the few rivers that wind their way between the mountains to the sea cannot be navigated far inland. Water does not drain out of the low interior of the "platter," and there are many bogs. Wet winds sweep in from the Atlantic Ocean, drenching the island with rain.

A warm ocean current keeps the Irish climate mild. Lovely lakes dot the countryside, and in some

of these are beautiful, wooded islands. However, forests are not plentiful in Ireland. Lakes are full of delicious, brown trout; salmon lie thick in the rivers and leap up the falls; and the fertile seas furnish a living for many an Irish fisherman.

The rounded hills are green with grass and purple with heather, often glistening with raindrops. In the bogs, grass and vegetation grow and die, and more vegetation grows on top. This process has gone on for centuries forming a thick, brown layer of decayed matter, known as peat. It lies ready to be cut, dried, and burned as fuel in people's houses. The Irish call it turf. However, wood is scarce and there are almost no coal deposits. The



# IRELAND



Many tourists visit Ireland to enjoy the lovely scenery, to chat with the friendly Irish people, to visit relatives and ancestral homes. Why do you think visitors feel relaxed and enjoy their visit?



A loom that makes world-famous linen. Below, an inspector examines the linen for possible flaws. What crop produces the raw material for the linen industry?



Many farmers raise sheep. What are two different products that come from sheep? (One may appear on the table, one on your back.) The weaver is making tweed, a thick, warm, woollen cloth. Several suits may be made from the wool of one sheep.





The Lakes of Killarney and Ireland's many beaches are scenes of holiday sport. What kinds of fish are caught in her lakes and rivers?



Harvesting oats, an important crop in Ireland. What are some uses of oats? What other crops are grown on the island?

turf used by farmers is often difficult to get in the cities. There are practically no minerals in Ireland.

Much of Ireland has fertile limestone soil. Grass grown on such soil is a food that builds strong animals with glossy coats and good teeth. Like the bluegrass region of Kentucky, Ireland has long been a land of fine horses and cattle. Horse racing and fox hunting are the Irishman's favorite sports.

There are not many people in Ireland. Cities are small, and farms are neither close together nor closely cultivated. The whole island seems quiet. Long stretches of green countryside and rippling lakes lie lonely under a windswept, rainy sky.

A large cow pasture near the city of Limerick has been made into Shannon Airport. Ireland is connected by air with all the faraway parts of the world. Many tourists visit the island.

The Shannon River has been harnessed and set to work. Several great power plants send out electricity all over the island. Farmers in thatched cottages now have electric lights, and nearly every house has a radio. Radio is supported by taxes and not by advertisers. The Irish people enjoy plays from the famed Abbey Theater group and programs with good music. There are no crime thrillers nor commercial advertising on the radio.

Northern Ireland, settled mostly by settlers from England, is not part of the Republic of Ireland. It belongs to the United Kingdom. Northern Ireland has most of the factories and industries on the island. In Belfast, its capital, there are shipyards where great ocean liners are built. Thousands of people work in factories producing beautiful Irish linens. Many farmers grow flax, and linens are made all over the island.

Dublin is the capital and chief port of the Republic of Ireland. Trinity College, a very old school of learning, is in Dublin. The city is a center of trade and manufacturing. It is connected by railroads with other Irish cities.

Cork is a city set in a rich farming and dairy region.

Cobh, about eleven miles from Cork, is the seaport for the large passenger ships from England and America.

Limerick is a small port on the River Shannon. This river is the largest in Ireland and can be navigated by small boats.

Lace from linen thread, gloves of leather, rosaries and other articles from horn, tweeds and fine knitted garments from wool are all made from Ireland's own raw materials. Many of these things are made in the home, adding to the family income.



Some fishermen make a living by fishing from small homemade boats. Others fish from larger vessels. What kinds of fish might they bring in from the sea?



Belfast employs thousands of men in an important industry. This industry uses iron and steel and must be located at a seaport. What industry is it?





# LIVING ON AN IRISH FARM



Week day early Mass is over in the fine old village church.



The schoolmaster teaches Catechism with other subjects in the public school. Children learn Gaelic, Ireland's native language.



Older pupils have school gardens and learn sound farming methods.



Mrs. Ryan waits at the cottage for the children to come home from school. The kettle hangs over the peat fire on the hearth, ready for tea. Aunt Jane makes fine Irish lace for sale.



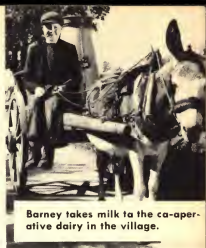




Granny spins wool into yarn to be knit into sweaters for sale.



Big sister Kate milks the five cows morning and evening.



Barney takes milk to the co-operative dairy in the village.



When farm work is slack the family cut "turf" and bring it in for fuel. At harvest time all hands help reap the oats. Irish oatmeal (very different from our "rolled oats") is a fine, hearty food.



After the day's work is over the family gathers in the kitchen around the hearth. They kneel down facing the pictures of Our Lady and the Sacred Heart of Jesus on the wall and say the Rosary and night prayers. "The family that prays together, stays together."

**Building for Christian families.** Irish leaders are trying to persuade the young men and women to stay in their homeland. A group of priests under the bishops' direction are starting parish guilds throughout Ireland. Young people are helped to make a better living on the land, to raise more vegetables and fruit, to do better farming, to market their goods and to buy what they need through co-operatives. Girls are encouraged to keep up the useful old handicrafts of spinning and weaving wool, knitting clothing, making rugs, leather gloves, toys, and fine lace to sell. Such "cottage industries" can be carried on without leaving the home, and they provide warm clothing for the family and a helpful cash income. The parish guilds also provide good amusement for the people.

Modern Irishmen are writing excellent books and musical poetry that is different from that of any other nation. Irish plays and actors are famous. Actors and musicians often receive small statues of saints as prizes for fine performances.

**Catholic ways.** The Irish have good labor unions, organized by Jim Larkin, a man who loved the poor and Christ the Worker. When Mr. Larkin died, he was buried in the

brown robe of the Brothers of Saint Francis.

The national schools, which we would call public schools, provide free education for all the children. There is no need for parochial schools, because most Irish pupils are Catholics and religion is taught in these national schools. Often the teachers are men or women who are good Catholics and able to teach religion well. In some of these schools, Sisters and Brothers are paid a salary from the government funds. Catholics of Ireland are not obliged to keep up two sets of schools as they do in America. Where there are enough Protestant children to need a school of their own, the government also supports these schools and pays half of the pupils' bus fare.

**The scattered nation.** Ireland is both an old country and a new one. It is a small island, yet its people have had a marked effect for good upon much of the rest of the world. Wherever the Irish have settled they have brought their Catholic Faith with them. They love their mother country fiercely, yet leave her by the millions and settle in almost all other lands under the sun. They are leaders in other countries, whereas, for centuries, they were not permitted to rule their own.

#### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Answer each of the following questions in a complete sentence or a short paragraph.

1. Who brought the Catholic Faith to the people of Ireland?

2. Why did so many of the Irish people emigrate to America?

3. Why is it dangerous for a country to rely on one main crop for its food supply?

4. What is the name of the fuel used in most Irish farmhouses? How does nature form this material?

5. Why is Northern Ireland not part of the Republic of Ireland?

6. Why is the interior of Ireland a swampy region?

7. How do radio programs in Ireland differ from those we hear on our own radios?

8. Why is Ireland an excellent country for the raising of fine horses and cattle?

9. In what way is the government of the Republic of Ireland similar to our own? In what way is it different?

10. What is the name of Ireland's most important river? How do the Irish use it?

## For My Geography Notebook

### Questions for Review

#### Great Britain

1. Explain why the climate of Great Britain and Ireland is mild even though the islands are located as far north as frozen Labrador. 2. Why can it be said that the Benedictines had a lasting effect on the people of Britain? 3. How was the Magna Carta similar to the Bill of Rights in our own Constitution? 4. What part did King Henry the Eighth, play in making England a Protestant country? 5. How did British colonies all over the world help to make England a great country? 6. Give some reasons why the English people have earned the respect of the other nations of the world. 7. Why is shipping one of Great Britain's important industries? 8. What is the origin of our English language? 9. What is meant by the "British Commonwealth of Nations"? 10. What is the name of the British governing body that corresponds to our Congress? 11. Give some reasons why fishing is an important industry to the people of Great Britain. 12. Make a list of the exports and imports of Great Britain. 13. Give some reasons why shipbuilding is one of Great Britain's most important industries. 14. What cereal crops are grown on British farms? 15. What mineral necessary to manufacturing does Great Britain have in abundance?

#### Ireland

1. What language was spoken in Ireland before it was conquered by the English? 2. Why did disease and starvation come to the Irish people when the potato crop failed? 3. Why did the Irish fight for their independence? 4. How do the people of Northern Ireland differ from those of the Republic of Ireland? 5. How do you account for the rainy climate of Ireland? 6. Why is it necessary to use peat for fuel in Ireland? 7. What large body of water lies between Great Britain and Ireland? 8. How do many parts of Ireland obtain electricity for home use? 9. What manufacturing industries are carried on in the city of Belfast? 10. Name three cities of the Republic of Ireland and tell why each is important?

**Using Geography Words Correctly.** The following list contains words used in this chapter. Use each in a sentence.

- |                       |              |
|-----------------------|--------------|
| 1. estuary            | 8. sextant   |
| 2. democracy          | 9. flax      |
| 3. linen              | 10. bogs     |
| 4. co-operative store | 11. peat     |
| 5. wilt               | 12. loom     |
| 6. manor              | 13. thatched |
| 7. barograph          | 14. firth    |

**A Matching Test.** Column A is made up of a list of cities in Great Britain and Ireland. Write next to each city the item in column B for which it is best known. If you need some help you may find it on the maps on pages 98 and 104.

A		B	
London		manufacture of iron and steel goods	
Sheffield		pottery-making center	
Birmingham		shipbuilding city in Scotland	
Manchester		great seaport on the Thames River	
Stoke on Trent		seaport on England's west coast	
Glasgow		manufacture of cutlery	
Belfast		manufacture of cotton goods	
Liverpool		largest city in Northern Ireland	
Leeds		seaport of southern Ireland	
Dublin		manufacturing city in Wales	
Cobh		manufacture of woolen goods	
Cardiff		capital of Republic of Ireland	

**Pause and Think.** Explain these sentences from your reading. It will help you to refer back to the text.

1. "... God made no difference between the soul of the slave and that of the free man." (P. 86)
2. Britons import more than half their food. (P. 99)
3. Ireland then became largely a one-crop country. (P. 101)
4. Some wealth, they think, is useful, but not worth exchanging for better things. (P. 103)
5. "The family that prays together, stays together." (P. 107)

## 6. The People of Switzerland

Switzerland is a mountainous land with no seacoast and few natural resources. It is about half the size of South Carolina. Yet the hard working and intelligent Swiss have made it one of Europe's most prosperous countries. About half the population work in shops and factories, making the fine products which are known and sold everywhere.

Lying in the high, rugged Alps Mountains, Switzerland has beautiful scenery, electric power from waterfalls, modern electric railways, numbers of lakes crisscrossed by steamship lines, and fine highways and air terminals. It is a summer resort for people who wish to escape the heat of the lowlands and live within sight of snow-covered mountain peaks. It is a winter resort for those who love winter sports. People from all over the world send their children to school in Switzerland. With a healthful climate, courteous people, houses and trains spotlessly clean, sports, and good food, this beautiful little country attracts visitors from everywhere.

**Swiss background.** In ancient times the Swiss people practiced a very fierce and gloomy pagan religion. Their pagan priests worshiped under oak trees in the forests, and sometimes killed a human being as an offering to their gods. The great Roman general, Julius Caesar, had several battles with the Swiss, who were called Helvetians at that time.

After a hard fight the Romans won, and the district came under Roman rule. The Swiss, like most hardy, mountain dwellers, were stubborn lovers of liberty and often revolted. Centuries later a Roman army was sent into the Alps to put down one of these rebellions. Part of the army, a legion

composed of three or four thousand soldiers, was not made up of native Romans. They had been recruited in Thebes, a Roman colony in northern Egypt. The Church was a little over two hundred years old at that time, and Egypt had thriving Christian parishes. The soldiers of the Theban Legion and their commanding officer, Prince Maurice, were all Catholics.

After the Romans had defeated the Swiss, all the troops were ordered to offer sacrifice to the pagan gods of Rome, in thanksgiving. Maurice and his legion of Christians refused, so they were punished in the old Roman way. The Catholic soldiers of the Theban Legion were drawn up in ranks and stood at attention. Then a swordsman went down each row and killed every tenth man. This Roman method is called "decimation." Maurice and his legion still refused to sacrifice to pagan gods. Again every tenth man was killed. Still they refused, and then the whole legion was destroyed. So the soil of Switzerland was baptized and made holy by martyr's blood, while the Church was still young. The town of St. Maurice bears the name of this officer-martyr.

**Mission from Ireland.** About the year 600 there came from Ireland a band of Catholic missionaries who were led by Saint Columbanus. One of the missionaries whom we call St. Gall, knew the language of the Swiss people. He converted many of them and threw their idols into the lake. After a time St. Columbanus went on into Italy, but St. Gall stayed in Switzerland. The church and monastery which he founded are named after him, and the city that grew up there is still called St. Gall.

**The great falling-away.** For centuries Switzerland was a Catholic country. Then came the great disaster known as the Protestant Reformation. Most of the countries stayed faithful to the Church. But a Frenchman named John Calvin, and Martin Luther, a German priest, both left the Catholic Church and set up churches of their own, each with himself as "Pope." Across the channel in England, King Henry VIII did the same. Martin Luther's group took over in parts of Germany, Holland, and the northern countries; Calvin's headquarters were in Switzerland.

In most cases the new religions spread fast; the princes who joined them had a good excuse to take over the monastery lands and buildings, turning out the monks and the poor people who lived there. Once a prince belonged to the new religion, he forced all his subjects to belong to it, too. The new churches were called "Protestant" because they "protested" against the Church which Christ founded. Each new church kept some Catholic truths, and each one rejected whatever its founder did not happen to like.

**Effects on mankind.** The sects started by Calvin were stern and gloomy, with little comfort for sinners. Calvin frowned on amusement and taught that most men would go to hell. Some of his followers, known as Puritans, later became strong in Scotland and in England, and from there came to New England. Their spirit spread over much of America. Protestantism has had an important effect on business and industry, on men's work and everyday living and thinking.

European countries, with their different state churches, were divided and at war for a long time. Today, Protestants and Catholics no longer persecute each other.


They live peacefully side by side in most countries. However, little by little, the Protestant churches have lost the remains of Catholic Faith which they once had. Most Protestants are no longer sure about their beliefs. Many of them now know nothing about the Catholic Church against which their ancestors protested.

**Bishop of Geneva.** The Church of Calvin spread over all the section about Geneva and in many other cities of Switzerland. The holy and kind Bishop of Geneva, Francis of Sales, made his headquarters in the French city of Annecy. From there he took care of his Swiss diocese just across the border. He made long journeys over mountains and valleys, teaching and preaching. Often he was in danger of his life from the Calvinists.

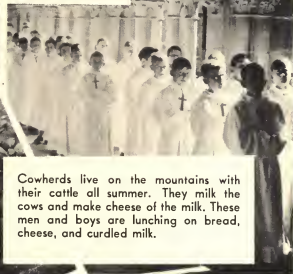

Francis was brought up in a wealthy family, and as a boy was used to having plenty of money and whatever he wanted. Yet, when he became Bishop he lived as a poor man, keeping nothing for himself, giving all he had to the poor. He wrote many books, letters, and pamphlets, teaching people Catholic truth and leading them to live holy lives. He was always gentle and kind so that he was greatly loved. He brought many of the Swiss people back to the Catholic Faith. People all over the world still like to read his books. Geneva, the diocesan city of Saint Francis, is the home of the Red Cross Society and of many other world-wide organizations.

**The holy hermits.** In the mountains of central Switzerland, near Lake Zurich, is the famous shrine of Einsiedeln. The name almost rhymes with "pine sea dell" and means hermits. It dates back to Saint Meinrad, a Benedictine monk, who lived there all alone in the dark forest more than a thousand years ago, praying and fasting





A farmer of the Swiss Alps catches clear water from the mountain spring. Cattle drink from the stone trough. Stones keep the barn roof from blowing away. Choir boys of Fribourg going to sing Mass. The Abbey church and monastery are a thousand years old.

Cowherds live on the mountains with their cattle all summer. They milk the cows and make cheese of the milk. These men and boys are lunching on bread, cheese, and curdled milk.

and loving God. Ever since, the monks have prayed and offered sacrifice on this spot.

Today, a great Benedictine monastery stands in Einsiedeln; its chapel contains an ancient statue of Our Lady and many proofs of miracles worked there. Piles of crutches can be seen where they were left when cripples went away cured. Crowds of people go to Einsiedeln as pilgrims to confess their sins, to do penance, to beg for favors from God, and to give thanks. Many of the pilgrims are poor, and have saved for a long time to make the trip. Ten thousand people sometimes kneel in the vast church, praying and singing hymns at Mass. The walls of a large side chapel are lined with thirty-four confessionals, and during a pilgrimage all these have lines of penitents.

At times the people of Einsiedeln village present mystery plays on the plaza in front of the monastery. These are plays with a religious meaning. They date from ancient times; in fact, our present-day theater traces its origin in part to the old mystery plays of long ago. When few people knew how to read or write, and before books were printed, the mystery plays were a great means of teaching people the truths of the Faith. Such plays are still very good for the same purpose, raising men's hearts to God. Einsiedeln is one place Catholics always visit when they go to Switzerland.

**Swiss George Washington.** Another famous spot is the little hut of Saint Nicholas of Flue, the "father of his country." He was a hermit living in the mountains not far from Lucerne. Through his help and wise counsel long ago, the different Swiss states were made into one nation. So Switzerland has a saint for its "George Washington."

**Model of democracy.** Switzerland has been a republic for seven hundred years, with a very democratic form of government. It is made up of states called *cantons*. The people meet as often as once a month, in town meetings, to vote on matters of government. They take a great deal of interest in politics. Many Swiss are Catholics; a little more than half of them are Protestants. All live together in peace and govern themselves by sensible, democratic means, giving a good example to the whole world.

In their mountain stronghold the Swiss have been able to keep out of most of Europe's wars. However, they are brave, hardy lovers of liberty, who have fought like tigers when a neighboring country tried to enslave them. The Swiss do not allow

large companies to set up chains of stores in their country. They wish to protect the rights of small shopkeepers, who would be ruined if there were chain stores in all the towns. In this way, they practice democracy in business, as well as in matters of state.

Berne is the capital city of Switzerland, where the president and lawmakers live. The people elect councilors, who make laws and manage the nation's affairs. Some of these councilors are from the German-speaking parts of Switzerland, some from the French, and some from the Italian parts. Every year the councilors appoint a president from among themselves. One year he is from the German districts, the next from the French, and then from the Italian.

113

The citizens of Glarus, a Swiss canton and town, assemble to vote on some matters of public interest. Each man who votes "yes" raises his hand. The Swiss are said to have the purest form of democracy of any country in the world.





In Switzerland, where so many of the world's fine clocks and watches are made, there is also a flower clock in a park in Interlaken. The dial is made by growing small flowering plants. The clock machinery is buried underground in a sealed case to keep out moisture. The clock keeps good time.



The Rector of the University of Fribourg and other professors, some of them priests, walk in the Corpus Christi procession through the city streets. The Rector wears the medal given by Pope Leo XIII.

The Swiss peasants wrest a little more land from the mountain, preparing it for crops. Since it is too steep for implements drawn by animals, they pull the homemade wooden harrow, weighted with a stone.



**Model of scientific farming.** In most countries, including our own, only wage earners in industry are organized into labor unions. However, in parts of Switzerland the farmers, too, have their unions. They do their marketing together through them. Switzerland has little farm land, and much of what she has is very hilly. Yet the Swiss raise much of their own food simply by hard work and intelligent use of their land. They herd cattle on the high Alpine meadows in summer after the snow melts. The herdsmen stay up the mountains with the cattle, caring for them and using the milk to make the famous Swiss cheese.

The Swiss are among the world's leaders in the science of farming and gardening, of improving land and making every inch produce its best. Every Swiss loves and values the soil. A great many of the city dwellers came from large farm families. Even those with city jobs often live in towns or villages, where they have their own neat, bright houses with vegetable gardens and fruit trees.

The Swiss know that land will erode and grow poor if it has no humus. They know that they must return all waste material to the soil to keep it fertile, so they organize ways to save and improve their soil. The people of Berne, for instance, have a fine system for improving land and disposing of garbage. Many cities (American cities, too) waste their garbage by dumping it into seas and rivers, often making the water unsafe for drinking, bathing, and for wild life.

The people of Berne built special silos (large tanks) on a tract of land outside the city. The garbage is put into these silos together with animal wastes, lime, and earth. There it undergoes a fermenting process called "composting." Without odor or nuisance of flies, in two years it forms a rich,

black, spongy fertilizer known as *compost*. By spreading compost thickly over poor sandy soil, barren acres are made into the richest of farm land where food stuffs grow amazingly. All disease germs in the garbage are killed in the composting.

Criminals serving prison sentences are used as laborers in building up the compost and in reclaiming and farming the land. They are not overworked or mistreated. They like their interesting outdoor work so much that they never try to escape, although they are often left alone in the field. When they get out of prison they seldom return to crime; they have learned a better way of life. Thus both land and people are improved by sensible methods.

**Catholic cantons.** Although Switzerland is the home of Calvinism, there are many Catholic sections. Fribourg is one of the Catholic cantons. It has a great state university, which is also a Catholic university, with famous professors, both priests and laymen, lecturing there. People come from all over the world to study at the University of Fribourg.

### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Complete the following sentences using the correct word or words in parentheses.

1. Switzerland lies in the region of the (Pyrenees, Alps, Apennines).
2. Switzerland differs from France and Italy in that it has no (seacoast, rivers, mountains).
3. The religious leader who spread the Protestant religion to many parts of Switzerland was (Martin Luther, King Henry VIII, John Calvin).
4. Switzerland is divided into states called (provinces, cantons, districts).
5. The capital of Switzerland is (Geneva, Zurich, Berne).
6. The Swiss make the most of their electricity by use of (water power, steam power, wind power).
7. The Swiss George Washington was (St.

**Model for industry.** In the Catholic canton of Fribourg, people have been working out a guild system to fit modern conditions. It is somewhat like the system in Portugal. The Swiss are working out their modern guild system slowly, from below, among the workers and employers. In Fribourg, all the managers and men who work at the building trade belong to unions. Together they agree upon just wages, working hours, working conditions, and accident and old age insurance. They decide how and when a worker may be discharged, and ways to turn out good work. They also agree not to strike, but to settle problems by peaceful discussion. Wage earners receive extra money for each child in the family. They deserve it for raising future useful citizens.

This system is spreading slowly throughout Switzerland. When all the industries are organized in the same way, then the people can make it a national system by democratic voting. Two great Popes studied this system in Fribourg before writing encyclicals giving directions to the world on how to conduct modern industry.

Nicholas of Flue, Prince Maurice, St. Columbanus).

8. Swiss farmers fertilize their soil by using (decayed fish, compost, expensive chemicals).
9. Swiss factories manufacture (heavy machinery, fine watches, automobiles).
10. On Swiss mountain farms most of the work is done with the help of (machinery, hand tools, animals).

Give a good reason for each of the following:

1. Thousands of vacationers visit Switzerland each year.
2. The Swiss people do not allow large chain stores to do business in their country.
3. The Swiss do not waste their garbage.
4. Switzerland has little or no trouble with strikes and labor.

**3** Name three saints of Switzerland. Tell something about each. Locate the city or town associated with their life and saintly work.



Locate an important canal in the north of Germany. What two seas does it connect?



Total population of Switzerland 4,547,000. Catholics 1,745,200. What percent is Catholic?



Total population of Germany 65,285,000. Catholics 20,000,000. What percent is Catholic?



**4** Compare the surface of northern and southern Germany. List the products of each area and discuss reasons for the difference.



These countries are not very large in area, but they are important in their culture and in their effect upon the world. Germany is the largest of these central European lands. After World War II, many of its cities are in ruins, and its boundaries are unsettled. Switzerland is called the keystone of Europe. Like the keystone in the center of an arch, Switzerland lies between France, Germany, and Italy; her people speak the languages of these three countries. Belgium, the Netherlands, and Luxembourg are called the "Benelux" countries. They have special agreements among themselves for trade. They have often been overrun and their land destroyed in wars between France and Germany. Switzerland, Germany, and the Benelux countries are thickly settled manufacturing countries; their farmers are among the world's best. Trade, shipping, and fishing are great industries in the Netherlands.





Give some reasons why small farms in Germany, Belgium, and the Netherlands produce so much?

**5** The North German Plain has sandy soil—excellent for growing root crops. Name two root crops raised here and discuss their uses.



What German river is famous in song and story for its sunny vineyards and fine wine?

**6** Make a list of the resources God has given the Germans. Tell something interesting about the many uses they make of lumber.



What did Saint Boniface and his monks do for Germany?

**7** Locate Bonn, Berlin, Cologne, Essen, Hamburg, Bremen, Oberammergau. Tell something interesting about each.

**8** Locate Munich which is situated in a very Catholic part of Germany. Find Mainz and discuss the work of its famous men.

Total population of Benelux countries 17,968,000. Catholics 11,634,000. What percent is Catholic?



Locate Ghent, Belgium's largest seaport. Name its exports.

**9** Make a list of farm products and manufactured articles in Belgium. Describe the flax, linen, and lace industries, and the need of handwork.

**10** Tell something interesting about the following Belgium movements: the Boerenbond, Catholic Action, and foreign mission work.



Tell something about Luxembourg; its history, size, industries, and people.

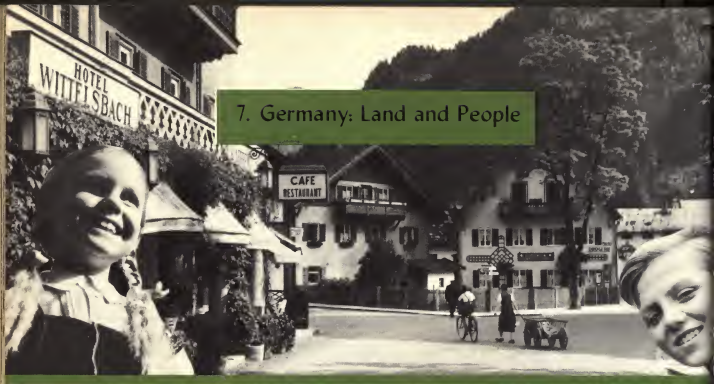


If you visited Switzerland, Germany, and the Benelux countries, what cities would you visit and why?

**11** What does the name Netherlands tell you about that country? List its natural resources, its products, and its important industries.

last  
ent  
e  
e

## 7. Germany: Land and People



Germany is in the heart of central Europe. The northern part of the country lies on the great European plain. The southern part consists of hills and low mountains. Much of this land is too rugged for farming, but the people use every possible foot of it. Where crops will not grow, cattle, sheep, or goats are grazed. Mountain areas have long been kept covered with great forests, skillfully renewed and cared for.

During the great Ice Age the North German Plain was covered with ice. Later the ice melted leaving clay, sand, stones, and swamps. The swamps have been drained in many places so that land may be cultivated. Rye is a very important crop.

Germany has sufficient rain and a growing season long enough for many crops. Summers are warm but winters are cold and snowy, except in the southern land along the Rhine River where the climate is warm most of the year.

Germany has seacoasts on the North Sea and the Baltic Sea, but many good harbors and seaports were severely damaged during World War II. The people have built a net-

The world-famous village of Oberammergau, near Munich in Bavaria, a Catholic section of Germany. More than 300 years ago, the people of the village made a vow to give a play showing Our Lord's passion and death, if their village were spared from the plague then sweeping over Europe. God heard their prayer, and they have kept their vow. Every ten years they give the Passion Play, in an outdoor setting. Thousands of people from all over the world go there to see it.

work of canals, joining the important river waterways furnished by nature. They provide a cheap inland transportation system. Barges and boats carry products through the Kiel Canal from the Baltic Sea to the North Sea, up and down the Weser River, and on the Elbe River into Czechoslovakia.

**German background.** The Germans are a mixture of various ancient tribes. Many of them are closely related to the tall, fair, blue-eyed people of Scandinavia. Their language is not one of the Latin tongues, but is a modern form of the ancient Germanic speech. English, Dutch, and the Scandinavian languages are related to it. Catholic missionaries preached the Faith among the different German tribes in early times, but many of these tribes were wild and warlike.

They murdered the missionaries, and the converts among them drifted back into pagan ways. The Pope finally sent them an Englishman named Boniface. He was a Benedictine monk, a great scholar, and a gentleman. The Pope made him Bishop over miles of bleak, cold marshes and dense forests. This was the home of those sturdy, untamed people who had made martyrs of so many Christians.

Saint Boniface, with his Benedictine monks, brought most of the people to Christ. He started schools and monasteries, built up Christian settlements, and educated young men to be priests. He not only converted the German tribes but united them into one nation. He also set up the Church all over northern France and Belgium. In his old age he journeyed out to convert another pagan tribe in what is now part of the Netherlands. There he found what he had prayed for all his life, a martyr's death. The savage tribesmen fell upon him and his companions with their battle axes, and gave them the short bright road to glory—martyrdom.

The Benedictines who followed Boniface settled in forests and swamps in what is now the Netherlands, Belgium, and northern Germany. They began at once to put up great stone monasteries and to build dikes and ditches to drain the wet land. They never cut down the forests entirely but always left patches of timber standing around their fields. Each abbey stood in the midst of these deep woods. Trees cut for fuel were replaced; wild life was thus preserved, and floods prevented. The monks studied plant life and knew much about scientific farming. They grafted good kinds of forest trees onto wild roots. They selected and kept better kinds for planting. When a Brother went on a journey to other abbeys he took

plants, seeds, slips of trees, as well as perhaps a copy of some fine old book newly copied out by hand on parchment. This was writing material made from the skin of some animal. When he came back, he brought new plants and new books.

Many fertile parts of northern Germany and the lowlands now waving with grain were once terrible bogs where no man lived. Four or five years after the monks settled in such a spot, the swamp had been turned into a meadow. Here, where no one had dared to go, fine herds of sheep and cattle now grazed.

Villages and towns grew up around each abbey. Workers of all kinds came to help the monks, who were always building. Farmers rented the fine farm lands reclaimed by the silent monks. Gradually the country was settled and the people made into civilized Christians. The monks taught all they knew about farming to the people, and the region prospered. Germany, Switzerland, and the lowland countries to this day are among the world's leaders in the best known methods of farming.

**United States of Europe.** It is now a long time since the first Christian Roman Emperor, Constantine, moved his capital to Constantinople on the Bosphorus and took his power and riches to the eastern lands. About the time the work of Christianizing Germany and other sections of northern Europe was well under way, the Pope founded the Roman Empire of the west, with Rome as its capital. He chose a young German king to be its first emperor. This emperor was Charles the Great—Charlemagne. Charles was one of the greatest men of history. He was a Catholic, and he united all Europe in an Empire where Christ was King. The Empire of Charlemagne was a United States of Europe.

After Charles' death his United States of Europe began to separate into different nations, but it was still held together, in some degree, by the Church. Only when much of Europe lost the Faith did the different nations break away entirely. The quarrels and divisions between nations have continued. Charlemagne's grand old cathedral and the remains of his palace still stand in the city of Aachen, (Aix-la-Chapelle). There, according to an old story, the Emperor is buried, sitting erect on a golden throne, in his royal robes and wearing his crown. There has never been a united Europe since his day.

**Europe's wars.** During thousands of years the many peoples of Europe, under their different leaders, have often been at war with one another. The big nations liked to see a "balance of power" in Europe. They did not want any one nation to be too strong, so as to be a danger to the others. Under Napoleon, France conquered much of Europe and caused great misery and suffering, filling vast graveyards with slain soldiers.

Napoleon, like other famous conquerors, would have liked to rule the whole world. Very few men have the strength to resist that temptation if there seems to be a chance to gain it. A man can love power more than gold, family, or friends, more than God and his soul's salvation. It is one of the temptations which the devil offered Christ in the desert. It is perhaps the most terrible of all temptations because power can be used for good or evil; but a man who obtains great power is more than likely to use it for evil. "Power corrupts, and absolute power corrupts absolutely."

**World War I.** England had now become one of the great powers in the world, with a mighty empire and much wealth. Ger-

many, in turn, jealous of the "balance of power" which England had won, made war against England and other countries of Europe. Thus World War I began.

Our own United States of America for the first time joined in a European war and helped defeat Germany. The winning nations, still full of jealousy and fear, made new treaties and set new boundaries to European nations. They divided up Germany's colonies among themselves, and settled down again. The people of Germany were left poor and in confusion. Thousands of their men had died in the war. But those who returned, with the help of the women and children, were soon building up their industries and producing crops again on their neat farms.

**Home life.** Life in Germany can be very pleasant, for German families have a beautiful home life. Mothers love to cook, and housekeeping is a fine art. Nearly everybody sings or plays some musical instrument. Families, students, people eating in cafés, all like to sing together. There are dances and family parties and picnics in the beautiful green countryside. In great sections of Germany nearly everybody is Catholic. Families attend Mass in the beautiful old cathedrals. Father, mother and children say prayers together in the home. People meeting a friend, say "Praise God" or "Praised be Jesus Christ" instead of "hello." The German Catholics led lives of piety, but they had for many years neglected to bring the Faith and its teachings into public life, to spread it to others, and to make it a living force in business and in the nation.

➤ **Hitler and World War II.** The German people were too busy to bother much about politics or government. They liked law and order, and they readily obeyed their rulers.

They were not used to democracy. They paid little heed at first when a man named Hitler came into power in the government. The radio was a recent invention and now nearly everybody had one. Hitler spoke over the radio and people listened. He was a powerful speaker, and he promised fine things. He even did some good things to make Germany a prosperous nation again after the disorder left by World War I.

When an election was held, most of the people voted for Hitler, thinking he was a good man. Gradually they found out that he was dangerous, that he was ruling Germany by gangster methods, and that there was no way to get rid of him. He organized nation-wide gangs of strong-arm men and a powerful secret police. He had spies everywhere. Hitler's followers were called "Nazis," from their title of National Socialists. They took over the schools and taught the children to tell on parents who spoke against Hitler.

Hitler had one big idea that he was working out. He had noticed that some people in the modern world owned factories, some owned banks, railroads, and big business. Often these people were very rich and lived in luxury. He also saw that more and more millions of people every year merely worked for wages and owned nothing but their labor.

The great division between rich and poor had been getting worse since steam and electricity, factories and machinery began to be used. However, this was not the fault of machines or steam power. It was the fault of selfish men. Too many had forgotten to live as Christians and had no rule of charity to guide them in business matters.

Hitler's big idea was this: German people, he said, are very hard working, with clever hands and good minds for art,

science, and invention. Hitler felt that the Germans should be the master people of the world, a race of super men, a pure white race, better than all other people. They should be the owners of property. Let all other races be their servants, said he, and do the work in the factories and mines.

Many Protestants as well as Catholic leaders refused to agree to such stupid teaching. Hitler made life very hard for them, killing or imprisoning many. Hitler persecuted the Jews, whom he called foreigners. Hitler's agents killed nearly six million Jews and took their great wealth. Those who fled the country had to get away secretly and were not allowed to draw their money from the banks.

The world stood aghast at the horrors of a whole nation ruled by murderers and robbers. Inside Germany the people lived in fear. Hitler soon started a terrible war, and our own country joined in against him. Germany lost. German cities were left in ruins. Hitler and many of his followers were gone, and Germany was divided into four zones of occupations. The British, French, Russians, and Americans were each given a zone to look after.

#### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Answer each of the following questions in a complete sentence or short paragraph.

1. What provides cheap inland transportation throughout much of Germany?
2. What did the German people do to increase the amount of farm land in their country?
3. Why is the climate of most of Germany good for agriculture?
4. Who converted the German tribes and united them into one nation?
5. What was the name of the emperor who united much of Europe into a Roman Empire?
6. What four countries occupied Germany after World War II?



**Toward democracy.** The German people were left in want again after the horrors of war, and Americans brought them food, clothing, and coal, often by airplane. Our soldiers gave candy to German children, and many married German girls. We started "New England Town Meetings" in German towns to bring back democratic ways. Under American leadership German people met to make rules and to run their affairs, speaking freely and openly without fear. It was a fine, new feeling to the Germans, who had lived in terror for so many years.

A good democratic government came into power and started to build up a new German Republic, with the capital at Bonn. Americans, French, and British gradually left the Germans to rule themselves. But the Russian or eastern part of Germany was not allowed to be free. It was in the hands of a group of men more cruel and savage than Hitler's police had ever been—the Communists.

**Out of Germany, books.** In western Germany, where the Main River flows into the Rhine, stands the ancient city of Mainz. During many years a man named Johann Gutenberg lived and labored here. He invented mysterious machines that did not always work right at first and had to be thought over and improved. He paid goldsmiths to make funny, little chunks of metal with letters on one side—upside down, backward letters like those seen in a mirror. Gutenberg spent his fortune on "foolish" experiments and could not pay his debts. He lost his shop to others, but started up again in another little shop.

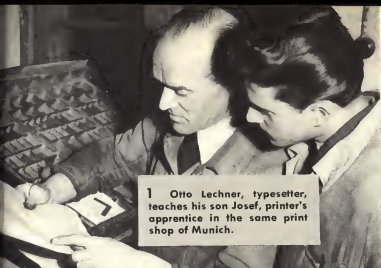
He had plenty of troubles, but before he died he saw his inventions working. He had made a printing press with movable type, and was printing books. While he was experimenting with inks and type and

presses and paper—during these years, across the Alps in Italy a little boy named Christopher Columbus was growing up. The world had two big surprises—printing and the discovery of America—in the same century. They affect the life of every one of us today.

One of the first books Gutenberg printed was the Bible. Textbooks came next, but they were still large and somewhat expensive. Soon the Italians learned the art and started printing shops in the rich city of Venice. There for the first time, small, neat textbooks were made, strongly bound in leather, of a size that could fit in the pocket. They were sold at a price that would be equal to half a dollar each in our money.

Christian Europe at this time had many great universities where famous professors lectured and taught. Scholars went from one to the other, taking courses. There was no language problem, for Christendom had its own language of learning—Latin. A scholar could pack dozens of textbooks—Latin grammars, poetry, the learning of Greece and Rome—on a donkey's back or on his own, and go his merry way. Good books were cheap and plentiful.

Johann Gutenberg, with his little hand-operated wooden press, would be surprised if he could see our great electric-powered presses making books and newspapers by the truckload. He would not know his invention if he saw one today. He would wonder why anyone took the trouble to turn out much of this modern printed matter at all, so worthless and bad it is. But, on the other hand, he would be happy to see the things of which he dreamed—holy books, textbooks, good and useful books—plentiful, easy to get, easy to handle and to read. Gutenberg and Columbus—each started something bigger than he knew.



1 Otto Lechner, typesetter, teaches his son Josef, printer's apprentice in the same print shop of Munich.



2 He takes type from case—a wooden frame with sections, each containing many small metal blocks with a letter on one side. He selects type to make the words he wants and places them in the "composing stick," which holds lines of type.

## A Modern Printer of Munich



3 In mid-morning Josef brings breakfast to his father. Germans have only rolls and coffee soon after rising; eat real breakfast about 10 A.M.



4 Lechner places the lines of type in a frame called a galley; ties cord around edges to hold type in place.



5 He runs the galley through a small "proof press." A roller puts ink on the type, which is then pressed against a sheet of paper. The printed sheet is called a proof. Lechner reads the proof, to see whether he has made any mistakes in setting the type. He may make corrections, then send the galleys out to be run on a large press. After the day's work, he and Josef are at home for dinner.





**6** Rolls and pretzels, sausages and beer make up the meal. Then comes a happy musical evening with guitar and zither. The Lechner home is small—only one and a half rooms—but it is clean and orderly, with beautiful furniture, chinaware, and hand embroidered linens, all in good taste.



**7** After Mass on Sunday at the beautiful Cathedral of Our Lady, the family pays a visit to the famous German Museum. Josef makes an experiment in the Museum's electrical section. Monday, daughter Inge is back in school. It is a public school where religion is taught in special classes for Catholics.



**8** Mrs. Lechner does the family shopping at the corner grocery. Otto and son are back at work again. Mr. Ludwig Bickel, owner of the shop, stops to chat. There are twenty employees, most of them having worked there for many years. Shop includes typesetting, printing, and bookbinding.



### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Complete each of the following statements by filling in the correct word or words in each blank space.

1. The capital of the new Republic of Western Germany is located at \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The first printing press was built in Germany by \_\_\_\_\_.
3. One of the first books printed on this press was \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The first printing press was built at about the time \_\_\_\_\_ was discovered.
5. The eastern part of Germany is under the control of \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The control of the rest of Germany is in the hands of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_.

**Bishop of Mainz.** Mainz has had another famous citizen in more modern times. William von Ketteler was Bishop of Mainz when factories and mines were fast-growing industries and poorly paid workers were crowding the great cities. He was the friend of the poor, the suffering, and the working-man. He lived before the time of Leo Harmel of France, and before the great pope of the labor reforms, Leo XIII. The Bishop of Mainz wrote and preached, showing workers how to unite and provide better living conditions for their families. He taught the employers to share their wealth with their workers, to grant them shorter working hours and Sunday rest. He spent his life battling for his people, and even to this day mothers and daughters of Mainz put fresh flowers on his tomb. Pope Leo XIII studied the work of Bishop von Ketteler and greatly admired him.

**Land use in Germany.** Much German farm land is used to raise grain. Cool climate grains grow in the north, and those suited to warmer regions in the south. Most German families use the dark brown bread, made from rye, barley, or the whole wheat grain without bleaching it to make it white. They know well that it is much better food

than white bread. When other foods were lacking during the war years, the people who could get enough "black" bread stayed strong. Barley and hops are used to make beer, a healthful everyday drink for the Germans, who take it moderately.

The sandy soil of the North German Plain is good for growing potatoes and other root crops. Root crops do not grow well in hard soil. The roots cannot spread; they grow crooked and never develop. However, in loose, sandy soil, when the farmer adds humus (decayed plants and animal wastes) to furnish plant food, the root crops grow enormously and yield a rich harvest. The Germans eat potatoes, feed them to hogs and cows, and sell them to factories for use in making alcohol.

Sugar beets, another root crop, make plenty of work for the farmer and his family. The beet field must be plowed, harrowed, planted, hoed, and weeded; and the beets must be thinned as they come up in bunches. In autumn the beets are dug and hauled to the sugar factory. The beets are then crushed, and the juice boiled down into sugar. The pulp and the beet tops are fed to animals. Most German farmers keep some animals and poultry, important parts of a well-balanced farm. Experts, like our county agents, go about showing the farmers how to solve their problems.

Farms are small but very productive, and the land is improved from year to year. The Germans put every acre to good use, but even so they are not able to produce enough food for their great population. The whole family helps with the farm work and much work is done with small tools. Sometimes a group buys a tractor or reaper, several families owning and using it together. So many men were killed in the war that some areas are short of labor and



## The Gift of Music

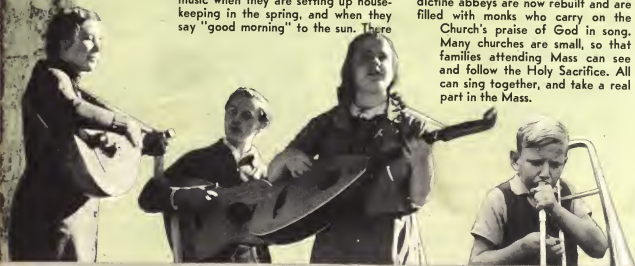
For years Italians and Germans were rivals, trying to see who could produce the better operas. When a German named Wagner wrote a new kind of opera, at first nobody in Germany would try it. But when the Italians heard his works they said, "Here is great music." They produced his operas with Italian singers, and even brought them to America. The musician belongs to more than one country: he belongs to all nations. Yet each nation has its own kind of music. German music is more likely to be sad, and Italian music joyous. Wagner's operas made the music of the orchestra more important than the singing. In the Italian operas the singers are more important; the orchestra merely helps out.

The whole earth is full of music: the winds make it, and so do the rustling leaves and the falling rain, the rushing rivers and the ocean tides. Birds make music when they are setting up house-keeping in the spring, and when they say "good morning" to the sun. There

have been some few people—saints at prayer, shepherds on a hillside long ago—who, happening to be around when the door of heaven stood ajar for a moment, heard bursts of glorious song from within. The Church's own music, called Gregorian, is peaceful and heavenly, and its words are prayers. It was composed in the Church throughout many ages and is still the noblest of all music.

In every age and among every people there have been musicians and singers. But God has given the gift of song to some nations more than to others. The Germans and the Italians are two of these blessed people. The gift of music makes its owners happy and, when it is used for God, can help to save their souls.

There is a movement among German Catholics to bring the people closer to the music of the Church. Ancient Benedictine abbeys are now rebuilt and are filled with monks who carry on the Church's praise of God in song. Many churches are small, so that families attending Mass can see and follow the Holy Sacrifice. All can sing together, and take a real part in the Mass.



American machinery has been brought in to work the land.

**Use of resources.** The Germans were among the first people to practice "scientific" forestry. Hilly, rocky land, unfit for other crops, is kept in forests, well-cared for and renewed. Firewood, fenceposts, railroad ties, lumber, and pulpwood as well as Christmas trees are harvested from these

forests. In southern Germany many farmers and village people spend the winter making wooden toys at home. There are factories where toys, music boxes, and clocks are turned out. These products are sold in other countries as well as in Germany. Grape culture is an old art on the sunny hillsides of the Rhine Valley, and Rhine wines are famous everywhere.



**An industrial nation.** During the last hundred years the German people have grown too numerous for their small country. Many thousands have migrated to America and other lands. Thousands have turned to manufacturing in great industrial cities. Mining, trading, and shipping have grown up. Some of the world's famous scientists and inventors are Germans. Scientists and medical men from all over the world go to Germany to study. German scientists have found many ways of using coal tar. The tar is left when coke is made by roasting coal. The coke is used in steel mills. The coal tar is made into a great many products, including artificial rubber, plastics, and dyes. German dyes are famous everywhere. Germans have made great use of resources.

**A few cities.** Bonn, the capital city of western Germany, is built on the bank of the Rhine River near Cologne. It has beautiful old buildings and a famous university. It is a center of education as well as of manufacturing and trade. Beethoven, famous musician and composer, was born here.

The largest city in the Ruhr section of Germany is Essen. The Ruhr River is a

small tributary of the Rhine. In its valley was located much of the great iron and steel industry of Germany. Essen and the other smaller cities of the Ruhr were famous for such iron and steel products as rails, steam engines, steel plate, machinery, and tools.

In the Rhine valley is the large industrial city of Cologne where chemicals and textiles were manufactured. The city was an important railroad center and a busy river port.

These cities, as well as many other German manufacturing centers were badly bombed out in the second world war and are gradually building up their industries again. Before the war, Hamburg was the greatest commercial seaport in Europe, with numerous factories and a great shipping business. Bremen, a neighboring seaport, has long been a port of emigration.

Berlin was the capital of Germany before World War II and one of the great cities of the world. Today many of its buildings lie in ruins and it will be many years before Berlin again builds up to its former greatness. The city is now divided into two zones: one is controlled by the United States, Britain, and France, and the other by Russia.

### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Complete each of the following sentences by choosing the correct ending.

1. Root crops grow well on the North German Plain because the soil is

sandy      clayey      muddy

2. Most Germans use bread made from wheat flour      corn flour      rye flour

3. In Germany much alcohol is made from sugar beets      potatoes      wood pulp

4. The German people use barley and hops to make

bread      beer      fertilizer

5. The growing of grapes is an important industry in the

Rhine Valley      Black Forest      North Sea lowland

6. German dyes are made largely from plants      insects      coal tar

7. Germany's great seaport on the North Sea is

Berlin      Hamburg      Cologne

8. Coke made by roasting soft coal is used in Germany to make

steel      wooden toys      fertilizers

9. A large German industrial city located on the Rhine River is

Berlin      Hamburg      Cologne

10. The greatest iron and steel center in the Ruhr Valley is

Essen      Hamburg      Berlin

## 8. The People of the Benelux Countries

### Living in Belgium

Belgium, the Netherlands, and Luxembourg make up what is known as the Benelux countries. Belgium is the most thickly settled country in Europe. It is so small that a motorist cannot drive straight ahead in Belgium more than three or four hours without coming to another country or to sea water. Its little farms, like small garden plots, provide enormous crops; and its factories turn out millions of dollars worth of products every year. Belgium is a kingdom, and a very democratic nation. Its citizens settle their affairs by peaceful voting. This country is called the workshop of Europe.

From the air much of Belgium looks like a very neat crossword puzzle, perfectly flat, with tidy, green squares arranged in beautiful order. These squares are really sugar beet fields of deep green, many fields of sky-blue blossoming flax, and, other crops.

The country is crossed by a network of canals, which the people have wisely constructed. They furnish cheap and easy transportation for large amounts of freight. Fast freight travels by motor boat between the capital and other towns. Seagoing vessels may be loaded at Brussels. Canals connect with the Rhine River, and huge barges travel to Germany and Switzerland.

Belgium is a land of intensive cultivation. That is, every foot of soil is made to produce all it can. The country has a long growing season, and winds from the ocean bring plenty of rain for crops. Most farms are small. They are owned by the farmers who work them skillfully by hand with small implements. The soil is kept at a high degree of fertility, and handed down from father to son in better condition each time.

Farming practice is well balanced, with hogs, cows, and chickens, as well as patches of vegetables and grain.

**Belgium and its people.** Julius Caesar, Roman conqueror, wrote many books about his wars. He said that of all the tribes he conquered the Belgians were the bravest. Belgium was a Roman colony for five hundred years. After that the country was divided up and parceled out to nobles, and to different countries and emperors for hundreds of years. It has been occupied by armies at various times in its history. Yet the brave and sturdy Belgian people have remained strong and still make their character and power felt in the world.

In Flanders the blue-eyed, flaxen-haired people are known as Flemings. Their language is Flemish, closely related to German. In the other half of Belgium, the people—called Walloons—are darker, more nearly related to the ancient Roman people. The Belgians, like the Scots and the Irish, are also descended from the Celts. Belgian children learn Flemish as well as French in school. In Belgium the two races mingle and combine in a great people. The Belgians have lived together in their country for over a thousand years. Many Americans have Belgian ancestors, especially people in the Middle Atlantic States.

Belgium is a very old Catholic country with an old Catholic culture. However, there are some non-Catholics in Belgium, and they are free to go about, build churches, worship, and teach as they please. The government pays the salaries of Protestant and Jewish clergymen, as well as those of Catholic priests. This is a country where great cathedrals were built, and the guilds once flourished. Here saints have

walked and, for centuries, its people held fast to their Catholic Faith. Missionary priests and Sisters have gone out from Belgium to all parts of the earth. They are some of the world's best missionaries. With holiness, hard work, and solid common sense they have changed whole sections of pagan lands into thriving Catholic settlements.

**Guilds then and now.** In Brussels, there are many famous, old guildhalls, hundreds of years old, still in use and very grand. By the end of the Middle Ages the guilds were widespread, all over Christendom. Among the sensible and pious Belgians they were especially successful. The church of Notre Dame in Brussels was built by the guilds. Around the city square, stand the statues of men, each carrying a sign of one of the guilds: one figure has a hammer, one an ax, one a butcher's cleaver, one a baker's kneading board. The cloth merchants, the printers, the bakers, the brewers, and many others built their guildhalls in Brussels.

The members of each Guild had parties and picnics together. They built fine Guild halls where meetings for business and pleasure were held. When a member was sick, the Guild members provided money to help him, and visited him in his illness. When a member was old and unable to work, he received an old age pension. When he died, the Guild took care of his widow and children.

When much of Europe fell away from the Church, the guilds could no longer keep up. Belgians never fell away from the Church during the "reformation" and the wars which followed. They still keep some of the old guilds, and they keep the spirit of the guild system, using it in modern ways, with modern business. In this way they follow the lead of the great popes, Leo XIII and those after him, who spoke out on be-

half of the working man, and asked people to return to the spirit of the guilds.

**Modern system.** Belgian workers receive good wages. They also receive extra money for each child in the family, as well as visiting nurse care free of charge. Workers and their families belong to guilds which provide free medicine and hospital care, and pay doctor's fees. Factory workers receive unemployment pay as long as they are out of a job, and government officers find new jobs for them free of charge. Old people, no longer able to work, receive pensions to live on, as also do widows with children. Workers get vacations with pay every year.

**Catholic Action.** That great modern movement in the Church, Catholic Action, was started by the Holy Father in Rome when he called on the men and women, boys and girls of the world to help the priests and bishops in spreading the Kingdom of Christ.

It was in Belgium that the young people, workers, and students put Catholic Action into practice with such success that people came from all over the world to see how it worked. The young Catholic workers and students of Belgium, under the direction of their bishops, formed into hundreds of little groups studying how to put Christ into everyday living. They set up schools for grownups to study the Church's teaching on labor, wages, and the problems of the poor. They spoke out through motion pictures, radio, newspapers, and magazines. They gave people the Church's teaching—what Christ would say about our modern life, work, our ways, our industry, and our society, if He walked among us once again. Among the Belgians, with their hard common sense and their stubborn, religious spirit, Catholic Action has been an example to the whole world.

## THE FARMER IN FLANDERS

Joseph de Herdt and his family live in Flanders. His acres are few, but they produce enormous crops under his skillful care. His house has electric lights and radio, and is always kept clean and shining. Joseph's wife and children help look after the cow, pigs, and chickens; they also can fruit and vegetables for winter. The family have a greenhouse where they raise fruit, tomatoes, and melons for sale in winter. Joseph de Herdt belongs to the Boerenbond, a great Belgian co-operative which the Catholic peasants have organized. The Boerenbond is a guild of farmers. Through it they have set up co-operative stores where they buy their supplies; through it they market their dairy products. Farm animals are insured against death by disease. Through the Boerenbond, farmers can borrow money at low interest rates. There are fine schools of agriculture in Belgium, and many farm boys attend them.



The farmer's son has a birthday party.



Spring sowing is done by hand.



At noon the farmer rests awhile.



The farmer's main crop is flax.



Pulling and stacking the flax by hand is hard work.

The farmers watch the growing flax carefully. They pull out all weeds, creeping on hands and knees. The plants grow tall and put out sky-blue blossoms, then form seeds and turn yellow. The stems must be as long as possible, so the flax is pulled, not cut. It is stacked and left to dry until next spring. Then the seeds are combed off, and the stems put into crates and sunk under water until the stiff bark decays. Again it is stacked to dry, then run between rollers to remove bark from the long, tough fibers. These tan-colored fibers are spun into thread and woven into linen cloth. Since hand labor is needed to pull the stalks and process them, most of the world's fine linen is made in European countries where farmers raise things by hand. Though flax grows well in America, we raise, cut, and thresh it by machinery. We use only the seed and throw away the linen fiber.



The farmer's daughter learns to make lace. Each girl has a pillow with a lace pattern and same pins and linen thread wound on spools called babbins. She starts with simple lace and a few babbins.



The lace is made by crossing the babbins, twisting the thread, and pinning it down to the pillow. As the lacemaker grows more skilled, she can use many babbins, even up to a thousand.



A wedding veil, made by grandmother's skillful hands.



The farmer takes part in a procession on a holiday.



Holidays may be spent at the seashore.



Some of the family goes boating on the canal.

Much farm work is done by hand, because the farms are small and the families large. However, Belgian farming is scientific and up-to-the-minute. Many factory workers live on little farms, ride to work daily on the train, and care for their crops in the evening and on holidays.



## PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Answer each of the following sentences in a complete sentence or a short paragraph.

1. How does Belgium compare with the other countries of Europe in size and population?
2. Of what importance are Belgium's many canals?
3. What farm crop is used in Belgium's linen-making industry?
4. How do the Flemish people of Belgium differ from the Walloons?
5. Why is most of the work done by hand on a Belgium farm?
6. What is the Boerenbond and how does it help Belgian farmers?

**Linen and lace.** Hundreds of years before the time of Christ, much of the land which we now call Belgium was covered with flax fields and hundreds of people worked at spinning and weaving fine white linen. Ancient Saxon people who migrated from the Black Sea to the Baltic and then westward, probably brought the linen industry to Belgium. These same migrating tribes discovered Ireland in early times, and took their seeds and their skills with them.

In northern Belgium (Flanders) linen-making is a big industry. The waters of the Lys River are just right for processing flax.

The making of lace from the fine strong linen thread started in Flanders, in the city of Bruges. Italians and French soon learned how to make it and invented styles of their own. Both men and women used to wear lace collars and cuffs. Lace, of a kind, is now made by modern machinery, but such cheap imitations can never look or wear like beautiful handmade lace. Belgians still lead in this fine handicraft. It is a good cottage industry, one that helps housewives, grandmothers, and young girls to earn a bit of extra money without leaving the home or breaking up the family. All over

Belgium old ladies in white caps sit in the sunshine, gossiping while their skilled fingers work with bobbins and filmy linen threads.

**Cities of Belgium.** Brussels, the capital, has beautiful buildings, parks, and boulevards. It is connected with all parts of the country by railroads and highways.

Flemish cities have fine old buildings and beautiful churches. There are good bathing beaches and pleasure resorts along the coast.

Bruges (bridges) takes its name from its many bridges. It is one of the most beautiful and interesting of old towns. Many of its streets are canals and a large number of waterways connect it with Ghent and other cities. It was once a great seaport, humming with commerce and shipping, but the Zwyn River on which it was built gradually filled with silt. By the year Columbus discovered America, the harbor had grown too shallow for ships. The busy seaport turned into a quiet inland city. It is now connected with the sea by a canal.

The village of Rupelmonde was the birthplace of Gerardus Mercator, who became famous for making maps. He was born shortly after the discovery of America, when the world was being explored and geography was growing to be more and more of a great adventure.

Antwerp, a great seaport for centuries, has long been a city of thriving trade and wealth. Some of the world's famous artists painted pictures for the rich merchants and noblemen who lived there. Beautiful churches as well as art galleries are full of priceless works of art.

Today many citizens of Antwerp gain wealth in the business of cutting and polishing diamonds. Thousands of hands are kept busy at this highly skilled trade. The gray,

dull pebbles come to Antwerp from Africa. In the workshops they are cut in two by an artisan with a power-driven copper band smeared with oil and diamond dust. Then the workman, using a revolving disk also covered with oil and diamond dust, grinds the dull little pebble until it glows and glitters from its polished surface. Then it is ready to be set in a gold or platinum jewelry piece, and placed in the jeweler's window. Not all diamonds are used as ornaments. Many of them, not being perfect or showy, are used in grinding machinery, watches, and the like, where a very hard material is needed.

Antwerp has beautiful streets with painted pictures of Our Lady at street corners and flowers growing everywhere, in boxes, even high on the electric light poles. The people love beauty and order.

Louvain, very near Brussels, is a quiet city with fine old pink-brick dwellings. The famous University of Louvain is one of the world's greatest centers of learning. This Catholic university was founded seventy years before Columbus set sail for America. Some of the most renowned scholars of history have studied and taught there. People from all over the world still go there for study. Its great library is the gift of America to Belgium, after the university library was destroyed in World War I.

Ghent is a bustling, up-to-date city. Modern business is carried on in buildings that were put up before America was discovered. The Belgians like good food and plenty of it. The markets bulge with fine meats, fish, oysters, butter, cheese, wine, and bakery goods. In this city stands the ancient castle of the Counts of Flanders, with towers, moats, walls, and battlements eight hundred years old. Ghent, Belgium's largest seaport, is built inland where the Lys and

Schelde rivers join. The city has miles of busy wharves with many shipping lines. The ships reach the ocean by way of the ship canal. Thousands work in the spinning mills and the flower seed and bulb industry.

Belgium's "Black Country" (around Charleroi and Liège) is full of the buzz and clank of factory machinery, of tall black slag heaps, smoke stacks, and dump cars. It is a country of steel and coal, where miners with blackened faces come and go. Liège is a city of mills, smelters, and factories.

**Some interesting things about the Belgians.** Long avenues of slim, straight poplar trees line the Belgian highways. In Flanders the blue "bachelor buttons" and red poppies bloom in the fields of grain. Many thousands of American soldiers, killed in the great world wars, lie buried in Flanders fields. Belgians are thankful to America for helping them free their little country from foreign armies; Belgians, like Americans, love liberty. The two countries are good friends. The Belgians do not hold grudges against their old enemies. They soon forgot the wars and began to build up, to make a better future for their children.

Some Belgian peasants arrange marriages for their daughters, but in most cases the young people make their own choice. Often dancing parties and picnics are held where young people of a village and farming section may meet.

The Belgian people are hard working and industrious, but they also love fun and parties, music, and dancing. They love cleanliness, too. Canal boats and farmhouses, clothing and floors, household articles and children's faces, all are scrubbed until they shine.

Many famous artists were Belgians and some of the most beautiful old cathedrals stand in Belgian cities.

**Singing bells.** In Belgium and the Netherlands stand the famous "singing towers." Over the flat countryside, as far as eye can see, lie cities, towns and villages, separated by green fields. Every cluster of buildings has its tall spire filled with bells. Churches, palaces, and public buildings have them. Simple tunes, to mark the hours, are played by clock-like machinery. At certain times, usually in the evening, a player sits at a keyboard, something like that of an organ, and gives a concert of beautiful music. Each key is connected with one of the bells that hang in the tower. The bells are of all sizes and are tuned exactly to the musical scale; the low tones are given out by the big bells, the high notes by the smaller ones. When the bells play, everybody in the city is quiet, from the passengers on the street cars to the children in the houses.

Wherever there is a singing tower, its bells belong to the city, and the tower is kept in repair by city authority. The city also pays the salary of the musician who

plays the bells. *Carillons*, as the bells in these towers are called, were first made in these countries some four hundred years ago and have since been sent to many other lands. The first good one in the United States was hung in the Portuguese fishermen's church of Our Lady of Good Voyage, in Gloucester, Massachusetts. The making of these bells is a great art, for they must have a sweet tone and must be tuned as perfectly as a piano. Once a bell is made, it stays in tune always.

The bells ring out for victories and for peace; they toll for defeat, for fires, and disorders. In Ghent is the great bell called Roland (the old bells have names). It rang out through the centuries whenever enemies tried to overcome the citizens and take away their loved liberty. Roland has called men to battle and to church; to rise up against tyrants, who oppressed the people with heavy taxes; to stop work to say the Angelus three times each day; to follow the dead to their burial.

#### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Complete the following statements by filling in each blank space with the correct word or words.

1. The languages spoken in Belgium are \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Most Belgian workers are organized into groups called \_\_\_\_\_.
3. In Belgian homes linen thread is woven into fine \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The cutting and polishing of diamonds is an important industry in the Belgian city of \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The capital city of Belgium is \_\_\_\_\_.
6. A great old Catholic university is in the Belgian city of \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Most of the diamonds cut and polished in Belgium come from the continent of \_\_\_\_\_.

8. In some countries of the world flax is not grown for fiber but for \_\_\_\_\_.

9. Belgium's most important seaport is \_\_\_\_\_.

10. The mining of \_\_\_\_\_ is an important industry in Belgium's "Black Country."

11. The northern part of Belgium is called \_\_\_\_\_.

Give a reason for each of the following statements.

1. Much hand labor is used to grow flax in Belgium.
2. Land is very valuable in Belgium.
3. Belgium has a good location for trade.

## Living in the Netherlands



The kingdom of the Netherlands (sometimes called Holland) lies on the central plain of Europe. The name of the country means lowlands. Much of its land is a low plain made of silt left by the Rhine and other rivers. About half of the land is below sea level. The people are known as the Dutch, and the Dutch language is closely related to German. For hundreds of years the industrious Dutch have continued the work started by the monks, making farms out of land that once lay under shallow sea water. They have built dikes, dug canals, and set up windmills to pump out the water. Once the salt is washed out of the reclaimed land it is fertile, making especially good pasture. These reclaimed fields are called *polders*.

The Zuider Zee, an inlet of the North Sea, is the latest to be drained, adding thousands of acres to the farmland of the Netherlands. Only a fresh water lake called Lake Ysel remains of the old Zuider Zee.

Today, gasoline engines and electric motors, as well as windmills, are used to pump out the water. Pumping goes on all the time as rain water collects on the low-lying ground. The dikes are continually inspected and kept in repair. The Dutch, however, have sometimes cut their dikes and let the sea water in to prevent an enemy army from crossing the country. This was effective before the days of air invasion.

**A crowded country.** In the home land, even though more land is always being reclaimed from the sea, there are not enough farms for all. Many Dutch families emigrate to the United States and other New World countries. They make fine, hard working, law-abiding citizens wherever they go. The Netherlands is a thickly settled country. Thousands of men and women work in the industries of clean, bright cities. Ships are built in the great shipyards of the

seaport towns. The men of Holland are great sailors and fishermen.

It was a Dutch ship, the *Half Moon*, that first sailed up the Hudson River in North America. It was the Dutch who settled the colony of New Amsterdam, now New York. Today, many Dutch are employed in shipping, and Dutch ships are seen in all the world's ports. Holland itself is covered with waterways used for shipping.

Amsterdam, the capital and largest city, is on the North Sea Ship Canal and is a great seaport. It is a city of canals and bridges, and small boats carry products to and from the city. Diamonds, brought in from Africa, are cut and polished in Amsterdam, giving employment to many people.

Rotterdam, on one of the mouths of the Rhine, is the chief seaport and an ocean gateway from the Rhine Valley. It has a great many factories. Barges carry goods to and from Germany.

At Delft is the center of the ancient pot-

tery industry, where for generations potters have made the stout brown dishes known in other countries as delftware. Even the deep, sky-blue color used in some of the glazes has given us the name of delft blue.

**Some interesting things about the Dutch.** Cows gaze over the flat fields of Holland. The canned milk, milk chocolate, and cheese industries support many Hollanders and feed many people of other nations throughout the world.

The Dutch are expert in horticulture and specialize in the raising of tulips, hyacinths, narcissus, and other bulbs. The bulb growers breed plants with new colors and shapes. In springtime the bulb fields are vast carpets of rainbow colors, filled with fragrant blossoms. The onion-shaped roots are dug up in midsummer, dried and sorted, and sold to buyers all over the world.

The Netherlands is a democratic country where people propose and make their own laws. The Queen, the head of the government, gives the people an example of good family life and simple living. The little princesses go to school like everyone else and do not put on airs. The royal family lives in The Hague, a beautiful old city. Here is the majestic Peace Palace where the U. N. World Court holds its meetings.

Bicycle riding is very popular in the Netherlands as well as in many other small European countries. City streets are full of bicycle riders going to or from school, work, or vacation. Even the Queen of Holland often followed this wholesome and inexpensive hobby.

The Dutch once governed a great colon-

A young Hollander watches fishing vessels in the harbor at Volendam, Holland. Many Dutch people, with little land to live on in their small, crowded country, make a living by sailing, shipping, and fishing in the fertile seas which lie around them.





ial empire in the East Indies and did a very fine job of educating and civilizing the natives. They have now agreed that those colonies should have their independence and self-government. Surinam, in South America, and Curaçao, along with near by islands in the West Indies, are Dutch colonies. The Dutch are known as just and kind rulers.

Holland has had many great scientists and scholars, writers and famous painters. The author of the *Imitation of Christ* was a native of these low countries. His little book, after many centuries, still gives joy and consolation to thousands. No matter when or where a reader opens the pages, what he reads, always has a special meaning for him at that time.

Through the centuries the Netherlands has had its good Catholics and its saints. There are many Catholics today in the Netherlands, although it has been a Protestant nation for hundreds of years. The Dutch Catholics are very energetic and wide-awake, with fine Catholic daily newspapers and Catholic societies. The worldwide movement called the Grail started in the Netherlands. The Grail ladies prepare young women for marriage. Each girl learns to be a good wife who will love and honor her husband, raise her children in wisdom, and reign as a queen over a happy home.

### Living in Luxembourg

Luxembourg is an interesting and beautiful country, smaller than our little state of Rhode Island. The people speak both German and French. They are nearly all Catholics. The country is a Grand Duchy; that is, its ruler is always a grand duke or a grand duchess. It is a democratic country where everybody may vote and the people make their own laws. Most of the land is divided up into small farms, owned by the



Many good Dutch cheeses are loaded onto barges in the canal at Alkmaar. Some of them may come to America.

families who cultivate them. The farms lie in the fertile river valleys and on the rolling plateau lands of the south. In the northern part of the country, full of rugged hills and steep, narrow valleys, the rich iron ore deposits of France continue over into Luxembourg. Here the output of iron and steel is enormous. Thousands of Luxembourgers are employed in these industries, which bring much wealth to the little country.

Many Luxembourgers have come to America to live. They make fine, useful citizens, and they are usually good Catholics.

### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Answer each of the following questions in a good sentence.

1. What are the names of the "Benelux" countries?
2. What does the name "Netherlands" mean?
3. What are polders?
4. Of what importance was the draining of the Zuider Zee?
5. Why has Amsterdam become Netherlands' most important city?
6. Why is Rotterdam well located for carrying on trade?
7. What special plant do the Dutch grow?
8. Why have many Dutch people turned to shipping and fishing to make a living?
9. What mineral has brought much wealth to the little country of Luxembourg?

## 9. The People of Scandinavia

Scandinavia is where the ancient Norsemen lived, where their descendants live today, and where the Scandinavian languages are spoken. It includes Denmark, Sweden, Norway, and Iceland. These people are closely related to the Germans. Their languages resemble German, Dutch, and to some extent, English.

**The Scandinavian Peninsula.** Sweden and Norway occupy this peninsula, with a long range of mountains running its entire length. The name Kjolén, "Keel" was given those mountains by the seagoing people of these regions. They were reminded of the keel of an upturned boat. Wherever the snow and ice do not melt in summer, glaciers lie between mountain peaks, and there are numbers of beautiful glacier-made lakes between the forested hills. The whole region is Far North, but the winds from off the warm ocean current washing the shore of Norway tempers the climate. Harbors are ice-free all winter. In summer the land is cooled by ocean breezes.

Sweden, on the side away from the ocean, has a continental climate with colder winters and warmer summers. Its surface slopes across rolling, forested hills from the mountain range on the north and west to its southern plain. Sweden's harbors are closed by ice in winter.

Most of the people of Norway and Sweden live in the southern sections and along the coast where land is level for farming. However, every possible small pocket of hillside land is used for crops or pasture. Sweden has twice as many people as Norway, but there are more people in New York City than there are in Sweden. Northern Norway has the long winter nights and long summer days of Arctic regions. Like the

Alaskans, its people can see the sun shining at midnight in summer.

**People and culture.** The Scandinavian peoples have an old culture, with interesting and beautiful folk music and dancing. Many of our best beloved fairy tales come from these countries. The home of Hans Christian Andersen, famous for children's tales, was on the Danish island of Fyn. The Scandinavians are peace-loving people. They are not eager to enlarge their boundaries nor to take over new colonies. For many years they have turned their attention to improving what they have of God's gifts, and they have done well. Many have emigrated to the United States, where they make some of our best citizens.

### Living in Denmark

Denmark is a Scandinavian country, but it is not on the Scandinavian Peninsula. Many islands are included in its area. It is only about half as large as our State of Maine. About one fourth of the country's population lives in Copenhagen. This city with its beautiful old buildings, is called the "Queen of the Baltic." Denmark is a democratic nation, whose people make their own laws and manage their own affairs. It is not a republic. It has a king, who is very popular with his people. It is a neat, clean, and tidy country.

The Danish people are well educated, and most of them speak English or some other language as well as their own. They have fine schools and universities. They are friendly, fond of sports, of music, of parties, of good food, and jolly times. They like to go on hikes, to ride bicycles, to attend the theater, to skate in winter, and swim in the


sea in summer. Visitors from other countries love Denmark and its people.

**A farming country.** Considerable manufacturing is done in Denmark, but it is a farming country. Danish farmers are thrifty and well-to-do. They live on their farms in well-built houses, with electric lights, radios, and many modern gadgets. People from all over the world go to Denmark to get new ideas about dairying. Danish breeds of dairy cattle are famous everywhere. Records are kept showing how much it costs to feed each cow and how much milk and butter fat she produces. Cows which fall below average are sold. Cotton seed cake from the United States and grain from Argentina are used to enrich the dairy cow's diet of grass and hay.

The prosperity of the Danish farmers is largely due to their wise habit of working together. They have set up dairy co-operatives, which belong to the farmers themselves. The milk is hauled to the co-operative plant where the butter fat is removed. The farmer then hauls the skim

milk back home to feed his hogs. At the co-operative the butter fat is churned into butter, put up in tins or cartons, and sold. Experts see that only good butter is turned out. The farmers get the profits from selling their butter, and also from running the co-operative dairy plant, which belongs to them. They also sell the hogs which were fattened on the skim milk. They market their hogs, eggs, chickens, and other farm products through co-operatives.

City people in Europe know that an egg or a tin of butter stamped with the mark of a Danish co-operative is good. There is always a good market for their products. The farmers borrow money when they need it through co-operative banks called credit unions. Farm machinery, fine cattle, foods, and clothing are bought through the co-operative stores. The profits from the sales go to the owners of the stores—the farmers themselves. At the end of the year, the profits made in the store are divided up among the people, according to the amount of goods each one has purchased.



Two young Danes take a bicycle trip on a holiday. Every summer morning thousands of yachts leave Copenhagen to sail the Sound between Denmark and Sweden.



1 Name the Scandinavian countries and tell in what part of Europe they are located. List the products of each as indicated on the map.



Total population of Denmark 4,000,000. Catholics 23,350. Estimate the percentage of Catholics.

2 Copenhagen, the capital and chief seaport of Denmark, is located on an island. In what sea is this island located?



Donish breeds of doiry cattle ore famous everywhere. Discuss the high standard of Donish doirying.

3 There is ferry-boat service between Denmark's islands, carrying trains and people. Ferryboats also go to Sweden. Compare ferries with ocean liners.

The Scandinavian Peninsula contains the two kingdoms of Norway and Sweden. A range of old, worn mountains extends the whole length of the peninsula. The land is rough and hilly; much of it is covered with forests. The growing season is short. However, many of the Scandinavian people are farmers, raising cool-climate crops on small patches of land with great industry and skill. Farmers along the coast spend part of their time fishing.

Denmark, made up of a peninsula and a number of islands, is a small country, lacking natural resources. The soil is chiefly a poor, harsh sand and clay, yet Denmark is one of Europe's most prosperous countries. Farming is the chief occupation. Farms are small, but farmers work hard and make every inch produce. Farm boys and girls learn the best farming methods in school.

Iceland grows the usual cool-weather crops, and sheep and dairy cattle thrive. Fishing villages dot the coast.

Sweden, lying as far north as Hudson Bay, is a little larger than California but has fewer people. It is rocky and mountainous with a short growing season for crops. Only about one tenth of its land can be farmed. Yet the Swedes not only produce enough to feed themselves but export large quantities of butter and bacon to England. The Swedes are clever and industrious farmers making every foot of soil produce its crop. They produce nearly twice as much winter wheat on an acre as American farmers do. There is not much coal in Sweden, but the many waterfalls have been used to produce hydroelectric power. Iron ore is plentiful. In the north it lies so near the surface that it can be scooped up with power shovels and dumped into railway cars. The Swedes use electricity to heat their iron and steel furnaces. Trains, factories, and sawmills are run by electricity. Farmers use electric power to light their houses and to operate farm machinery.

Norway has an enormous, ragged coast line. Harbors abound, and thousands of small islands protect them from the strong winds and waves. The people add to the scanty resources of their mountainous land by taking great catches of fish from the fertile sea. Lumber to make boats is plentiful. Northern waters abound with whales and fine, tasty fish.



ATLANTIC

FAEROE IS.  
(Den.)

⊙ Capital City ——— Canal  
- - - - - International Boundary  
Scale of Miles  
0 50 100 150 200 250  
General Drafting Co., Inc.

140

11 If you could visit Denmark, Norway, Sweden, and Iceland, what would you like to see or do in each country?



Tell something about Lief Ericson and his famous journeys.

10 The midnight sun and the aurora borealis light up the night skies in northern Sweden and Norway. Explain.



Population of Iceland 138,500. Catholics number 642. Estimate the percentage of Catholics.

9 What keeps Iceland from being a frozen land? Why is it sometimes called "Land of Fire"?

# THE SCANDINAVIANS: Their Land and Work



Discuss the importance of the co-operative movement in Sweden and Denmark.

**4** Norway is far north, part of it extending beyond the Arctic Circle. What tempers the climate so that harbors do not freeze over and farmers can raise crops?



Population of Norway 3,200,000. Catholics number 4,300. Estimate the percentage of Catholics.

**5** Explain how waterfalls make up for the lack of coal in Sweden and Norway. What industries benefit from this power?



Population of Sweden 6,842,046. Catholics number 11,500. Estimate the percentage of Catholics.

**6** Locate Oslo, capital of Norway. This gaad harbor is a sea inlet called a fiard. Explain how the fiords assist the people who live near the coast in their principal industry.



Locate Stockholm, capital of Sweden. Its gaad harbor is kept open in winter by icebreakers.



Who was the apostle of the Scandinavian countries? Discuss the Church in these countries.



What is the origin of the Nobel prize for science and literature?

**8** Spitsbergen is too far north to appear on this map. It belongs to Norway. Locate it on a large map or globe.

**7** Where is Lapland? Over what countries does it extend? Tell something interesting about the Lapps. Are they Scandinavians?





Iceland ponies carry riders through mountain valleys. Icelanders stroll on main street in Reykjavik.

### Living in Iceland

Iceland was a Danish colony for many years but it is now an independent country. Although it lies in the far north Atlantic, winds from off the warm ocean currents keep it from being a frozen land. The climate is cool and rainy, and the lowlands are covered with grassy pastures. Farmers grow the usual cool-weather crops, and sheep and dairy cows thrive. Fishing villages dot the coast. Iceland is often called the "Land of Fire." It is a volcanic island, with erupting volcanoes and geysers, many hot springs and great beds of lava.

The people of Iceland are lovers of liberty, peace, and democracy. They have the oldest parliament in the world, dating from the year 930. They have an ancient literature in their own language, a university, and good schools. There are few in Iceland who cannot read and write. The Icelanders have no army, no navy, no forts, and no railroads. Water is piped from volcanic hot springs to heat homes, office buildings, and greenhouses, also for swimming pools and laundries. The people of Iceland are Lutherans, but church and state are separate and all may worship as they please. The Catholic Church has only recently returned there. Iceland now has its own Catholic Bishop, the first in centuries.

A Swedish farm boy enjoys driving the tractor which several farmers have bought co-operatively.



### Living in Sweden

Sweden is a beautiful, bright country. Even the nights are bright with electric lights, for water power is cheap and is used to make electric power in large plants. The rainbow-colored stream of light, known as the *aurora borealis*, brightens up the skies during the long winter nights. All summer, gardens and window boxes blaze with flowers, and plants fill the windows of houses in winter. Winds from the warm seas keep the climate milder than the Hudson Bay area in the same latitude. Winters in Sweden are long with plenty of snow, and winter days are short. Summer is short but summer days are long, with sunshine almost all night.

The Swedes love the sun, and as soon as summer comes, everybody goes on picnics

to the beach, the mountains, or the islands. Beautiful pine-covered islands and lakes surround the city of Stockholm. The Göta Canal makes an inland waterway for small boats across southern Sweden. The city of Göteborg, at the west end of this canal, is an important port city for shipping in the North Sea and the Atlantic Ocean.

Railroads and modern ships make travel easy through the inlets and waterways and the big canals. There are plenty of up-to-date hotels where tourists stay and enjoy the excellent Swedish cooking.

**The people of Sweden.** Sweden is a peaceful country with a high standard of living. The farmers are very efficient, and their fields produce heavily. The Swedes raise fine dairy cows and drink more milk per person than we do.

Sweden has many scientists and inventors. Nobel, the inventor of dynamite, was a Swede. He happily thought he had ended all wars. He was sure that his invention would make war so terrible that men would seek peaceful ways of settling their differences. In this he was mistaken, but he left his great fortune to be given away in prizes to the persons who made the greatest gifts to mankind in peaceful arts, science, and writing.

**The Co-ops.** It was while the Industrial Revolution was at its height that twenty-seven poor working men and one woman gathered their scanty savings together and started the first co-operative store. The "co-op" movement started in England, in Rochdale, a smoky city in the middle of the great Lancashire cotton-spinning and weaving district. At that time men and women and children worked from six in the morning until eight at night. There were 1,500 people in Rochdale alone, living on forty-five cents a week each. The twenty-eight

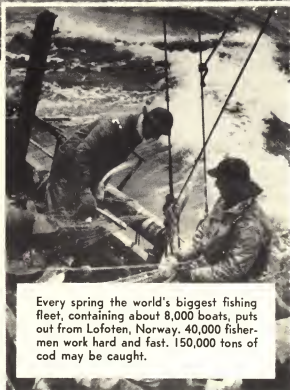
founders set out to better their condition.

People had started co-operative stores before, but they had always failed. The Rochdale founders laid down wise rules for their "co-op," and it did not fail. With their collected savings (about five dollars apiece) they rented a dingy little shop in a street called "Toad Lane." They bought a few supplies at wholesale prices: flour, sugar, oatmeal, tea—the food of the poor. The twenty-eight members of the co-op then bought their supplies at their own store, appointing one of their members to manage it for them.

The co-operative store in Rochdale grew and prospered, and helped make the people's lives a little less bleak and pinched by poverty. The idea spread all over Europe and America. The Scandinavian people, who are very sensible in many matters, took up the idea of the co-operative in a big way. In Sweden, the co-operatives market the farmer's products and sell food, electric supplies, motor supplies, and even houses. There is a big co-operative "super market" in nearly every Swedish town, and more than a million Swedes belong to them. Yearly sales run into hundreds of millions of dollars. At the same time there are plenty of small stores run by their owners. Sweden is said to be the country where business by co-operative is best developed. Parties of people interested in the co-operative plan come from all over the world to study the co-operatives of Sweden.

### Living in Norway

The Norwegians have scanty soil and few resources in their land, but they learned long ago how to find and make good use of God's gifts. They know that the ocean contains food, and that fish make a healthful food when fresh, salted, smoked, or dried.



Every spring the world's biggest fishing fleet, containing about 8,000 boats, puts out from Lofoten, Norway. 40,000 fishermen work hard and fast. 150,000 tons of cod may be caught.

The Norwegians are fishermen and seafaring people with ships sailing all over the world.

Great forests of pine, spruce, and other evergreens are carefully protected. Trees cut for lumber are replaced so the forests are permanent resources. The lumbermen cut the logs in winter and haul them by sled to a river. In spring when the ice melts the logs are floated to the sawmills or pulp mills.

The Norwegians are a democratic, self-governing people. Their country is a kingdom, not a republic. Oslo, the capital and largest city, is built beside one of those narrow cliff-walled sea inlets, called *fjords*. The scenery around Oslo is magnificent, and summer tourists flock to this and other Norwegian ports. Railroads connect Oslo with a rich farm valley. Some manufacturing and much trade goes on. The harbor is good.

Spitsbergen is one of a group of Norwegian islands called Svalbard which lies a few hundred miles north of the Scandinavian Peninsula. This, too, is a land of the midnight sun. A few hardy miners, hunters, and fishermen live there.

**Scandinavian background.** The Swedes, Danes, and Norwegians were once the terror of civilized Europe. They were hardy seamen called Vikings and North-men or Norsemen, who sailed the cold North Sea in open boats. Many were also pagan pirates who raided the coasts of Christian Europe during hundreds of years. The terrified people used to pray, "From the fury of the Norsemen, O Lord, deliver us." The Norsemen conquered part of France and settled there, in the section called Normandy which was named after them. They also settled in England and Ireland.

The Catholic Faith came late to the Scandinavian countries. Much of western Europe had long been Christian before Saint Ansgar, a Benedictine missionary, baptized King Harald of Denmark and preached the Faith throughout Scandinavia. In time, Norway, Sweden, Denmark, Finland, and Iceland were part of Christendom. The people gave up their pagan gods and their habit of invading coasts for cattle and slaves. They stopped burning villages and raiding ships. They settled down and became in time the most peaceful and civilized of peoples. In time, there were saints among the Scandinavians, and churches and monasteries were built throughout the land. Christian settlements were set up in Iceland. Leif Ericson and his followers who



Lapland mother, like the American Indian, keeps baby tied in a cradle that can be carried about.

brought the Faith to Greenland, were probably the first Catholics in North America.

When Martin Luther led so many thousands of Germans away from the Catholic Church, the Scandinavian nations followed, and for three hundred years the Faith in this land was dead. Even today these charming countries with their fine people are like mission lands. There are fewer Catholics in all of them put together than can be

#### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Complete the following sentences using the correct word or words in parentheses.

1. The harbors of Norway can be used (only in winter, only in summer, all year long).
2. Of the following, the country not located on the Scandinavian peninsula is (Denmark, Norway, Sweden).
3. The Scandinavian country that is world famous for exporting butter and eggs is (Norway, Iceland, Denmark).
4. Iceland is (a Danish colony, an independ-

found in one small American city. The Benedictines and other missionaries are returning there to set up the Church once again. Catholics are not very free to do missionary work in this solidly Lutheran territory. However, conversions are taking place, and some of the great writers of these Scandinavian lands have become Catholics and have used their art to spread the Faith.

**The Lapps.** Across the far northern reaches of Norway, Sweden, Finland, and Russia is a frozen region where the Lapps live. This region is not a country, although it is called Lapland.

The Lapps are nomads, who live in tents and follow their great herds of reindeer from place to place while the animals search for food. Reindeer feed on mosses and plants that grow under the snow. The Lapps get their food, clothing, tents, and harness from their herds.

The Lapps are not Scandinavians; they are a Mongol nation from Asia. There are only a few thousand of these interesting people, who have learned to conquer the cold north and make their living in it. Some of them have now settled down in wooden houses and carry on trade. Both Catholic and Protestant missionaries have tried to convert the Lapps, but without much success.

ent country, an island belonging to the United States).

5. The narrow cliff-walled sea inlets along the coast of Norway and Sweden are called (estuaries, fiords, canals).

6. Many Norwegians make their living by (fishing, manufacturing, mining).

7. A natural resource obtained in great abundance in both Norway and Sweden is (coal, water power, petroleum).

8. The animal industry in which the Lapps engage is raising (sheep, goats, reindeer).

## *Peace on earth to men of good will.*

THE BIBLE

In the Bible we learn that the evil spirits made war in heaven. We also read that there was war on earth even in the first human family, when one boy killed his brother. Down through the ages men have made war upon one another. Early wars were fought in hand-to-hand combat, with clubs, swords, bows and arrows, battle axes, spears, and daggers. Often man's latest inventions were used to kill.

Modern wars destroy whole cities in a night, and kill not only enemy soldiers but women, children, and the old. Indeed it is the children who suffer most in bombed-out countries. Homeless orphans, cold and hungry, die or gather into bands of wild little outlaws, stealing and looting to keep alive. Some are left without arms or legs, some blinded. As they grow up, terror and hate leave wounds on their souls that can hardly be healed.

Throughout the ages, men have seen the evils of war and have tried to make a lasting peace. People thought that peace would come when countries were united in one government. The Romans tried to make a peaceful Empire under one rule. They succeeded for a while. Charlemagne tried to unite Europe in one peaceful Empire, but his reign saw one war follow another. After his death the Empire split apart. So far man has failed to bring an end to wars.

By World War I, the invention of the airplane, poison gas, and high explosives had made war so terrible that men felt something had to be done to prevent it. The League of Nations was started, with headquarters in Geneva, Switzerland. It was to be a place where the rulers of nations could talk over

their differences and settle them. Some members, however, used the League of Nations only so long as it suited them. They simply walked out of the League when they wanted to make war. The League had no way of forcing members to behave. It was useless for keeping peace.

By the end of World War II, invention had made war so dreadful that men desperately tried again to preserve peace. This time they formed the United Nations, with a charter which was really a great peace treaty for the world. Its purpose was to do away with war forever. United Nations headquarters was in New York, but meetings were often held elsewhere. Members were to bring their difficulties there and abide by the decisions made. Again there was no way to force nations to obey. Communist members used the United Nations to accuse others. When nations did not do as they liked, the Communist members walked out. All the time they were waging war and preparing for war. If they were accused of these things in the United Nations meetings, they simply said it was not so.

From this we see that any union of peoples like the United Nations will work only when law-abiding men keep their promises. It is of little use when nations have no sense of honor. Our own United States is a great example of many states united in peace. Let us hope and pray that some day the citizens of all the countries of the earth will agree to live together in friendly union. This day, however, will not come until men follow the laws of God. Only then can real peace come to the world.





## For My Geography Notebook

### Questions for Review

#### Switzerland

① How has Switzerland been handicapped in its trade with other countries? ② What languages are spoken in Switzerland? ③. Describe how the farms of Switzerland have been improved by scientific methods. ④. Give some advantages already enjoyed by members of Swiss trade unions but not yet gained by union members in our country. ⑤. Give at least two reasons why the manufactured products of Switzerland are not large and bulky. ⑥. Make a list of products that the Swiss export.

#### Germany

①. Of what importance are Germany's many canals and rivers? Name three important German rivers and tell into what body of water each flows. ②. Mention at least five countries whose boundaries touch Germany. ③. Why is much of the surface of the North German Plain strong, sandy, and swampy? ④. What were some of the things the German people learned from the Benedictines about farming? ⑤. What use do German farmers make of the pulp and tops of beets after the sugar has been removed? ⑥. What product do German chemists use to make their famous dyes? ⑦. What advantages has the Ruhr Valley for manufacturing?

#### Belgium and Netherlands

①. Why are the lands of Belgium and Netherlands so intensely cultivated? ②. Mention some of the advantages enjoyed by Belgian farmers who belong to the Boerenbond. ③. What use is made of diamonds other than for jewelry? ④. Why are diamonds used for this purpose? ⑤. Describe how Netherlands manage to keep the sea out of their coastal lands which are below sea level in many places. ⑥. What dairy products other than milk and butter are exported from the Netherlands? ⑦. What small European country lies between Germany, France, and Belgium? ⑧. Why are Belgium and the Netherlands sometimes called the "lowland countries"? ⑨. What advantages do Belgium and Netherlands have for trade?

#### Scandinavia

①. Why is the Norwegian harbor at Hammerfest, although north of the Arctic Circle, ice-free throughout the year? ②. Why does Sweden have colder winters and warmer summers than Norway? ③. Give some reasons why most Danish dairy farmers join co-operatives. ④. How do the people of Iceland make practical use of their volcanic hot springs? ⑤. Why is electricity cheap in Norway and Sweden? ⑥. Mention some important uses Norwegians and Swedes make of hydroelectric power. ⑦. Why do so many Norwegians make their living from fishing and shipping? ⑧. How do the Lapps of northern Europe make their living? ⑨. Which Scandinavian country exports a product from its mines? ⑩. Why must Norway and Sweden import wheat and other foodstuffs?

**Using Geography Words Correctly.** Here is a list of words which have been used in this chapter. Use each in a sentence.

- |                    |                |
|--------------------|----------------|
| 1. canton          | 7. fiords      |
| 2. harrow          | 8. icebreakers |
| 3. greenhouse      | 9. humus       |
| 4. tractor         | 10. compost    |
| 5. co-operatives   | 11. polders    |
| 6. aurora borealis | 12. silo       |

**Pause and Think.** Explain the meaning in each of the following sentences:

1. Together they (owners and workers) agree upon just wages, working hours, working conditions, and accident and old age insurance.
2. A man can love power more than gold, family, or friends, more than God and his soul's salvation.
3. People meeting a friend, say, "Praise God" or "Praised be Jesus Christ" instead of "hello."
4. The Germans put every acre to good use, but even so they are not able to produce enough food for their great population.
5. Each girl learns to be a good wife who will love and honor her husband, raise her children wisely, and reign as queen over a happy home.

## 10. The People of Finland

Finland is a republic, lying in northern Europe like a stone bridge between Soviet Russia and the Scandinavian countries. It is somewhat smaller than our State of Montana, and almost one third of its area is inland water and marsh. For thousands of years the whole area was covered by a great glacier. It scraped away the soil and left bare rocks, boulders, and basins which filled with water and made more than sixty-five thousand lovely lakes. Finland is a low-lying region; much of the country is less than a thousand feet above sea level. The lakes and the vast pine forests that cover much of the land give the country a wild and beautiful appearance.

Rivers and canals connect many of the lakes and provide waterways for transportation. Because Finland lacks coal and petroleum, it depends on the power of its streams and lakes to generate electricity. These bodies of water are ice-bound during the winter when they furnish fine, hard roadbeds for travel.

Finland, one of the most northern countries of the world, has short, warm summers and long, cold winters. Snow covers the ground for five or six months each year. Rainfall is light in the north and moderate in the south. Stony or swampy land and the short growing season make farming difficult, yet more than half the Finns are farmers. The best soil is in the south; most farms, in-



Our Lady of Finland shrine in the only Catholic church in Helsinki, the capital.

cluding the co-operative dairy farms, are located there.

**Land of forests.** Fir, pine, and spruce trees cover two thirds of Finland's surface. One of every three workers depends on the forests for employment, and wood products make up most of the country's exports. In the winter, lumberjacks cut down the trees; in the spring, hundreds of rivers are used to float logs to the sawmills or wood pulp mills. Because of the importance of forestry, special courses on the subject are provided in schools, and the government gives technical advice to forest owners.

Helsinki, Finland's capital and only large city, is famous for its beauty, wide streets, and many fine buildings. It is a port on the Gulf of Finland.

**The Finns in the past.** The Finns are a Mongolian people who used to live in Russia, but were pushed west by the Slavs until they settled in their present home. The Swedes ruled Finland for years, and later the country was conquered by Russia. Finland became an independent republic only in modern times, after World War I. Since then Finland has had a hard time staying free. Communists from Russia have tried to control the country, but the stubborn freedom-loving Finns have held free elections and voted them out. Finland is a good example of a small country whose people are alert and determined to keep their liberty.

**The Faith.** The Finns were pagans for a long time. At length Catholic missionaries reached the country, about three hundred years before Columbus discovered America. Gradually the Finns were converted, and the Catholic Church was set up. However, when Sweden fell away from the Faith and took up the teaching of Martin Luther, Finland, under Swedish rule, followed. The country is now mission territory for the church. A few Catholic missionaries live there, carrying on work among the people.

**The people and culture.** The Finns are hard working, intelligent people, who have learned how to live comfortably and well in a cold land with few natural resources. They think highly of education, and only a few cannot read. The Finns enjoy reading the many beautiful books which are written in their language. They are lovers of music, and some are famous musicians and composers. Many Finns have emigrated to the United States, where they have become respected and industrious citizens.

Finns settling in Delaware in colonial days introduced the log cabin to our country. It was adopted by westward-moving pioneers and came to be the sign of America's frontier. Our beloved President Lincoln and other great men were born in log cabins.

**Farm life.** Many Finnish peasants today live in log houses, which are cool in summer and warm in winter. Their homes are very beautiful to see situated in the forests from

which they were made. The farmhouse kitchen is a huge, cheerful room where all members of the family live, dine, work, and study. Wholesome meals are cooked on the large brick stove. Shining pots and pans hang on the wall, and overhead is a long pole strung with dozens of large doughnut-shaped loaves of hard, brown bread. In the evening, grandmother and the girls spin wool from their sheep, or knit warm clothing in the kitchen. Mother sits at her loom weaving rugs or cloth. Young children study their lessons; and other members of the family read magazines or good books, or play musical instruments.

Finnish country homes have electric lights and radios. Farmers are well educated and scientific. They produce many things by hand in the home because they know that such articles are sometimes better than factory-made products. Artistic hand work also provides quiet and restful happiness for the worker.

Red and white Ayrshires, hardy dairy cattle from Scotland, thrive on the flat pasture lands of cold Finland.



Sisters of the Most Precious Blood from O'Fallon, Missouri, conduct one of the few Catholic schools in Finland. The children learn music just as Americans do, and other subjects, too, including English.





## PEOPLES OF MIDDLE EUROPE: Their Land and Work



The countries of central Europe lie in the way of all the wars and invading armies that have come out of Russia and Asia. Their people are mixtures of many tribes who come seeking land, killed, rabbed, then settled down and stayed. No army of Europeans ever invaded and settled Asia, but Asia has frequently overflowed into Europe.

Finland on the flat lands of northern Europe is a country of few mountains but of hundreds of lakes and streams, a long seacoast and good harbors. The Finns have learned how to live well in a cold northern land. Poland and Czechoslovakia are countries of many forms. They also have great cities full of factories, which employ millions of people. Much of Poland is flat, but Czechoslovakia is mountainous. Austria and Hungary are called Donubian countries, because they contain part of the fine fertile valley of the Danube River. Austria is green, wooded and mountainous. Hungary has great plains. Both have fine old cities.

150



Total population of Finland 3,993,500. Catholics 1,215. Estimate the percentage of Catholics.

1 Locate Finland and describe its physical features and climate. What are some of its natural resources? Make a list of the products of Finland.



The Finns have long done business through co-operatives. What does this tell you about the nature of the people?



Tell something interesting about the Catholic faith in each of these five countries.

4 Name the capital and one or two other cities of each of the five countries. Compare and contrast the industries of the people in each.



Name one way in which Hungary is like our Western States.

3 Name the principal rivers in these countries. Discuss how they serve as boundaries. Explain why these rivers are especially important to the people living in these countries.





**Some interesting facts.** Finnish food is good and plentiful, and many great athletes have grown strong on it. Some of the world's swiftest runners are Finns. The Finn in everyday life, however, is in no hurry. He says, "God made time, but He said nothing about hurry."

The Finns, like the Swedes, do a great part of their banking, buying, selling, and manufacturing through co-operatives. These sensible people have learned to work together. Although they live in a far northern

country without many resources, they have a sound prosperity. The hard-working Finns paid their war debts regularly when many richer countries failed. They are a democratic people. Even a peasant has become president of the country.

## IRON CURTAIN

The Communists came to be called "Reds" because their flag was the color of blood. Radio, newspapers, and school teachers in Red-controlled countries repeated over and over the false story that people in all other countries were starving and miserable. Many of the Russian soldiers who fought for Communism in Spain or other foreign lands were killed by their own Communist police when they returned to Russia. This prevented them from telling the Russians how much more prosperous were the people in other countries. The Communists dared not let their neighbors be friendly with others. By quarreling with out and their own people at home. As far as possible, they prevented letters and magazines from crossing borders. They even tried to drown out radio programs from free countries.

The Communists would not let their enslaved people travel to free countries, for fear they would

not come back. The rulers needed many people to labor for them in order to make wealth. Money helped them to carry on their schemes for gaining the whole world. Their people were not allowed to learn about other people in free countries, for fear they would realize their own sad lot and try to change it. This barrier between the enslaved countries and the free world was called the "iron curtain." Certain countries of Europe and Asia were said to be behind this iron curtain. They were under the Red flag. They were enslaved by Communism.

One day a strange boat came limping into the harbor of Cork, Ireland. It was a little vessel meant to carry fifty passengers; but three hundred and seventy-two men, women, and children filled every inch of its space. They had suffered from winds and waves. Their vessel, an old one, had gone on the rocks and was leaking. Drinking water had run out and food was scarce. The

passengers were Poles, Estonians, Russians, and Latvians, all trying to escape the horrors of Communist rule. With their small savings they had bought the old boat. Their young captain knew little of navigation, but he did the best he could. The kind-hearted Irish took the strangers in, fed them, and gave them clothes. Irish taxi drivers took carloads of the penniless visitors out sight-seeing. The Irish Government furnished an unused army camp for them, for as long as they wished to stay.

Other small boats have nosed into American and Canadian ports, filled with sick and weary passengers who have dared to cross the stormy Atlantic Ocean in their flight from Red terror. A fishing schooner half as big as the old Mayflower of Pilgrim days held sixty-nine. America, land of liberty, seemed like a heaven on earth to people behind the iron curtain.

Many brave people who could do so fled the

"Iron Curtain" countries. A sharp watch was kept on the borders by Red soldiers, but numbers managed to escape to freedom. It was necessary for a whole family to go at once, as any member left in a Communist country would be killed or sent to prison camp if relatives escaped. Parties of people sometimes forced pilots to take them to free territory in American army camps. Over a hundred and fifty thousand Polish soldiers and sailors, who were outside Poland at the close of World War II refused to return there. Some few were able to get their families out. Many went to Canada, South America, and the United States, to become farmers and industrial workers in lands of freedom. Even Polish and Czech officials on government business in our country broke off from their Communist governments and asked our government to let them stay in the United States.

A small vessel crammed with hungry passengers escaping from under the Iron Curtain. Irish people fed and helped when the boat put in at an Irish port for repairs.





At Czestochowa, Poland, 700,000 Catholics gather with their Cardinal to honor Our Lady, and to pray for their country being ruled by Communists "with blood and tears."

## II. How People Live and Work in Poland

The greater part of Poland is on the central lowland plain of Europe. Land along the coast is low, sandy, and often swampy, and the wet areas must be drained for farming. There are many small lakes in this region. Central Poland is made up of rolling land, and its soil ranges from poor to moderately fertile. Southern Poland is hilly, because the boundary consists of mountains—the Sudeten and the Carpathian mountains.

The chief river draining Poland is the Vistula. The Oder River forms a part of the western boundary. The northern boundary of Poland is the Baltic Sea.

Poland's climate provides warm summers and cold winters. Snow covers the ground in winter. Rainfall is moderate and enough for the crops.

**Agricultural country.** Poland is mainly an agricultural country. Many farms are only five or six acres in size, since most large farms were broken up into smaller ones after World War II. Although some farmers use modern machinery, many still use simple tools made of wood. They raise the same kind of crops as are raised in the neighboring countries of Russia and Germany. Polish farmers usually live in small villages, and often there is only one main street in a village. The houses are built of wood, and many have steep roofs made of straw.

**Minerals and forests.** The southern and southwestern parts of Poland are rich in minerals, with coal mining the chief industry. The supply of petroleum is small. There are salt mines near Kraków.

Most of the forests are located in southern Poland. In that region, lumbering is a chief occupation during the winter months.

**Manufacturing.** During World War II, many of Poland's factories were either totally destroyed or badly damaged. Some factories have been rebuilt, and a few new ones have been constructed.

Poland has many things needed for manufacturing. Coal for fuel is plentiful, and hydroelectric power can be developed from streams of the Carpathian Mountains. Many capable workers, a favorable climate, iron ore, wood, and other materials are useful in manufacturing. Poland, however, lacks buildings and machinery.

There are iron and steel mills in southwestern Poland, where coal and iron ore are mined. There are many textile mills and small factories, where clothing and foods are produced. Flour and beet sugar mills, and meat-packing plants are located in many cities.

**Cities.** Warsaw is Poland's capital and principal city. It is on the Vistula River, in the eastern part of central Poland. Much of Warsaw was destroyed in World War II, and rebuilding it has been slow. More than a million people once lived there and worked in its many factories. Warsaw is an important rail and trading center.

Łódź and Poznań are the major manufacturing cities in central Poland; Kraków and Breslau are important cities in the southern part of the country. Before World War II, Gdynia was the only major Polish port on the Baltic Sea. It carried on much of the nation's foreign trade. Two other ports—Danzig, at the mouth of the Vistula River, and Stettin, at the mouth of the Oder River—were obtained after the war.

**The people.** Polish peasants work hard on their little farms, yet they can always

take time out for a wedding feast or a dance. During the short summer, nightingales make the woods ring with their beautiful song at night, and during the day the cuckoos sound their cry like an echo from all sides. Girls lead cows to pasture. Housewives cook; feed the pigs and chickens; card, spin, and dye the wool from the sheep. They often weave the wool into sturdy cloth and make fine, gay clothes for the family. Many Poles are fair and blue-eyed like the Scandinavians and some of the Russians. Pretty, flaxen-haired children grow up on the farms and in the cities.

Poland has been the home of famous musicians, composers, actors, singers, writers, and scientists. Chopin and Paderewski in music, Madame Curie in science are world-famous Poles.

**The Faith.** The Polish people are descendants of early tribes of Slavs, the same people who settled in Russia. The Poles were once pagans. Catholic missionaries were sent to them by the Pope, and the missionaries baptized the people and replaced their old pagan feast days with Christian holydays. Saint Hyacinth, a Dominican, was the special apostle of Poland. He spent twenty-seven years as a missionary, walking all the land clad in his white tunic and black cloak. He traveled as far as Denmark, Norway, Sweden, and Kiev in Russia preaching, baptizing, and working miracles. Saint Hyacinth founded many Dominican monasteries, so that other missionaries could carry on his work. He is called the Apostle of the North.

The Poles love religious processions, singing, and fine church ceremonies. The old dances and songs in honor of the pagan gods of spring were changed into hymns, processions, and prayers in honor of Christ's Mother. After the harvest, a great holiday is observed to thank God and rejoice before



Polish miners pray at the altar of their little chapel deep in the salt mine near Kraków. The chapel is carved from solid salt. The mine is the oldest and richest in Europe, with 60 miles of tunnels nearly 400 feet underground.

Him in song and dance. A few days before Lent are days of parties and feasts.

**Unhappy country.** The Communists gained control of Poland after World War II and gradually tightened their grip on the unhappy people, trying to destroy their Faith as well as their freedom.

People who could get away fled from behind the iron curtain. Polish Catholics have an old hymn "God for Poland" which they love to sing. However, they changed some of the words. Instead of "God preserve our freedom," they now sing "God give us back our freedom."

Poland has often been overrun and conquered by its neighbors, but the Poles are fiercely patriotic lovers of liberty. Again and again they have fought to keep their freedom and their Catholic Faith. In this respect, they are like the people of Ireland; and like the Irish, many Poles came to the United States to live in a free country.

Poles came to America in very early times and made useful citizens. Some were farmers and others founded schools. Many became traders and pioneers. Several Poles were famous soldiers who helped us fight for independence under General Washington.

In later years great numbers of Polish peasants came to America to escape poverty and troubles in their home land. Some worked in factories, mines, and in lumber camps. Many settled on farm land in the midwest, where the great plains and the climate reminded them of home. Others took up farms that had been abandoned by Americans in Atlantic coast states and made a great success of them.

Poles brought their Catholic Faith with them to America. As they often settled here in groups, they carried out their fine old religious ceremonies with all the color and music to which they were accustomed in their home land. The Poles love learning, and they support many schools in America. Here they find a chance to work and make a living, and to bring up their children in the Catholic Faith.

#### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Complete each of the following sentences by filling in the missing word or words in each blank.

1. Much of Finland's soil was scraped away by a \_\_\_\_\_.
2. About two thirds of Finland's surface is covered by \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The capital of Finland is \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Poland's most important river is the \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Most of Poland's people make their living by \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The Polish port city at the mouth of the Vistula River is \_\_\_\_\_.
7. After World War II Poland became a \_\_\_\_\_ country.
8. Poland's most important city destroyed during World War II is \_\_\_\_\_.



## 12. The People of Czechoslovakia

Czechoslovakia is a long, narrow country as large as New York State in area but it has two million fewer people. It runs east and west near the middle of Europe. It has no seacoast, but has good air, rail, and river connections with the rest of the continent.

Czechoslovakia gets its name from the Czechs, who live in the west, and the Slovaks, who live in the east. In western Czechoslovakia, the land is part of a plateau—rolling land with small hills. The east is made up of low mountains and many wide valleys.

Czechoslovakia's mountains contain many health and pleasure resorts, with fine hotels and mineral springs for tourists. Karlovy Vary is one of the world's best known health resorts. In olden times the mountains were lines of defense; but today mountains cannot keep out bombing planes.

**A farming country.** The climate of Czechoslovakia is good for crops. The winters are cold and snowy; the summers are hot; and there is a moderate amount of rain, mainly in the summer.

One half of all the land in Czechoslovakia is farm land, and one third of its people are farmers. Very little land is wasted, because the average farm is small. Often the sides of roads are lined with growing fruit or vegetables. Some of Czechoslovakia's small villages are only several farms grouped around a church. The land produces crops like those of Wisconsin and Minnesota: that is, wheat, corn, rye, potatoes, and sugar beets.

Most farmers have cattle and pigs, and a few raise sheep. The animals are fed from the crops or are allowed to graze on the hilly land.

**Natural resources.** One third of Czechoslovakia is a heavy forest of evergreen and

hardwood trees. The forest supplies lumber and many other wood products. The country has abundant deposits of coal, which is mined for use in homes and factories. It has some iron ore, but not enough to supply the iron and steel mills. The land has valuable deposits of pitchblende (radium ore), as well as large quantities of clay and sand.

**An important manufacturing country.** Because there is plenty of coal for factories and numerous waterfalls for electric power, Czechoslovakia ranks high among Europe's manufacturing nations. Iron and steel plants turn out many products, from tacks to locomotives; colored-glass articles, made from sand, are famous throughout the world. Its energetic people have built railroads for travel and freight transportation.

**A good location for trade.** Travelers can reach Czechoslovakia easily from any place in Europe. Its location is excellent for foreign trade with the other European countries that touch its borders.

Czechoslovakia extends east and west for more than 500 miles through the central part of Europe. It is a landlocked country no part of which touches the seacoast. However, it is located so that it can use three important rivers for carrying products in and out of the country. The Elbe river leads to the North Sea, the Oder River to the Baltic Sea and the Danube River to the Black Sea. In addition to good river transportation, railroad lines leading to other countries of Europe crisscross the country in all directions.

Before World War II Czechoslovakia traded with many of the countries of Europe but now the Communist-controlled government limits this trade principally to certain other countries that are friendly to the U.S.S.R.



An artist decorates pottery at a Czech china factory. Czech dishes and pottery are known throughout the world.

**Cities.** Almost one million people live in Prague, Czechoslovakia's capital and largest city. It is easily reached from any part of the country, and is connected by airline with all parts of Europe. Prague is a great railroad center, and its position on a branch of the Elbe River makes it a shipping center as well. The city is near coal fields and lies in a farming region. Although Prague is a great manufacturing center and the largest trading area of the country, its many churches have won for it the title, City of a Hundred Towers.

The second largest city, Brno, manufactures woolen goods and hardware. Moravská Ostrava has iron and steel plants. Pilsen produces heavy machinery and cut glass. Close to the point where Czechoslovakia, Austria, and Hungary meet, Bratislava is an important port on the Danube River.

**Faith and freedom.** Czechoslovakia is a young nation in an ancient land. It was made

up by uniting several small states among which were Bohemia, Moravia, and Slovakia. It is the home of "Good King Wenceslaus" of whom the Christmas carol tells. He was the Duke of Bohemia a thousand years ago. He worked to convert his people from the worship of false gods, and was martyred by his own pagan brother and mother. His body lies buried in the beautiful old Cathedral at Prague.

Prague is well-known for the special devotion to the little Infant Jesus, known as the "Infant of Prague." We often see statues of the Son of God, holding the earth in His hand to show that it belongs to Him and that He made it, and wants the love of all men's hearts on earth. The Infant of Prague could easily be the special patron of geography classes as well as of foreign missionaries.

Most of the Czechs are Catholics. However, the Communists gained control of the country and tried hard to do away with the

Church. Thousands of Czechs were arrested and sent as laborers to mining camps. Business men and owners of property as well as those who dared to speak against the Communists were jailed. Priests and bishops in Czechoslovakia were sent to prison. Archbishop Beran, who spoke out against the Communists, was arrested. Peasants in the little villages rioted, fighting for their priests with spades and pitchforks when Red soldiers came to take them away.

The people of all those unhappy countries, once they were enslaved, wished that they had been more wide awake to keep the hand of Communists from getting into power. They had not taken enough interest in their government. An alert people cannot be overcome by the Communists, but people must work to keep themselves free. Freedom is everybody's job.

**People and culture.** Sunny and fertile Czechoslovakia is a land of neat villages and tidy farms, with fields well-filled with flocks of fat geese, and big brown and white cows scattered over the rolling plains. Besides being excellent farmers, the Czech peasants are well educated, gay, musical, and friendly.

*All the great civilizations of the world have grown upon the foundations laid by farmers; in fact, farmers still carry the world upon their backs.*

—C. WISSLER

often one who owns and works a small farm. It was among the peasants of ancient times that learning and civilization began. Many peasants in the small farming countries of Europe are very well educated. In a few old countries, the peasant may still be unable to read or write, but even without book learning, he is one of the wisest of men for he has a culture handed down from father to son.

Most peasant women are at least high school graduates. They are excellent housewives. Their small cottages are gay, clean, and furnished in good taste. Potted flowers bloom on the window sills. Hand-embroidered towels, tablecloths, blankets, and bed linens show the housewife's skill. The women paint bright decorations around doors and windows. They make their own fine, gay peasant dresses. They also milk the cows, feed the pigs, care for the geese and the chickens, and help the men with field work. They are among the best homemakers in the world. Czech holidays are celebrated with music, dancing, and much feasting on roast goose and other good foods.

Czechoslovakia is the home of many of the old fairy tales which began in peasant folklore long ago. The school children were forbidden by the Communists to read these stories of handsome princes on milk-white steeds, of lovely princesses and fairy godmothers. Communists believe that all such pleasant imaginings should be done away with. They made the young people read dull books about the lives and history of the Communists.

## THE PEASANT

The word "peasant" is one that we seldom hear in America. It means a person who tills the soil, and in Europe a peasant is

Except in places where wars and bad governments have ruined people and land, the peasant knows how to keep his soil in good condition. Peasant farming methods usually mean hand work on only a few acres. Peasants use small tools and implements and have a few horses or oxen to plow and haul. Animal wastes and useless vegetable material, such as straw, are put back into the land by the careful peasant, and so the soil is saved and improved. Such a program requires animals and mixed crops, as well as hand labor. Only a small farm can be well cared for in this manner. The peasant with his family tends the soil with loving care. Indeed, he knows that his children's food and the needs of many others de-

pend on this care. He thinks of his grandchildren and of their children for hundreds of years to come, and he would feel guilty of crime if he ruined their land for a few quick crops without much labor.

Peasant farms need more work per acre than do modern large scale farms. However, the well managed peasant farm produces more than the modern large farm, acre for acre. For example, the average yield of wheat to the acre in the United States, where modern methods and big machinery are used, is about 13½ bushels per acre.

The average yield in some countries where small patches are raised by hand labor follows:

Denmark	over 40 bushels per acre.
Holland	" " " " "
Scotland	" " " " "
Belgium	between 30 and 40 bushels.
Ireland	" " " " "
Sweden	" " " " "
Germany	" " " " "
Switzerland	" " " " "
Italy	between 20 and 30 bushels.

Much the same differences are found in other crops. For instance the average yield on large American potato farms is 114 bushels per acre. German farms produce 250 bushels per acre; Belgian farms, 305 bushels. This difference exists in spite of the fact that the United States has naturally rich, fertile soil. We see from these government figures that the well-managed small farm produces more food than other types because the peasant raises a number of different crops and animals, and uses hand labor.

Vegetable and animal waste cannot be properly returned to the soil when large-scale farming is done with machinery. Within a few years we have ruined vast areas of our American farm land. Much of our good topsoil has been lost by erosion, and only poor subsoil remains. On the other hand, the small, peasant-owned farms of some of the European countries have been tilled by hand for thousands of years and the soil improves all the time.

The peasant usually has a large family of children, who grow up helping in the work of their farm and home. The outdoor work and home-grown food give them rugged health and strong bodies. The peasants of Europe commonly eat heavy "black bread" made of barley and other whole grains. It is so wholesome that people could live and keep healthy on such bread alone.

The peasant family has its own culture. Graceful and lively folk dances are part of every holiday celebration in European farm areas. Each country has its own dances and its own folk music and folk songs. The folk songs of the peasants are the source from which the great composers got many of the melodies that they wrote into their famous operas and symphonies and other masterpieces.

The peasant's wife and daughters learn to cook, to weave and spin, to sew and to embroider, to produce much that is needed for the home and clothing. The women's dresses do not change every year with changing fashions. Instead, they differ from place to place, so that each district and each village has its own style. The clothing is strong, made to last for years, and is often decorated with lace and embroidery produced with pride by skillful fingers. Peasant women's costumes are gay, beautiful, and becoming. They are also modest. The folk costume is a form of art work which each girl can produce to her own satisfaction. In many parts of Europe people wear modern-style clothing for everyday, and bring out the old colorful dresses only on festivals. But the peasants are always the slowest to change their own good ways.

The peasant is usually a religious man. He knows that God sends the rain and the sunshine, makes his crops grow and his cattle and fowls increase. He and his family live close to the church and his house and his fields must be blessed by the priest. The members of his family pray and sing hymns together. Numberless saints have come from peasant families. Saint Isidore, patron of farmers everywhere, was a Spanish peasant, father of a family, who guided the plow while he talked with angels.

"Sin has made work on the land laborious, but before ever sin came, God had given man the earth to till, as the noblest of pursuits in the natural order. Bending over the land like a doctor over a patient, the farmer gives her his loving care. The countryman's way of life is founded upon the family. The worker upon the land stands for the order willed by God that man is to master things, not things to master man. The Church has always blessed you farmers in a special way, and we invoke blessings upon the work of your hands, from which God's holy altar receives the bread and wine."

—POPE PIUS XII TO THE ITALIAN FARMERS



Austrians rest and play in a park in Vienna, near the statue of Johann Strauss, famous composer of beautiful waltzes.

### 13. Austria: Land and People

Austria, Hungary, and some of the Balkan states are sometimes called Danubian countries because they lie partly in the region drained by the great Danube River. Austria was part of a large country called Austria-Hungary until the end of World War I. Then it became an independent country, about twice the size of Switzerland. Against the will of many Austrians, their nation was

made a part of Germany in 1938; and not until Germany's defeat in World War II, did Austria regain its independence.

**Surface and resources.** The Alps Mountains, which extend from Switzerland into Austria, occupy most of the country. Austria is famous for beautiful scenery, and for the strenuous sports of mountain climbing, skiing, tobogganing, and skating. One province





Young travelers in the Austrian Tirol pause before a roadside shrine. Such shrines dot the roadsides.

of Austria most famous for mountain scenery is called the Tirol.

Because Austria lacks coal, electric power is important. Mountain waterfalls supply some electricity for homes, factories, and railroads. The main occupations of the people include forestry, farming, and cattle raising. Although there are a few minerals available, mining is not important. Some manufacturing is done in many small cities and towns in the mountain valleys.

The best farm land is found in the lowlands of eastern Austria. This region is part of the Danube Valley, and it occupies about one tenth of the land.

**Vienna.** More than one fourth of the people of Austria live in Vienna, the capital, one of the largest cities of Europe. Vienna's art galleries, colleges, and universities are famous throughout the world. Situated on the Danube River, where trade routes meet, Vienna is Austria's greatest trading center. Raw materials are easily shipped to the city,

and manufactured products easily sent out.

Vienna is a beautiful city with wide streets and fine parks. The people are famous for their good nature, kindness, and gaiety. Travelers from all over the world love to visit Vienna and other parts of Austria.

**People and background.** In ancient times this mountainous land was settled by Celtic tribes, like those of northern France and Belgium, of Ireland and Scotland. It was once a Roman province, and was later overrun and settled by many different tribes and nations. It was also part of Charlemagne's Holy Roman Empire.

When the pagan Hungarians were on the warpath and came pouring out of Russia long ago, German armies managed to stop them midway. The German Emperor set up a new state to be a kind of fender or bumper between the Hungarians and the civilized Christian lands. This state came to be called the East Border, or Austria.

The Catholic Faith was planted in Austria in ancient times while the country was a Roman province. Saint Severinus built a monastery near Vienna, and from there he and his companion monks made journeys throughout the region. The country was at that time being invaded by warlike tribes. The good monks spent their time preaching, converting, and baptizing sinners, feeding the hungry and helping victims of the war. Saint Severinus begged warring kings to stop fighting, and obtained pardon for people condemned to be punished. He died in Vienna, with "Praise God" on his lips.

Saint Rupert, a Benedictine monk, also traveled and preached the Faith in Austria long ago. He founded a monastery of Benedictines at Salzburg. Monks have lived, worked, and prayed in this old monastery since it was built twelve hundred years ago.

**Austria today.** Austria was ruled by emperors for many years, but it is now a democratic republic. Salzburg is a famous old city. It has a great university, interesting industries, and it is also the birthplace of the great musical composer, Mozart.

Innsbruck is another interesting old city with a great university, founded three hundred years ago. It is in the mountain district called the Tirol.

Towns and farms are neat and well kept. Forests on the mountains are preserved and renewed. Peasants plow, sow, and harvest crops even from steep slopes.

Austrians are lovers of music, of festivals, of mountain climbing, and winter sports. In summer many of the young people go on month-long hiking trips, or on all-summer river voyages with folding canoes that can be carried overland when necessary.

The people of Austria speak German and are nearly all Catholics. Instead of "Good morning" or "Hello," people say, "Bless God" or "Praised be Jesus Christ." The towns and villages all have fine churches, well attended by the people. Nearly every farm also has a small stone chapel, painted snow white. Inside is usually a home-made altar, covered with spotless linen and fresh flowers in vases, and a blue and white statue of God's mother.

### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Answer each question in a sentence.

1. Where does Czechoslovakia get its name?
2. What resources have helped make Czechoslovakia a manufacturing country?
3. What does the word "peasant" mean?
4. What is the name of Czechoslovakia's capital and largest city?
5. What important river runs through Austria? What mountain range?

### CITIZENS of the WORLD

Scattered across the world there is a race of dark-haired people who have their own language and their own ways. They are a separate nation, apart from all those among whom they move and make their living. They are the Gypsies. Their race is so old that its beginnings are lost in the dim past. Far back in the Bronze Age they were traveling the continent of Europe, teaching people the use of metals. The Gypsies have not changed much with the ages. Today they still live as nomads, driving from place to place in covered wagons or ancient automobiles. They live out of doors and cook their meals over campfires. They trade, and mend pots and pans, and dance and play the violin. No fair or holiday celebration would be complete without the gay costumes and the entertainment of the Gypsies.

The Gypsy is a citizen of the world. The smoke of his campfire rises into the sky of every nation. He lives without the comforts which most of us need in our civilized life. He gets along without our thick-walled houses, furnace heat, soft beds, and comfortable chairs. He uses no refrigerators to cool his food or gas to cook it, no telephones, no electric lights that go on at the push of a button, no bath tubs, nor hot water that runs from a tap. All such things, together with good food and stylish clothing, make up part of what is called a high standard of living. These comforts surround many of us, and we should miss them if they were gone. Yet, for each of these comforts, we give up some liberty. Modern comforts are expensive. They must be paid for with money, which means that someone must have a daily job. These comforts also must be cleaned, repaired, and cared for. We, who have these comforts, cannot, any morning after breakfast, suddenly pick up our home and travel away beyond the next line of blue hills. We cannot take a day off from work, any time we like, and go fishing. Even as children in school we are preparing to make a living at some future date. Our life of daily work has begun in the classroom; we, too, are tied down.



Daily work and a moderate use of the comforts of civilization are not, of course, bad. They are necessary for most of us. But we must understand other peoples' points of view. The Gypsy does not want the comforts of civilization. He is contented with his standard of living. He has chosen liberty.

Yet Gypsies have done much for civilization. In their wanderings they have carried arts and skills from one nation to another. They have preserved and added to the beautiful old folk music, dances, arts, and crafts of all the countries in which they have lived. The wild, sweet music of Gypsy fiddlers has been borrowed for the works of the world's great composers. Gypsy women's clothes, handmade and gaily colored, are graceful and very modest.

Across the continents the Gypsies still wander. They are often blamed for petty thievery and other

crimes committed by others who are nomads but are not Gypsies. Thousands of Gypsies are Catholics, many of them devout. A holy picture or statue may often be seen inside a Gypsy wagon. Catholic Gypsies love the dark statue of Our Lady of Czestochowa, in Poland, whose face has Gypsy features; and the Black Madonna of Montserrat, in Spain. They have their own Gypsy saint, Sara, whose shrine is in southeastern France. Traveling Gypsies often make pilgrimages to these and other famous shrines. There have been Gypsy Catholic priests, scholars, actors, and musicians.

Gypsy families live and move together. They make their own simple pleasures. They think that it is better to have happiness than many comforts and gadgets, and they have added much to the happiness of the entire world.



Gypsies gather from all over Europe to honor the Gypsy, Saint Sara. At a Mediterranean seaport in France statues of saints are put in a boat and sent out to sea.

## 14. Hungary: Land and People

Hungary is sometimes called Land of the Plain, because most of the country is level. Many thousands of years ago the area was covered by a sea only a few feet deep. Streams flowing from mountains into this area carried soil that eventually formed a great, grassy plain.

**The people and the Faith.** The people of Hungary are a mixture of many nations. Some of them lived in the fertile Danube Valley as peasants and herders long before history was written. Huns of Mongolia, in Asia, overran the region but were driven back. Then Hungarian tribes from lands now part of Russia, near the Black Sea, came pouring in by the thousands on their wiry little horses. They were looking for fertile land, and found it here. The plains looked like the grasslands they had left. They settled down and stayed, caring for their flocks of sheep and herds of cattle and horses. This happened about eleven hundred years ago.

Europe was already dotted with monasteries of Benedictine monks who were carrying on the slow work of civilizing and planting the Faith with deep, solid roots among the people. A monk from Maria Einsiedeln monastery in Switzerland came with other missionaries to teach the wild Hungarians. His name was St. Wolfgang.

As the Church began to work among the people, some of them gave up their wild pagan ways. Finally the Duke of Hungary himself was baptized, and his son, Saint Stephen, grew up in the Faith. Stephen became King, and with his pious German Queen spread the Faith among the people and made Hungary a Catholic country. The crown of St. Stephen, which was given him by the Pope, has been kept as a holy relic at Budapest for centuries. It has a circle of

jeweled pictures of Christ and the saints, and on top of it is the cross. Hungary has been a Catholic country since St. Stephen's time.

**Iron curtain country.** Hungary was for a time united with Austria under one ruler. It has had a long history of wars and changes of government. After World War II the Communists made Hungary a slave state behind the iron curtain. The Reds took away the peasants' farm land and turned it into collective farms. Those who made any complaint were savagely killed or sent away to slave camps.

Most of the Hungarians are Catholics, but there are many non-Catholics, including Jews, in the country. The Communist government persecuted the Catholics and tried to wipe out the Faith entirely, but the peasants held out stubbornly. The Communists also persecuted the Jews and other business men owning stores and factories. The Red government took over their property, leaving the owners penniless. Many Hungarians escaped to America and other free countries in Europe.

The great Cardinal Mindszenty, who was born of Hungarian peasant parents, was known far and wide for his kindness to the poor. When the German Nazis overran Hungary the Cardinal hid many terrified Jews from the secret police. He spoke up against the bad deeds of the Nazis, and was put into prison by them. When the war was over the Communists took control of the Hungarian government. Cardinal Mindszenty again spoke out for liberty and justice. The Communists put him into prison and tortured him until he lost his mind. So the Church has many holy martyrs who suffer for Christ, not only in the first centuries long ago, but up until this present day.

# HOW COMMUNISTS TAKE OVER A COUNTRY

Jesus Christ, the Son of God, come to earth with a plan to conquer the world. To carry out His plan Christ set up a Kingdom, a world-wide Church, whose members were to work till the end of time to win the souls of all men. Christ's Kingdom is one of order and truth. Living in this Kingdom means happiness, love for God and man, and life forever. In Christ's Kingdom people are free, living in peace, without fear.

The ancient enemy of God, the evil spirit, has built on evil imitation of Christ's Kingdom. It is called Communism, and its members are Communists. Many Communists start out as good people who are confused in their thinking. They are soon taught to do evil, in order to set up Satan's kingdom of evil in the world.

Just as the Church has a head in Rome, so Communists have a head, in Soviet Russia. As

the Church is world-wide, so the Communists have people in all countries working to set up their world-wide state. Communists work by hate. They stir up disorder by causing war between rich and poor and between nations. They try to hide the truth by confusing men's minds. They repeat over and over a great number of lies which many people soon believe. They cause people to be unhappy, to hate and fear one another.

Human life means nothing to Communists; they will gladly starve a million people to death if by so doing they can gain power. Where they are successful, the results are slavery, fear, and death. Communism is the exact opposite of Christ's Kingdom. Communists persecute Catholics everywhere, trying to destroy the Church and to wipe out the Name of God from men's hearts. The evil spirit knows well his great enemy!



Communists, with men in labor, government, and police power decided the time had come.



Red leaders held late meetings. After honest members went home, they voted to strike.



With workers on strike, business stood still and people starved; panic followed everywhere.



Communists told the people: "Farmers are hiding the food. Take over the farms!"



Riots broke out. Communists took charge and ruled by force; they urged rioters on.



The president was shot. A secret Communist spy in the government took over, promising order.





Communists set fire to food supplies; blamed Catholics and others; executed many.



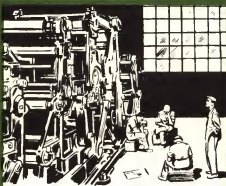
Food was scarce. Communists gave ration tickets for food only to Communist friends.



Strikers were ordered back to work or refused ration tickets; many families starved.



Bishops, priests, and other citizens who told the truth were seized during the night and shot.



The new "president" ruled alone. Editors who protested were refused paper for printing.



Many people were sent away in cattle cars to work on projects. Slavery had come.



Factories now belonged to the state. Anyone who took a day off was punished.



Formers were told what to raise. Hiding anything meant death. Crops sold cheaply.



Parents were punished when children told that they listened to forbidden newscasts.



Brothers and Sisters were turned away. Communists now taught in the schools.



Teachers told pupils all good comes from Communism; they may lie and cheat for it.

So a few Communists were able to take over a great country by force and violence, because its people were not alert and well informed enough to defeat them. Freedom of government, of speech, and of worship were gone. The nation was a slave state, and its people lived in fear and misery.



Twin cities at Buda and Pest lie on either side of the Danube.

Washday in Hungary in a country district where it is easier to take clothes to water than water to clothes.



**Great farming country.** Black, rich soil makes the Hungarian plain a great farming region. In some places, where the soil is sandy and swampy, the land must be drained before it is farmed. Winters are cold and summers are hot, as they are in other regions having a continental climate. Such places have wide areas far from the ocean, with its tempering effect upon heat and cold. Moderate amounts of rain and snow fall in Hungary.

When people first began to farm the land, they banded together in villages to protect themselves against invaders. Many farmers still live in villages of one-story houses. Hungary is often described as a great bread basket, because a large amount of wheat is raised throughout the land. Corn is the second most important crop. Grapes are grown in the south. Most Hungarian farmers do their work by hand with small tools.

Some of the world's most skillful cowboys ride about on horseback caring for herds of cattle on the great plains in the eastern part

of Hungary. Here are the grasslands, where the rainfall is lightest. Flocks of sheep and fields of waving grain, as well as fertile farms, have long given the Hungarian peasants a prosperous livelihood. Much of the grassland has been plowed for crops, so there is not so much land for grazing as there was a hundred years ago.

**Manufacturing and transportation.** Most of the products manufactured are from materials produced on farms. Hundreds of boats use the Danube River, which flows through this country. Railroads extending between northern and southern Europe cross Hungary. Although there are some good roads, many others need improvement. Hungary does not touch the ocean or any large sea, so products to be exported must be sent through other countries.

**Budapest.** Budapest, capital and chief city, has a population of over a million. The city was built in two parts: Buda, on the west of the Danube River, and Pest, on the east. Bridges connect the two. Budapest is an important manufacturing city and is also a railroad center. Because of its large flour mills, it is sometimes called the Minneapolis of Europe.

#### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Complete each statement using the correct word or words in parentheses.

1. Most of Hungary is a (mountainous region, rocky plateau, grassy plain).
2. Most of the people of Hungary are (Catholics, Protestants, Jews).
3. Hungary's capital and chief city is (Vienna, Budapest, Prague).
4. Hungary's leading industry is (agriculture, manufacturing, mining).
5. Hungary's most important cereal crop is (wheat, corn, rice).
6. After World War II Hungary became (part of Austria, an iron curtain country, a kingdom).

## 15. The Balkan Peninsula

Some people link together lands drained by the Danube River, calling them Danubian countries. It is more usual, however, to consider as one unit all the countries which lie on the Balkan Peninsula. The Balkan countries are Yugoslavia, Romania, Bulgaria, Albania, and Greece, with the small part of Turkey which lies in Europe. The Balkan Peninsula lies in southeastern Europe, partly surrounded by the Adriatic, the Ionian, the Mediterranean, the Aegean, and the Black Seas. This part of Europe is separated from Asia by narrow water bodies called the Dardanelles, the Sea of Marmara, and the Bosphorus.

Much of the Balkan Peninsula is mountainous, but parts of it lie in the fertile Danube Valley. The Balkan countries that lie along the seashores are fringed with beautiful islands. Here gray-green olive trees grow among the rocks, and little fishing villages hug the shores. Shepherds and goat-herds spend the days with their flocks, playing their handmade flutes which sound like bird calls on the lonely wooded crags.

The Balkan countries have been in the middle of nearly every European war, and they have often been badly governed by their own rulers. The people are lovers of liberty, but have often been conquered by other nations. Some of the Balkan people are Slavs, some belong to other races. Many of them are Moslems, many belong to Eastern Churches like the Greek Orthodox. Very many are Catholics, and the land was crossed and recrossed by saints and missionaries hundreds of years ago.

Saints Cyril and Methodius were famous missionaries in this region. They were brothers, born in Greece, shortly after the death of Charlemagne. During this time the Bene-

dictines were building monasteries all over western Europe, leaving the Catholic Faith rooted deep among the people wherever they settled. However, in southeastern Europe there were still many pagans among the Slav people. Cyril and Methodius grew up and studied to become priests. The Pope sent them out to convert the Slav people.

Since many of these people were uncivilized, with no written language, the two saintly brothers learned the Slav tongues well and invented an alphabet with which to write them. They translated the Gospels and other holy books into Slavonic. They wrote them down in their new alphabet, which is the one used to this day in Russia and some of its neighboring Slav nations. Saints Cyril and Methodius preached among the peoples of Poland, of what is now Czechoslovakia, and some of the Balkan lands.

In some of the Balkan countries stand great monasteries at least a thousand years old. Some of them are in wild, wooded mountainous valleys, others on lonely islands in the Mediterranean or the Adriatic seas. Their chapels glow with gold and jewels, and with paintings in rich colors. In them monks chant God's praises and Christ is offered in holy Mass for the sinners of the world. These old monasteries are part of the Eastern Church, still cut off from Rome.

These monks live lives of fasting, prayer, and penance. The Pope has asked Catholics everywhere to pray for the return to Catholic unity of the Eastern Churches with their many pious and good people. In Balkan countries when Communists seized the government, monasteries and churches were gradually closed or turned into museums; and priests, monks, and Sisters were killed or left to die in poverty.



What great river flows through the Balkans into the Black Sea? Through which Balkan countries does it pass?



Why do the products of Greece differ from those of the other Balkan States?



If you could visit these five countries, where would you choose to go and why?

# THE PEOPLE OF THE BALKANS:

## Their Lands and Work

Yugoslavia is divided into three main regions: 1) the lowland, coastal region along the Adriatic Sea, where few people live; 2) the mountains, where the people raise sheep, work in the mines, or are lumbermen; 3) the northeastern lowland, where the soil is fertile for farming.

Romania is a farming region. About eighty per cent of the people work on small farms with simple tools. Forests on the mountain slopes make lumbering an important occupation. The trees are cut for lumber and other wood products, and also for fuel. Rumania has many oil wells, and ranks next to Russia among European countries mining petroleum. Much of the oil is shipped to other countries, through pipelines running to parts on the Black Sea and the Danube River.

Bulgaria is about the size of Ohio. It has a belt of mountains—the Balkans—extending east and west, across the middle of the country. North and south of the mountains are wide plains, which provide fine areas for farming. The mountains give Bulgaria two climates, both of which are good for the raising of crops. The north has cold, snowy winters, and the rainfall comes in the spring and summer. Cool-weather crops are grown there. The south has warmer winters and a fertile soil suitable for such warm-weather produce as tobacco, cotton, rice, and fine flowers.

Albania is a small, mountainous country with a few swampy lowlands. Her rugged hills are rich in forests and her mountain streams could produce electric power, but the main industry is, despite the rugged surface, farming.

Much of Greece is made up of mountainous peninsulas and many small islands. Most of the people live in the valleys and on the narrow coastal plains. The coast line is broken and has many good harbors. Because the land is rugged and not very fertile, many Greeks have become fishermen and sailors. The fine harbors and the abundance of fish in the surrounding sea aid the people to make a living. Greece, a small nation, sails ships to all parts of the world. There are many farmers, although much of the country cannot be cultivated. The farms are located in the valleys and on plains near the coast. Sheep and goats graze on the mountain sides.

Turkey in Europe is also part of the Balkan Peninsula, but we will study the country later when we take up the countries of Asia.

## Living in Yugoslavia

Yugoslavia lies just across the Adriatic Sea from Italy. The country is divided into three main regions. Land along the Adriatic coast is shut off from the rest of the country by mountains. It has a moderate climate. The summers there are hot and dry, and the winters are mild and moist. Few people live in the coastal region. The main occupation is farming. There are few seaports because the high mountains prevent easy transportation from the interior to the coast. Many islands are scattered along the coast.

Yugoslavia's second region is made up of mountains and valleys. The mountains have not been explored carefully, so their true value in minerals is unknown. A few products are mined. Great forests of oak and beach trees are found in the mountain region and a small amount of lumbering is carried on. The people who live on the mountains raise sheep or work as miners or lumbermen. Those who live in the valleys use the fertile soil for farming.

Northeastern Yugoslavia is a lowland, drained by the Danube River and some of its branches. The winters of this region are cold, with some snow, and the summers are hot, with light rain. The soil is fertile for farming.

Yugoslavia's capital, Belgrade, is built on a rocky, white cliff on the south side of the Danube River. This city is an important river port and rail center. It is on the railroad route leading to Istanbul, Turkey.

Yugoslavia produces few manufactured articles. More than eighty per cent of the people are farmers. Modern machinery is used in some parts of Yugoslavia; but in many places oxen are still used to pull wooden plows and wagons, and peasant agriculture is unchanged.



**People and history.** Yugoslavia became a state only recently, but people have lived in this part of Europe for centuries. Some of them were part of the old Roman Empire and there were Catholics among them in early days. The old names for those ancient countries are still heard when we read the lives of the saints. Pannonia, Macedonia, Dalmatia, Croatia, Serbia, and Slovenia were some of the ancient names.

World War I started in Serbia. After the war was over, the different nations were united in one kingdom called Yugoslavia, or the kingdom of the Serbs, Croats, and Slovenes. Croatia is one of the important parts of Yugoslavia. Its people make up about one third of the country. The Croats are a Catholic people, at one time part of Charlemagne's empire. They were the first among the Slavs to become Christians. They are a cultured people with fine churches and schools. The Benedictines and other Orders have long had houses there.

The Croats use the same alphabet that we do, (the Latin alphabet) and are more European than the Serbs. The Serbs use the Russian alphabet of Saints Cyril and Methodius. They are more nearly related to the Slavs and the Turks, and belong to the Greek Orthodox Church.

Dalmatia is another ancient country which is part of modern Yugoslavia. It is a land of fertile valleys and wooded mountains. Honest, intelligent, and friendly Dalmatian peasants more than six feet tall walk with the dignity of kings, clad in their red, blue, white, and gold homespun costumes of linen and wool. They will share their last bit of bread and cheese with a stranger. The Dalmatians are an old Catholic people. The great scholar, Saint Jerome, who translated the Bible in very early times was a Dalmatian.

Another nation united in modern Yugoslavia is Montenegro. The ancestors of the Montenegrins were tall, hardy, handsome people called Serbs, who fled from the Turks long ago. They took up their stand in a rugged region of rocky mountains covered with dark forests, which they called Montenegro—Black Mountain. The Montenegrins are followers of the Greek Church. Together with the Croats and others, they fought off the Moslem Turks for five hundred years.

In the Black Mountain country hardy peasants and mountaineers live on scanty food scratched from tiny patches of corn, cabbage, and potatoes among the rocks and mountain ravines. They produce a little cheese from their sheep and goats, and have their own homemade wine. The mountains are heavily forested with oak trees, which are always dropping acorns to the ground. Hardy mountain pigs scramble about and feed on the acorns, producing lean, well-flavored pork for the people's use.

Modern conveniences, doctors, and hospitals are few among the Montenegro peasants, but these people are very strong and hardy. Most of the farm work and carrying of burdens is done by women who are as strong as men. The men have been used to fighting wars for hundreds of years. They can go for days without food and continue to carry on without concern. They are handsome, graceful, and often six or even seven feet tall. Many live to be a hundred years old. Their families are very large.

**A troubled land.** During World War II the kingdom of Yugoslavia was constantly torn by war, and afterwards a Communist form of government, much like that of Russia, was set up. People who spoke against the Communist rulers were punished savagely, and Catholics had much to suffer for



In a Catholic part of Yugoslavia a peasant woman presents her little daughter before the statue of Our Lady. This is the last stage of a long pilgrimage they have made. Notice the beautiful peasant costumes enriched by hand embroidery.

their Faith. The great Archbishop Stepinac was put into prison, as were many other churchmen who held out for liberty. Many people from the nations of Yugoslavia have come to America, where they have worked hard and become good citizens. However, once the Communist government took away the people's freedom they were not allowed to leave their own country.

**Two seaports.** Fiume (called by the Yugoslavs, Rieka) and Trieste are two seaports on the Adriatic Sea that have had a troubled history. Both cities have been claimed by Yugoslavia and Italy. After World War II, Italy lost Fiume to Yugo-

slavia. Trieste was taken from Italy and is now a free port under the United Nations.

### Living in Albania

Albania is a small mountainous country, just across the Adriatic Sea from Italy. In the valleys, Albanians raise corn, wheat, and cattle; in the lowlands along the coast, they grow oranges and lemons, as is done in Florida and California. Mosquitoes breed in coastal swamp lands, so the Albanians drain the swamps often to guard against dreaded malaria.

This rugged, little country, wedged in between Greece and Yugoslavia at the narrow opening to the Adriatic, has long been bypassed by trade, commerce, and modern industry. The proud and handsome Albanians lived in their mountain villages and cared for their herds of cattle and their little farms. Through many centuries these hardy mountaineers have had to fight off the armies of other nations. Though they have sometimes been conquered by larger countries, they have usually managed to keep their freedom. Albanians are brave and warlike. They speak of themselves as the sons of the mountain eagle.

Most Albanians are Moslems; a number of them are Catholics. After Communists took control of the country, some Albanians escaped from the iron curtain into Italy or Greece. However, most of them kept what liberty they could in their mountain homes, like other freedom-loving people, and at times fighting fiercely for it.

The country was taken because it was important to the war-minded Communist rulers. It provided places for air bases, harbors for warships, and land bases for armies to threaten Italy and Greece, two remaining free countries in the area.



**Living in Romania**

A land of mountains, valleys, and plains, Romania borders on both the Danube River and the Black Sea. The Danube, the second-longest river in Europe, passes through several other countries before reaching Romania. It forms a part of the southern boundary of that country and flows on into the Black Sea.

Romania has hot summers and cold winters, and a moderate amount of rain. It is a farming country, and four fifths of its people are peasants. More than half the cultivated land produces corn and wheat.

Cattle and sheep are raised on large areas of grassland. Horses, mules, and oxen are used as work animals. Hogs and chickens are raised.

**Bucharest.** Bucharest, capital and major city, is located in the rich farming region of southern Romania. Bucharest has good rail connections with the rest of the country; it is an important grain market and manufacturing center.

**Lumbering, manufacturing, and transportation.** Most lumber is cut near railroads or rivers, so that transportation to market is easily managed. There are a few factories in the cities and towns. Power for machinery is obtained by petroleum, natural gas, and coal mined in the country. Some electricity, produced by water power, is used. The Danube River is used for most of Romania's transportation. At the mouth of the river, there is a large delta. This land is low and is usually flooded at high water. The river freezes for two or three months in winter. Railroads connect the chief cities. Most of the highways are dirt roads.

**Past and present.** Romania was an ancient Roman colony called Dacia. Although it has been overrun and settled by many warring nations, its people still speak a modern form of Latin with some Slavic words added. The Romanians have long been Christians, but only a few of them are Catholics. Most belong to the Church of Romania, which is separated from Rome like the Greek Orthodox Church.

The people, together with other Balkan nations, fought off the Turkish Moslems for years. Even after their country was hemmed in by the Moslems, the Romanians were never really conquered though they did have to pay heavy tribute to Turkey. They became entirely free about a hundred years ago.

Romania has rich natural resources in the fertile Danube Valley soil and great grassy plains. Besides these, it has oil wells, coal for fuel, natural gas, and plenty of forests. The country has both mountains and seacoast, with plenty of good fish. The Danube River is a great waterway for shipping. The Danube overflows on the river delta lands every year, and crops are raised here as they are in Egypt. Having a Black Sea coast line, Romanians send their own ships out for trade, chiefly to ports in the Mediterranean.

Romanian peasants were serfs until modern times, and many are today unable to read or write. The Communists took over the unfortunate country after World War II, and ruled it by orders from Moscow, the Russian Communist capital. The cruel tyrants at once started making over the country according to their ideas. Hundreds of thousands of people were sent to prison labor camps. Many of these were priests, teachers, state officials, and army men; in fact, anyone who dared to object to Communist rule. Then came the turn of all farmers who owned more than about a hundred acres of land. They and their families were put out of their homes in the middle of the night, with only as much baggage as they could carry in their hands. The Communists took these families to far-away places. There they could only wander about and beg, or die of cold and starvation. The Communists took their farms and turned them into their government-owned "collective farms."

The Communists drove out Brothers and Sisters who taught in Catholic schools, and those who did hospital work or cared for orphans and for the old people or the poor. These Religious were given fifteen days to leave their houses, which the state took

over. The state then directed all the teaching, so that Communist teachers might control the children's minds. Old people were made to work hard on the state farms; orphans were put into Communist homes so that they could be taught that there is no God. In Romania people could see how the Communist ideas worked out.

#### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Complete each of the following sentences by filling in the correct word or words in blanks.

1. The Balkan countries are situated on a \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The surface of the Balkan countries is made up largely of \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The Balkan country whose boundary touches Italy is \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The capital city of Yugoslavia is \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Two seaports on the Adriatic Sea that have at different times been claimed by both Yugoslavia and Italy are \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The small Balkan country that lies between Greece and Yugoslavia is \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Romania has an outlet to the sea through the \_\_\_\_\_.
8. The Balkan country where oil is an important natural resource is \_\_\_\_\_.

#### Living in Bulgaria

Bulgaria, a land of mountains and plains, borders on the Black Sea. The people do a small amount of shipping at Black Sea ports, and on the Danube, which drains the great plain in northern Bulgaria. The land produces little coal or other minerals.

**Sofia.** Sofia is the capital and the manufacturing center. Its factories are small; they produce such articles as rugs, flour, and sugar. Manufacturing is of little importance in Bulgaria, because the people make many of the things they need in their own homes. Although Sofia is located on a railroad line running from central Europe

to Istanbul, it conducts only a small amount of foreign trade.

**Peasant life.** Eight of every ten Bulgarians are farmers, living in little villages surrounded by their fields, their herds, and flocks. These Bulgarian peasants have little machinery and few modern luxuries, but they live a healthy outdoor life and eat fresh foods grown on their own acres. They have large families of children, and of all people in the world they are said to live the longest. They are sun tanned and rosy-checked, with fine figures and strong muscles.

**Peasant farming methods.** One reason for the good health and long life of the peasants is said to be the kind of soil on which their food is grown. Certainly it is not due to doctors, hospitals, and medicines, of which they have few. Peasants of these old mountain countries return all vegetable and animal waste to the land and use no strong chemicals for fertilizer; thus the crops are fed in nature's own way. Food-

stuffs contain minerals which they take from the soil on which they are grown. The flesh, eggs, or milk of animals contain materials found in the crops on which they feed. If the soil lacks certain necessary things, so do the foodstuffs grown on it. So the health of the people reflects not only the sunlight, the fresh air, and the kind of work they do, but also the soil on which they live.

American scientific farm experts have only recently found that much of our own food was grown on worn-out soil. Crops may be forced to grow by giving them strong chemicals, but sometimes certain minerals and vitamins are lacking. Thus many people who have plenty to eat do not get good, healthful food. Some American farmers are now returning to peasant practices of fertilizing the soil.

These Bulgarian peasants follow the ancient way of threshing grain from the straw by leading oxen around and around on it. A little sled with a live weight helps. Veils protect wearers from flying dust and chaff.





**Market day.** Bulgarian peasants in their interesting folk costumes come to the nearest town or city on Fridays—market day. Market day is a great occasion in many European countries, as well as in other parts of the world with a large peasant population. Ponies, donkeys, and oxen, loaded with baskets or drawing carts, bring into the Bulgarian market place milk-white cheese, wreaths of dry onions with stems braided together, yellow pumpkins, and sacks of beans and rice. Freshly butchered lambs and kids, beef and poultry, hundreds of eggs, and mounds of bright red peppers are piled up in the market place for sale and barter. On this one day each week, townspeople can buy what foodstuff they need from the farmers. The townsman depends upon the peasant, and without the products of the farm he cannot live. Farmers and their wives have a chance to visit and talk with friends on market day.

**Land of roses.** Beautiful roses are grown in the valleys of southern Bulgaria. Attar of roses, a valuable oil used in perfumes, is extracted from the petals. Often two hundred pounds of blossoms are needed to make one ounce of oil. Most of the world's attar of roses comes from Bulgaria.

**Iron curtain.** Bulgaria is another country which was taken over by Communists. Many of the peasants were forced to give up their ancient homes and precious acres. They were then settled on state-owned collective farms and made to work for the government, in the Soviet manner. Fear and hunger and punishment then became part of their lives. Many of the country's industries were taken over by the state.

There are only a few Catholics in Bulgaria. Most of the people belonged to the Bulgarian Orthodox Church. Under Communism, all religion was persecuted.

## Living in Greece

Greece is a small, mountainous country with many peninsulas and islands extending out into the Mediterranean system of inland seas. Climate and crops are of the Mediterranean type.

**Agriculture.** Only about one fifth of the land can be cultivated, yet agriculture is the main industry. The lower coastal plains are very fertile, but poorly drained, so that winter floods cover them for a long time each year. Most of the farm land is steep, rocky, and cut by many streams and gullies. The land is divided into small plots of one or two acres, each farmer owning a number of these little patches. Farm work is done by hand, with work animals. Even if the farmers could afford to buy farm machinery, it could hardly be used on such land.

The crops are planted in spring and autumn, and planting must be finished within a few days while soil and weather are right. Many thousands of farmers, each with his oxen, horses, mules, or water buffaloes, all set to work at once to plow and sow seed during these few days. At one time some modern machinery was put into use by large land owners in northern Greece, where there are some wide plains. However, these machines often broke down, and new parts were hard to get especially with wars going on in Europe. By the time the tractors were mended the precious planting season was gone.

The poorer farmer cannot take a chance with his crop which means life or death to him and his family. The Greek peasant usually prefers the surer, old-fashioned methods of farming. The cost of farming with tractors has also proved to be higher, in Greece, than farming with animals. The machines wear out; gasoline and parts are



A Greek peasant drives a load of tomatoes past the ruins of the beautiful old Temple of Neptune, built by Greeks about five years before Christ.

expensive. The oxen and buffaloes can feed on hay, straw, and grain raised on the farm, and they produce meat and fertilizer for the soil. Animals also increase on the farm, whereas farm machinery has to be replaced at a cost very great to a poor farmer. These are some of the reasons why peasants in Greece and some other countries still use their old, well-tried methods in agriculture.

The Greeks raise what they can on their rocky land. Their farms produce many types of food, but they are especially noted for the seedless raisins called currants. Greece produces most of the world's currant supply. The farms also produce grapes and wine, olive oil, figs, and fine tobacco. Mulberry trees are grown to feed silkworms, and a small amount of silk is produced. Sheep and goats clamber over the dry crags in search of grass.

**Past greatness.** Greece is one of the Mediterranean lands where civilization was once great and glorious. The cities of Greece with their ancient civilization long ago fell into decay. Many of the people who remain

are poorly fed and weak with disease. Many children die while young. People who have made a study of Greece, Mesopotamia, and neighboring countries say that here man and civilization have decayed because the soil has decayed.

Some of the soil lost its fertility long ago when Roman landowners let it be farmed by slaves, while they themselves lived in the cities, feasting and making merry. Many of the mountains and rocky islands, now bare, were once covered with trees. Greeks long ago cut down the trees for their ships of commerce and war. Erosion followed, and poor soil was left. Poor soil usually means poor people. Wars and bad governments also kept the land and the people from recovering.

**Troubled Greece.** Civil wars and wars with neighboring countries have often troubled Greece even up to modern times. The Greeks are brave, and they love their country, but such disorders left many of them homeless. Communists from Russia and other neighboring Soviet countries tried

hard to gain control of Greece as well as of other lands bordering the Mediterranean. They captured men and women in the small villages, put guns into their hands and made them work with the Soviet armies and fight against their own people. They destroyed peasant houses and lonely villages, and took away the children across the border into Soviet camps. There the Greek children were taught to be Communists, so they would go back in time and take over their own country. More than twenty-eight thousand children were stolen in this way, and their parents could not get them back.

In one village the Communists first

hanged the priest, then cut off his mother's hands, drove the men and women away to fight in their army, and took away their children. The women of one village, learning that the Communists were coming, hid their children in a ditch and covered them over. The Communists hung the mothers up in pine trees and burned their feet with hot coals. They beat them until they fainted. Fourteen women died of the torture, but not one told where the children were. Later when the Greek soldiers drove away the Communists, the remaining mothers went to the ditch and dug out the hungry but still living children. Many peasants left





Greek women, hired laborers, hoe their way across a field near bare Greek hills. Women will be paid in grain and potatoes to take home for winter months, not in money.

their farms for fear of the Communists and wandered homeless about the country.

The United States government did much to help the King and Queen of Greece restore order, drive out the Communists, and care for the hungry and homeless people. It was only after long, hard struggles for years that the Greeks regained their liberty.

**Land of ancient culture.** Much of our culture and our modern ideas come from ancient Greece. Our theaters, our music, our poetry, our architecture and sculpture had their start in the fine works of the great Greeks of long ago. Thomas Jefferson and other founding fathers of our American republic had read and studied the works of ancient Greek wise men and thinkers. Many of the ideas found in those works were written into our Constitution and laws.

**Cities.** Athens, the capital of Greece, is also its largest city. In ancient times, Athens was the center of Greek life and was famous for its temples and other fine buildings. The city was first built on a hill called the Acropolis; then it grew and spread over the plain. Ruins of the temples that were built at the top of the Acropolis may still be seen. Greek children, growing up, see all about them the mountains and seas, the cities and plains mentioned by the poet Homer three thousand years ago. Many travelers visit

Greece to inspect the ruins or to study Greek art and literature. The newer part of Athens has wide streets and fine buildings. Some buildings are made of marble, which is quarried near the city.

Athens is the chief trading center of Greece. In the city are flour mills and factories where cigarettes are made from tobacco grown in this region. There are warehouses for storing many different products and shops for the building and repair of locomotives and railroad cars.

Piraeus is the seaport for the city of Athens which is not located on the coast but a little way inland. This city is on the Aegean Sea and is the chief port of Greece. Another important port is Salonika, which has good rail connections with central Europe. Very many Greeks are sailors and fishermen, both at home and in the foreign countries to which they have emigrated.

Many Greeks live in the United States. Most of them arrived with very little money, and started working in some small industry. Soon they learned English, and by working hard and saving money, started in business for themselves. Most of them live in cities and own property. They make good, thrifty Americans and have added much to our country. Many of them are college professors, musicians, and artists. They are among our most law-abiding citizens.

**Some Greek islands.** Off the coast are numerous mountainous islands belonging to Greece. The best known and largest of them is the island of Crete in the Mediterranean Sea. Despite the rugged surface of the islands most of the people who live on them are farmers. They raise a few Mediterranean-type crops and graze sheep and goats. On the smaller islands off the west coast, currants are raised just as they are on the Greek mainland.

## PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Complete each statement by selecting the correct word or words in parentheses.

1. A Balkan country bordering the Black Sea is (Yugoslavia, Greece, Bulgaria).

2. Most of the people of Bulgaria are (farmers, miners, factory workers).

3. The river that forms part of the boundary between Bulgaria and Romania is the (Vistula, Po, Danube).

4. The only Balkan country that has a real Mediterranean climate is (Greece, Romania, Bulgaria).

5. The Balkan country which the Communists did not gain control of after World War II was (Yugoslavia, Greece, Albania).

6. Greek farmers are hindered most by (poor climate, rocky soil, poor transportation).

Capital cities. Copy the list of cities in column A. Then select the country from column B and match it with its capital.

A	B
1. Athens	Finland
2. Vienna	Poland
3. Belgrade	Greece
4. Budapest	Albania
5. Prague	Yugoslavia
6. Helsinki	Romania
7. Warsaw	Bulgaria
8. Tirana	Czechoslovakia
9. Sofia	Austria
10. Bucharest	Hungary

## Studying the Map of Eurasia

Use the map on the next two pages to work out the following map studies.

### A

1. The Union of Soviet Socialist Republics is the largest country in the world occupying a large part of two continents. Name the two continents of which it is a part. On which continent is most of the U.S.S.R. located? 2. Name the countries that bound the U.S.S.R. on the west. To which of these countries has the Communist influence been extended? 3. Much of the U.S.S.R.'s mineral wealth comes from the two mountain ranges that form part of the boundary between the European part and the Asiatic part. Name these mountains. 4. The people of the U.S.S.R. in Europe make great use of their rivers for transportation. Name three of these very important rivers. 5. The U.S.S.R. is handicapped by her lack of good seaports. Only those on the Black Sea are open throughout the year. Through what bodies of water would a ship have to pass in order to go from the Black Sea to the Mediterranean Sea?

### B

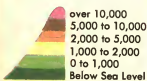
1. A range of mountains and a large body of water form a natural boundary between Europe and Asia. Name them. 2. To the east of the Ural Mountains lie the plains of the U.S.S.R. in Asia. Several long rivers cross these plains. Name the rivers. In what direction do they flow? 3. The highest mountains in the world form part of the boundary between India and Tibet in Asia. Name the mountains. What is the highest peak? What is the elevation of this peak? 4. There are several large desert areas on the continent of Asia. Name and locate at least two of these deserts. 5. Large portions of the interior of the continent of Asia are highlands. Name and locate the important mountain and plateau regions. 6. A large part of Asia's population lives in the large river valleys and lowland regions near the coast. Name five of these rivers in southern and southeastern Asia. Give the country through which each of the rivers flows.





# EURASIA

Capital Cities.....●



ELEVATIONS IN FEET

Scale of Miles



General Drafting Co., Inc., N. Y.



## 16. The Soviet Union:



The Union of Soviet Socialist Republics is a long name. Most people prefer to use the abbreviation, U.S.S.R., or the shortened Russian name, Soviet Union. Sometimes the old name of the country—Russia—is still used.



1 This girl lives in a farming and stock-raising land on the Baltic Sea. Her race is the same as the Finns.



2 This Russian girl of the Slav race lives in a farming and stock-raising part of Russia bordering Poland.

3 These schoolboys live near Irkutsk in Asia. The Mongols raise cattle and horses. Children ride horseback before they learn to walk.



**How the Soviet Union came to be.** More than a thousand years ago, groups of people called Slavs lived in eastern Europe. As time passed, the Slavs mingled with the Norsemen or Danes from the north and with Mongols or Asiatic people from the east. Faith and civilization came late to these people. The early Slav tribes were savage and pagan. They lived in rude villages in the region near Kiev, which came to be called Russ. Russ was a land of plenty for the peasants and herders who lived there, but the tribes were often at war among themselves or with other people. Many of their princes

4 This girl lives in the desert of central Asia. Her people of Tatar and Turkish race raise crops by irrigation; cattle, sheep, goats.



5 This Slavic peasant girl lives in a rich farming region near Odessa. Her people raise grain, fruit, vegetables, and stock.



## Land and People

were cruel and greedy. Murder, robbery, and other crimes were common among them. Russ was a land of disorder.

**The Faith.** The rich merchants of Kiev bought fine cloth and other luxuries in the rich city of Constantinople, capital of the Eastern Empire. The people of Constantinople were Catholics. In the Church of Holy Wisdom, glittering with gold and jewels, priests and people offered Mass with beautiful song and ceremony. Soon the Catholic Church was started in the land of Russ, but converts there were few. Then the Russian Princess Olga made a journey to Constantinople, studied the Faith, was baptized, and returned to Kiev to spend her life bringing her people into the Church. Her son never became a Catholic, but her grandson Vladimir was baptized after he had grown up and become ruler of the Russians. Prince Vladimir had a queer way of spreading the Faith. He ordered everybody to be baptized at once, willy-nilly, without even studying the Church's teaching or promising to keep the Ten Commandments.

185

9 This boy lives in the mountains of the southeastern part of Soviet Russia in Europe. His people raise cattle, sheep, fine horses and grain and make wine.



8 These people, much like our Alaskan Eskimos, live on the frozen tundra coast of the Arctic Ocean. They are Asiatic people, and are hunters, fishers, and trappers.



7 These schoolgirls are of the same race as the Iranians. Their people are farmers and stock-raisers of the mountain region known as "the roof of the world" in central Asia near Sinkiang and Afghanistan.



6 A bright young school boy and girl of a high mountainous region in Asia, near Sinkiang, China. The people are mostly Tatars. They raise grain and cattle.





Church and state were united in Russia. Fine churches were built; priests arrived from Greece and Constantinople and trained Russians for the priesthood. The beautiful ceremonies and music of the Church were brought to Russia, and the Russians loved them. However, many of the people were not really converted. They were pagan at heart for a long time. Besides, about this time the churchmen and rulers at Constantinople were refusing to obey the Pope, and they soon broke away from the Catholic Church entirely. The Russians followed. Although Christianity spread in Russia, most of the Christians remained apart from the Catholic Church.

**Suffering people.** Russia was always a land of suffering and trouble. Wild Tatar tribes from Asia swept over the land, conquered it, and ruled it for centuries. Russian rulers were often cruel tyrants. One of them, the Czar (Emperor) Ivan the Terrible, was a madman who killed his own son; and those noblemen who displeased him he had tortured with hot irons and put to death, while he looked on.

At a time when European Christians had done away with the kind of slavery known as serfdom, Russian emperors made laws that bound the Russian peasants as serfs. The Russian peasants from that time were attached to the soil; that is, they belonged to the land and could not leave it. The great landowners ruled the serfs; and if owners sold land, the serfs were sold with it. Serfs could not sell any property. They had to cultivate the land of their employer, and also had to pay taxes from their small earnings. Serfs who disobeyed were whipped. When a Russian author wrote a book saying that it might be a good idea to free the serfs, the Empress Catherine had him sent away to prison in cold Siberia.

**A religious people.** Russians knew little freedom and democracy. In their lives of suffering, the people turned to God, and every little cottage had a holy picture in the corner of the room, with a vigil light burning before it. People crowded the churches for Mass, and on holydays there were processions and beautiful singing. The Russians, like the Greeks, had real priests and bishops; they had the real Holy Sacrifice of the Mass,

186

Ballet is a kind of play acted out by richly clad dancers, to the music of an orchestra. Ballet dancing requires such skill that the dancers must begin training in childhood and must practice for hours daily the rest of their lives. Russian ballet is world famous.





and they really received Holy Communion. However, their Church, which was called Orthodox, remained separate from the Catholic Church and did not obey the Pope. A great Dominican preacher, Saint Hyacinth, and numbers of Jesuits made many converts among the Russian people, but Russian Catholics were persecuted and had to suffer much for their Faith.

**Gay and generous.** In Russia, there were many farm families who owned land for generations and lived comfortably on it. These farmers had horses and cattle, and their farms were fairly large. Sometimes they hired several laborers to help with the farm work. They were not like the serfs, but were independent farmers called Kulaks. The Cossacks were another class of free, independent Russians. They were warlike horsemen and herders, who lived on the great plains, especially along the Don River. Their songs and dances are famous the world over.

Wealthy Russians enjoyed a comfortable life. Servants, who were cheap and plentiful, did the work in the big houses. Russian food was rich and good. Families often drove miles over the snowy plain in their swift sleighs behind trotting horses with jingling bells. Arrived at a friend's home, they would enjoy dancing and feasting. Every Russian house had a samovar; that is, a metal water tank, holding several gallons, with a charcoal burner in the center. In the samovar hot water for tea was always ready for guests, for the Russians are friendly people.

Even the poor peasants who worked on the great estates had their happy evenings of singing, playing on the three-stringed balalaika, and dancing hearty, stomping dances in their great boots. Their meals of barley bread and cabbage soup were plain but nourishing. Pious ladies of the rich families cared for needy peasants.

**Talented people.** The Russians are musical; they are fine singers, and many play instruments of one kind or other. Great Russian writers, poets, composers of music, and writers of operas are known everywhere. A kind of artistic dancing, called ballet, was popular in Russia, and came to be famous all over the world. Wealthy Russians spent much time in St. Petersburg, giving parties and attending symphony concerts, the opera, and the ballet.

**Serfs are freed.** As years went by, Russian leaders thought more and more about the poor serfs. At last, the Czar Alexander II made them all free and gave them the right to own the land they cultivated. This happened four years before President Lincoln freed the slaves in our own country. Thousands of Russian peasants living in their little villages remained very poor, even though they were free. They had never had schools and had never been allowed to study. In a wide land like Russia millions of people could not become prosperous, well-educated, or democratic overnight.

**Russian Revolution.** For many years, some young Russians studied the books of Karl Marx, a German writer who had strange, new ideas about men and work and society. These Russians formed a group whose aim was to overthrow the rule of the czars and set up a new kind of government modeled on Marx's ideas. At first they called themselves Bolsheviks. Later they were known as Communists. From the start they were well organized.

Towards the end of the first world war, Russia was in a state of disorder, and the Communists were ready. They had key men in each regiment of the Russian army. At a given moment, these men shot down their officers and took command. With the army in control, the rest was easy. Czar Nicholas

and his whole family were murdered, and in time the Communists took over the government. The rich and most of the educated people were killed or sent into slavery. The Communist leaders took over all industries and much property, without paying the owners anything. They killed many thousands of Kulaks and took their farms. This small group of tyrants now runs the factories and mines and controls all the resources of the country. They hire the people to work in the factories. With a great spy system and a cruel secret police, the Communist leaders are able to find idlers and punish them with prison sentences. No one is allowed to speak out against the rulers or what they do. There are no more free elections.

In a population of more than 200,000,000 people, only a very few Russians are Communists. These few Communists rule the country, and the great mass of the people work for them. The Communists have control of the army and the police, the machine guns and the prisons. Once a Communist group is in power, it cannot be put out by voting. A Communist state is a slave state.

**Soviet System.** A number of "Soviet Republics" have been formed in what was once the Russian Empire in Europe and Asia. They form the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics. "Soviet" means a council, or group of people who talk things over and decide upon what should be done. The people of the Soviet Union are supposed to manage much of their business by means of these councils. However, their Communist leaders tell them what decisions to make on any matter of importance. When they hold elections, there is only one man to vote for in each position—a good Communist—and those who do not vote "yes" are punished.

**Social services.** Medical and hospital care are free to Soviet citizens, in order of

their importance to the state. First, good Communists receive the doctor's care and hospital treatment; then good workers in the factories, and those on the collective farms who work hard and make no trouble. As doctors and hospitals are few these people may have to wait before being cared for. Last, come people who own a little property or who may be church-goers, or who used to be rich or well-educated before the revolution. These can hardly expect any medical care at all in illness.

Women are not supposed to "waste time" making a home, but are to work in industry. Their babies are put into state-run nurseries. Nurses keep several children in one bed, so they will not get used to having anything of their own. Teachers also see that the children learn nothing about God. Big pictures of Communist leaders are put on the walls, and the children are taught that everything good comes from them.

**Back to slavery.** To the Communist, man has no rights, except what the state allows him, and no dignity as a child of God. Man under Communism is a machine for producing things and making wealth for the government. Many of Soviet Russia's industries are carried on by prisoners, whose life is worse than that of the slaves in the old pagan world before the time of Christ. It is said that as many as ten million people work at forced labor in the great lumber camps and the mines. They are of course paid no wages. The Communist overseer tells each one how much he or she must produce each day. A strong man is hardly able by long hours of hard work to produce as much as the cruel overseer demands. If the person is weak, old, or ill, he cannot hope to do much. Those who produce their "quota" are given three meals daily of poor, dirty food, just enough to keep them alive. Those who fail

are given two meals, or only a piece of bread. Thus they slowly die of starvation. If they fall down from weakness, they may be whipped, or left to lie in the cold until dead.

When a prisoner escapes, the whole population of the slave labor camp may be punished by "decimation" (one in every ten) as was done in the old Roman Army in the time of Saint Maurice. The Communists do not care how many die. The weak and the old are tossed aside like worn-out machines. They can always get plenty of prisoners in their wide country with its great population. Anyone who dares to speak against the Communists, may be taken for the labor camps at any time. If there are not enough of such people, anyone else who is not a loyal Communist may be taken.

**Land of fear.** The whole great region where Communists rule is a land of fear. Everyone is afraid some enemy will whisper his name to the Communist secret police. Even little children are taught to spy upon their parents. Of course the Communists too, live in fear. Each one hates and fears other Communists who may spy on him or lie about him to get rid of him for his job.

189

High-up Communists fear anyone who becomes too powerful. Communist officials often die suddenly or disappear. In the Communist slave state, all the progress toward liberty that men have made since the time of Christ has been blotted out.

**God underground.** Many Russians have kept the worship of God secretly in their hearts and have dared to teach a little religion to their children. In some places a church has remained open and a Russian priest offers Mass with the people who come there for a little comfort in their misery. Priests in disguise are moving among the people in the little villages, talking in hidden closed rooms to groups of men and women. There they whisper that there is a God, that He is higher than the Soviet rulers, that He will judge them and all men, and that there is a heaven for those who suffer and love God. They console the fearful people, and give the sacraments to them. Many priests have been martyred or imprisoned. People who go to church are always among the first to be taken away when the Soviet government needs slaves for its great industries.

**Factory workers.** As soon as the Communists gained power in Russia, they started



Russian women in Moscow do heavy labor, building houses, mixing mortar, and laying bricks.

many factories and hired thousands of workers. The workers now live in poverty, have no free trade unions, and may not strike for better conditions. The government pays them very poor wages. Anyone who objects or makes trouble may be unable to get a job at all, and so will see his family starve or sent to a prison labor camp for punishment. People may not change jobs freely. If poor or scanty work is turned out by the factory, then the manager will be sent away for five or ten years to the slave labor camps. For his own safety, he is always urging the employees to work harder and produce more.

Workers wear poor, old clothing, eat wretched food, and live crowded in miserable flats. They are told that the people in other countries are worse off than they are. Only Communist official in high positions have automobiles and good houses.

**World-wide plans.** By means of the slave labor done in mines and lumber camps, and products turned out by poorly paid factory workers, much wealth is piled up by the Soviet government. The Communist leaders need money to keep up a great army and to pay many spies and traitors in foreign lands. The Communists aim to rule the whole world: to set up their government of fear and slave labor in America as well as in all the other continents of the world.

The Communists spread their teaching among ignorant people, especially in lands where people have forgotten to do as Christ told them; where Christians have forgotten to teach religion to the poor, to pay just wages, and to share the goods of the earth with their fellowmen. Communists promise a better world, property, good food, and fine jobs to the unhappy poor in such countries. They can promise anything they like, since they do not have to keep their promises. Once in power no one dares revolt or speak

out against anything they do, so it is easy to make grand promises. Unthinking men and women believe and follow the Communists for a while, until it is too late. After a few years of Communist rule, the people find that they have been tricked. They are neither happy nor prosperous, and they have lost what liberty they ever had.

**Farming under communism.** City dwellers, factory workers, and slave workers all have to be fed with food that comes from farms. How were the Communists to make the farmers furnish food at little cost?

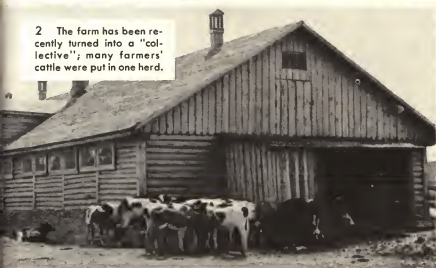
The farmer who owns his land is usually the most independent of men. He works hard and has few luxuries, but he and his family feel secure. They have their own house without paying rent; they use wood for fuel; they raise much of their own food; and since they are self-employed, they cannot be discharged or laid off. So it was with great numbers of the prosperous Russian peasants called Kulaks before the Communist group took over the government. The Communists knew that they could control factory and mine workers easily. But how could the farmers be enslaved? The Communist leaders studied the problems, and the collective farm was the answer that they found.

They took the land away from the farmers, and combined many small farms into large, government-owned plantations. The farmers' livestock was taken and put into one herd. Then in each case the farmers were made to live in a village on the state farm and to work for the government. Of course the farmers objected to giving up their property, but that made little difference to the Soviet leaders. Within a short time, thousands of peasants were cruelly killed, and many others were sent to slave labor camps. Those too frightened to object, accepted their lot and worked on the collective farms.



## LIVING on a COLLECTIVE FARM

1 The farmer's soldier son home on a visit, drinks tea from the samovar, enjoys a meal, learns what goes on.



2 The farm has been recently turned into a "collective"; many farmers' cattle were put in one herd.

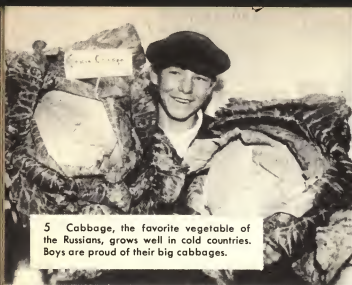


3 Girls do heavy work making the ground firm after seeding.



4 Fields now belong to the state, not to the family. Women make hay while the boss gives orders.





5 Cabbage, the favorite vegetable of the Russians, grows well in cold countries. Boys are proud of their big cabbages.



6 Seeds from large sunflowers are healthful food.



7 After months of work the people are happy when the wheat is gathered and there is a big crop.



8 All help thresh the grain. The government has loaned a threshing machine.

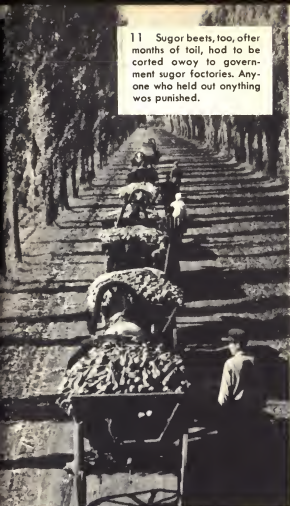


9 With the precious wheat in bags, they smile happily while the Communist boss notes the number of bushels.



10 Happiness faded when all were told they had to sell the grain to the government at low prices, leaving very little for food.





11 Sugar beets, too, after months of toil, had to be carted away to government sugar factories. Any one who held out anything was punished.



12 Form families, sad and depressed, sit beside their wretched homes.



13 Some churches have been turned into club rooms, priests put in prison. Books and papers say that Communism is wonderful.



14 Babies are kept in state nursery, older children go to school on the collective farm, while mothers work in fields. Children learn much science and agriculture. Nurses, teachers, and textbooks all teach children there is no God, that Communist rulers give them everything good.

The Soviet Union is the largest country in the world. It covers a large part of both Europe and Asia. It is nearly three times as large as the United States and has about one and one half times as many people. However, large areas in Russia are sparsely settled.

Much of Soviet Russia lies in the North Temperate Zone. Only a very small part of the country is as far south as Chicago or New York City; a small part is north of the Arctic Circle. Most of the country has long, cold winters and short, warm summers. The coldest winter temperature an record has been found at a place in northeastern Siberia. At the same time, mild winters prevail in some of the southern sections.

The Soviet Union is in the path of the prevailing westerlies. Before these winds reach Russia much of the moisture in the air has been lost. That is why the western part of the country has more rain than the eastern part. In most of Russia, the ground is covered with snow for at least five or six months in winter.

The great lowland plain of Europe extends over most of European Russia. This plain, broken by the Ural Mountains, continues for a long distance into Asiatic Russia. It is less than a thousand feet high in most places; on the northern edge of the Caspian Sea the land is below sea level. The Ural Mountains are low—some of them resemble hills. Much of the eastern part of the country in Asia is hilly and mountainous.

The Soviet Union has large deposits of coal and petroleum. It ranks second in world production of petroleum. Pipe lines carry much of the oil; there is a five-hundred-mile line from Baku to Batum. However, much oil is carried by boat on the Caspian



Sea and on the Volga River.

Russia has large deposits of iron ore and also of manganese, which are needed in the manufacture of steel. The Soviet Union ranks high in the production of platinum and gold, and has large deposits of other minerals.

The Soviet Union includes vast farming areas with some of the richest soil in the world. The chief crop is wheat. Russians also raise flax for fiber and far seeds. During the past few years, the production of cotton has rapidly increased in sections where irrigation works have been completed. The Black Sea region near Batum has warm, dry summers and mild, somewhat moist winters. Mediterranean-type crops grow well there.

**1** Locate the tundra, a level, treeless plain, frozen most of the year. Only the top layer of soil thaws out, even in summer.



The tundra is the home of animals that can stand cold weather. Name five.



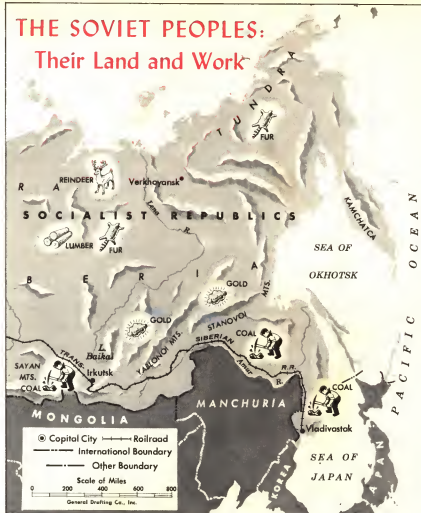
Name some wood products made of lumber from Russian forests.

**5** Locate the high Caucasus Mts. What important mineral product is found in this region? Through what Black Sea port is it shipped?



Locate the highlands of southern and eastern Asiatic Russia. What minerals are obtained there?

# THE SOVIET PEOPLES: Their Land and Work



**2** Why do few people live on the tundra? Those who do live there fish, hunt, trap, and raise reindeer.



With what three products do you think reindeer would furnish the people?



Locate the Ural Mountains. What minerals are mined there? What are the industrial centers?

**4** Find Russia's "bread-basket"—the Ukraine. What crops are grown there? They are shipped to other parts of the country or exported.



**6** Why is the area north and east of the Caspian Sea thinly settled? What industry is carried on in this region?

Total population 211,385,000. Catholics 8,000,000. Estimate the percentage of Catholics.

## CITIES IN THE SOVIET UNION

Moscow is the largest city in the Soviet Union. Railroads and highways connect Moscow with other parts of Russia. The city is joined by a canal to the Volga River, and is a center for air travel. It is close to the Ukraine and is surrounded by a farming region. Since Moscow is the capital, many people living there work for the government. Others are engaged in manufacturing a variety of products in numerous factories. Moscow is a modern city with apartment houses, office buildings, subways, parks, and playgrounds.

Another large manufacturing city is Leningrad. This part city

is on the Gulf of Finland, and the harbor is frozen for a few months during the winter. Ships came to Leningrad from many parts of the world. It has good railroad connections with other parts of Russia. No coal is mined near Leningrad, but there is plenty of peat close at hand to be used for fuel. Leningrad is near the great Russian forests, so lumber is shipped to the city for manufacturing and building, and furs from animals trapped in the forests are sold there. Leningrad is also a great fish market, since fishermen ply their trade in the waters near by.

Odessa is a large port and manufacturing city on the Black Sea.

The Ural region is an industrial area, with many cities devoted to manufacturing. Thousands of people work in the iron and steel mills of Magnitogorsk. Iron ore is found in that region, but coal must be brought from mines some miles to the east.

Vladivostok is the chief port on the Pacific coast. The harbor is good, but it freezes over from late December until the middle of April. Icebreakers are used, so that ships may enter the harbor during most of the winter. This city is at the eastern end of the Trans-Siberian railroad, and it is a center for exporting and importing.

Irkutsk, near Lake Baikal, is in the gold-mining region. Omsk is located at the place where the Trans-Siberian Railroad crosses the Irtysh River, and it is a great trading center.

Russia has always been a farming and herding country until recent years. The government now encourages manufacturing, and many people have moved to the industrial centers. New cities have been planned and built, while the old ones are spreading out rapidly.



**The land today.** The Soviet Union is a land of great resources and much natural wealth. During many years these resources were not developed because the country was poorly governed and in disorder. There were few roads and railroads, and they were in poor condition. Most of the people were simple farmers who were not interested in industry. The Communist government is now trying to develop its great resources.

Russia is a land of long distances. The country is very large, much of it is thinly settled, and many regions still lack railroads and good highways. Trucks and automobiles are few. The Trans-Siberian Railroad runs all the way across Asia and connects Vladivostok, on the Pacific coast, with Moscow, Leningrad, Murmansk, and other cities in European Russia. The harbor at Murmansk is open all the year, and so this northern port is of some importance. Moscow, the chief railroad center, has rail connections with other cities in Europe.

**Transportation.** The people in Russia make much use of their rivers in traveling. The Russians have dug canals to connect many of the rivers. Today, by means of this canal system, boats may pass from the Caspian Sea or the Black Sea to the Baltic Sea; and from Leningrad, on the Gulf of Finland, to the White Sea which joins the Arctic Ocean. However, during the winter the rivers are frozen so that boats cannot use them, and during the summer the streams are sometimes shallow on account of the light rainfall. Sleighs pulled by horses are often used for traveling in winter when the ground is covered with snow.

**The Arctic.** The land in northern Asia, called Siberia, was slowly settled, mostly by fur trappers and by convicts exiled there for punishment. With the building of railroads into Siberia, farmers gradually moved into

the country. The Communists are trying out new ways of farming in this cold land.

At one time, the Russians pushed eastward into Asia, and reached the Pacific Ocean. Later, they moved into Alaska, and a few settled along the western coast of North America almost as far south as San Francisco. The Czar of Russia did not think Alaska very valuable, and sold it to the United States.

The Arctic Ocean is used for ships sailing around northern Europe and Asia and to various Arctic ports. This route is open for only a short time in summer, and even then fogs and blocks of ice make sailing dangerous. Vessels called icebreakers are used to cut paths through the cakes of ice, and airplanes are sometimes used to guide surface ships. Many weather stations along the Arctic coast send out weather reports by radio.

**Seaports.** Although her coasts are washed by many seas, most of Russia's harbors are frozen most of the year. Large cakes of ice floating in the open sea make shipping dangerous. For years, the rulers of Russia tried to get ice-free seaports, even when they had to fight wars for them. The Baltic Sea, with its rugged coast and dangerous reefs, is Russia's main sea lane, and this is partly ice-bound in winter. The Russians share this sea with the Swedes, the Germans, and the Danes.

The seaport of Leningrad was built by one of the early rulers of Russia, Czar Peter the Great. Peter was an energetic emperor who set out to modernize his country. He went to the Netherlands and England to get ideas about armies and navies, and he himself worked in shipyards to learn how to build ships. After a long war with Sweden, he obtained a seaport on the Gulf of Finland near the Baltic. There he began to build a great city, which was called St. Petersburg.



Czar Peter had little respect for human life. He forced people to come from all parts of the Russian Empire to help build the new city. The land was swampy, building materials were hard to get, and the winters were very cold. Many workmen died while the city was being built. The buildings were erected on piles driven into the soft earth, and many bridges were constructed. There were beautiful palaces and excellent boulevards and drives. The city grew, and it became the nation's capital and the center of style and culture for Russians.

Some years ago, the Communists changed the name of St. Petersburg to Leningrad, in honor of one of their first leaders. They moved the capital to Moscow. The great Cathedral of St. Isaac at Leningrad, with its gorgeous gold and colored pictures, its high altar and great organ, was turned into an "anti-God" museum by the Communists.

**Other peoples under the U.S.S.R.** The Latvians are a nation of sturdy farmers. Their country lies at the eastern end of the Baltic Sea. These people have been ruled by other nations for hundreds of years. For a short time after World War I, they formed

an independent republic and learned to know freedom. However, many thousands were killed in the second world war. Then the Russian Communist government swallowed up the little nation and sent thousands of its people away to prison labor camps. Many of the people of Latvia are Lutherans; about a fourth are Catholics.

Estonia is another country on the borders of Soviet Russia, northeast of Latvia. It was taken over by its larger neighbor and is now a part of the U.S.S.R.

Lithuania is a low-lying land of many lakes and swamps located between Latvia and Poland on the Baltic Sea. It has often been conquered and ruled by more powerful nations. For a short time it enjoyed independence as a republic. Lithuania is another country which was absorbed by Soviet Russia. Years ago the missionary, Father Andrew Bobola, spent his priestly years there trying to bring back fallen-away Catholics. The enemies of the Church captured Father Bobola, tied him to a tree, and tortured him to death. He is the martyr-saint of Lithuania. Most of the people of this country are Catholics.

### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Complete each of the following statements by filling in the correct answer.

1. The Union of Soviet Socialist Republics is abbreviated to \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The part of the Soviet Union in Europe is called \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The part of the Soviet Union in Asia is called \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Russian Catholics go to the \_\_\_\_\_ Church.
5. The German writer upon whose ideas the Russians based Communism was \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The farms owned by the Soviet government are known as \_\_\_\_\_ farms.
7. The chief crop grown on the farms of the Soviet Union is \_\_\_\_\_.

Match the cities in column A with the items in Column B.

A	B
Moscow	seaport on the Gulf of Finland
Odessa	city in Soviet oil fields
Vladivostok	capital of the U.S.S.R.
Leningrad	manufacturing city on the Black Sea
Magnitogorsk	oil port on the Black Sea
Irkutsk	Soviet port on the Pacific
Baku	Steel city in the Urals
Batum	Siberian city near gold mines

## For My Geography Notebook

### Questions for Review

#### Middle Europe

1. Give some reasons why farming is difficult in Finland. 2. What industries carried on in winter and spring give employment to many Finns? 3. What natural resource do the Finns use to make up for their lack of coal and petroleum? 4. Why was much of Poland laid waste in World War II? 5. What advantages does Poland possess as a manufacturing country? 6. Why are the crops raised in Poland similar to those raised in Germany? Name the important crops raised in both Poland and Germany. 7. Why is Czechoslovakia's location excellent for trade with the other countries of Europe? 8. Give some reasons why Czechoslovakia ranks high among Europe's manufacturing countries. Name three manufacturing cities in Czechoslovakia and tell what products each is famous for. 9. Of what special importance is the city of Prague to Catholics all over the world? 10. What mineral ore of great importance to atomic energy is mined in Czechoslovakia? 11. Name five countries that lie in the region drained by the Danube River. 12. Give some reasons why Vienna is Austria's most important city. 13. Why has Hungary become a great farming country? Name three important crops grown on Hungarian farms.

#### The Balkans

1. Name the countries that occupy the Balkan Peninsula. 2. What three large seas form the boundaries of the Balkan Peninsula? 3. What are the principal occupations of the people of Yugoslavia? 4. Why is Romania considered the richest of the Balkan countries? 5. Of what importance is the Danube River to Romania and Bulgaria? 6. What product is made from roses grown in Bulgaria?

#### The U.S.S.R.

1. What do the letters U.S.S.R. stand for? 2. What is the great difference between the Orthodox Church and the Roman Catholic Church? 3. Mention three ways in which the Soviet system of government differs from ours. 4. What is a collective farm? How does this

kind of a farm differ from the typical American farm? 5. How does the U.S.S.R. compare in size and population with the United States? 6. In what mineral resources is the U.S.S.R. rich? In what part of the Soviet Union is each of these minerals found? (The map on pp. 194-195 will help you.) 7. In what part of the U.S.S.R. can warm-weather crops be grown? Name an important one grown under irrigation in that region. 8. Give some reasons why Moscow has become the most important city in the Soviet Union. 9. What is the aim of the Communists? 10. Why does the U.S.S.R. have few seaports? 11. How do people living on the frozen tundra coast of the U.S.S.R. make their living? 12. Why is the Soviet Union called a "slave state"?

**Using Geography Words Correctly.** Here are a list of geography words which have been used in this chapter. Use each in a sentence.

- |                          |                    |
|--------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. topsoil               | 7. serfs           |
| 2. subsoil               | 8. manganese       |
| 3. collective farm       | 9. platinum        |
| 4. prevailing westerlies | 10. pitchblende    |
| 5. gullies               | 11. attar of roses |
| 6. currants              | 12. Soviet         |

#### Pause and Think

A. Compare life in the Soviet Union with our life in the United States from these points of view:

1. Blessings of home and family life
2. The right to own property
3. The right to vote
4. Loyalty to our Faith
5. Dignity of the worker
6. Respect for government

B. Compare the following descriptions of people in your text with conditions in our own United States.

1. Happy family life in Finland (P. 149).
2. Holydays and holidays in Poland (Pp. 155-156).
3. Freedom of worship in Czechoslovakia (Pp. 157-158).
4. The life of a peasant (Pp. 156-160).
5. The life of a Gypsy (Pp. 163-164).

## IV. ASIA, LAND OF MANY CULTURES

### I. How People Live in China



China is the second largest country in the world. Only the Soviet Union is larger. China has the largest population in the world. One of every five persons in the world lives in China. The exact number is not known, because there has been no reliable Chinese census.

The Chinese name for their country means "Middle Kingdom," for they used to think that their land was in the center of the world.

China is made up of a number of provinces and has long laid claim to the territory of Tibet which is in the far west.

The people of northern China differ greatly from those of southern China, in looks, in language, and in ways of living. Every district in China has its own spoken language, which differs little or much from others. The written language, however, is the same everywhere.

**Climate and surface.** Northern China has cold winters and hot summers, but southern China has mild winters and hot summers. Western China is a desert with little rain, but eastern China has moderate or even heavy rain. Rainfall and heat increase as one travels south.

Southeastern China is affected by monsoon winds, which blow inland from the ocean in summer, bringing a rainy season. During the hot days and nights, while the rain pours steadily, crops shoot up very fast. In many sections the monsoon rains last

for six weeks or more, except for short pauses. Even in the dry sections nearer the great Gobi Desert, the seasonal rains usually occur, although they fall lightly. When the rains fail to come or when they come too late there is famine in China. Many millions of Chinese have barely enough to live on in years of plenty. When there is a crop failure the people have nothing to eat.

China is a mountainous country, especially in the western part. Southern and eastern China are also rugged and hilly but there are fertile river valleys and lowlands. It is here that most of the Chinese people work and live.

**Shipping.** China has an enormous coast line and good harbors, giving her people many approaches to the sea. Yet China has never been a sea power, and her people have never taken greatly to world-wide shipping. Chinese fishing and cargo vessels ply mostly coastal and inland waters. The Chinese are interested in the land more than in the sea. They are farmers and craftsmen, merchants and scholars. However, thousands of families live on houseboats, making their living by fishing or by carrying freight or passengers. Many Chinese have a low opinion of the boat people, possibly because these nomads of the canals and rivers have no fixed homes and own no land.

Eastern China is sometimes called a land of canals. The canals are used to irrigate rice fields, to produce fish, and to drain the land. They also provide transportation for small boats.

**The rivers.** The Hwang River is called the Yellow River because it carries so much yellow mud, or silt. Here China has very fine soil dropped by winds blowing in

from the western deserts. The Hwang has another name, China's Sorrow, because it has so often overflowed. The river bed built up by deposits of silt is in some places higher than the surrounding land. The Chinese try to keep the river in its channel by building dikes; but at high water the river sometimes breaks loose, flooding the surrounding areas. Often, during a flood, the Hwang River has emptied into the Pacific Ocean at a place far from where it usually meets the ocean. This river is not navigable for steamships.

The Yangtze is a very long river. It is navigable for ocean ships as far as Hankow, 600 miles from the sea. Smaller river boats can continue another 1,000 miles up the river. The Yangtze divides the country into North China and South China.

The Si, or West River, is more than one thousand miles long, and is another of China's important waterways. It runs through rich farming regions. It can be navigated far inland by large vessels; even farther by small river boats. The Si River is a busy shipping lane, always full of boats carrying cargo and passengers. The great city of Canton is built on its delta.

Most of China's population live in the great river valleys. Deserts and mountains in the west and north support few people.

**Shut off for many years.** Until one hundred and fifty years ago, China had little contact with other countries. Deserts, mountains, and forests prevented travelers from reaching the country by land. Only Marco Polo and a few other traders took the long overland route from Europe. The Chinese have always shown little concern for western customs. They have their own way of living which suits them best. They have continued to farm and make things in the same way for thousands of years.

**The great wall.** Hundreds of years ago,

warlike nomads from the north forced the Chinese to build a wall to protect themselves. The Great Wall cost the lives of many thousands of poor laborers. They were forced to leave their homes and spend years working on the project. The barrier that they built did not keep the northern people out of China, and today the wall is broken in many places.

China was an empire ruled by an emperor for many years. About forty years ago the people revolted and formed a republic. The new government built railroads and highways, but it was weak and divided by quarreling groups who fought for power.

Some years ago Japan made war on China, took Manchuria and later other parts of the country. The Japanese never succeeded in conquering China. They were forced to withdraw from the country after World War II.

**Chinese culture.** When we speak of the lands around the Mediterranean Sea as the place where our civilization began, we are speaking of European civilization. China developed her own ancient civilization in her own way. Few countries have as ancient a civilization as China. People lived there thousands of years before man began to write history.

The early Chinese lived in the fertile river valleys, and they were experts at farming. Centuries ago they learned to raise rice, tea, and silkworms. They were the first to invent paper, ink, printing, and gunpowder. They built bridges and roads, and they invented the compass which guides sailors and other travelers.

**Literature and learning.** The Chinese were printing books long before the German, Johann Gutenberg, was born. In fact, it is thought that Gutenberg may have heard of that Chinese art from Mongols who had in-



A Chinese musician, wearing the satin gown of the gentleman and scholar, plays the Chinese harp. Boat people work while the boat sails and pigs look on.

vaded Europe and settled there. One of the very old books printed in China is an encyclopedia of agriculture in many volumes.

Chinese literature contains many beautiful and useful works, in both prose and poetry, both ancient and modern. Among the most famous are the old books of Confucius and other wise men, on good manners and noble living. For many years, Chinese governors and high officials were chosen from the scholars who knew these writings best. In no country was learning more highly valued. However, times are changing. Chinese schools now teach much the same subjects as are taught in Europe and America.

**Science.** Many centuries before the study of medicine as a science began in Europe, the Chinese Emperor Shan Nung made a list of plants and materials that were used to cure disease. Vaccination for smallpox is a fairly modern discovery in Europe and America, yet the Chinese were using this method a thousand years ago. Some of our doctors and scientists were inclined to make fun of the things used by the Chinese doctors to cure disease, such as dried frog skins for dropsy, powdered tiger's teeth as a tonic, dried crab's eyes for stomach trouble, and many more.

After studying Chinese medicine, our scientists are now discovering that many of these remedies contain chemicals which are real cures for those ailments. Today modern Chinese physicians use western medicines as well as many of their own.

#### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Complete each of the following sentences by choosing the correct ending.

1. If we compare the area of the countries of the world, China ranks  
first second third
2. If we compare the population of the countries of the world China ranks  
first second third
3. The part of China that has the driest climate is the  
east coast south coast interior
4. In southeastern China the heaviest rains occur in the  
summer winter spring
5. Of the following rivers the longest and most important to the Chinese is the  
Hwang Yangtze Si
6. The river which has often overflowed its banks flooding the surrounding land is the  
Si Yangtze Hwang
7. Most of China's people live in  
river valleys mountains deserts
8. The part of China that was taken by Japan prior to World War II was  
Tibet Mongolia Manchuria



## Studying the Map of Southeastern Asia

### A

1. From the color key below the map, tell something about the surface of China.
2. Where are the lowlands of China?
3. What great desert is in the interior?
4. Which interior province of China lies north of the Himalaya Mountains?
5. Which province lies farthest from the coast?
6. What province lies between the U.S.S.R. and the Republic of China?
7. What province is northeast of the Republic of China?
8. The Yangtze is China's most important river. Where is its source? Into what body of water does it flow? What important city is located at its mouth?
9. Another of China's important rivers is the Hwang. Where is its source? Into what body of water does it flow?
10. Find the Si River in southern China. What important city is near its mouth?

### B

1. Find Japan on the map. How does it compare with China in size?
2. Name the four principal islands that make up Japan. Which is the largest?
3. With the help of the color key describe the surface of much of Japan. What famous mountain peak is on the island of Honshu?
4. Most of Japan's short, swift rivers are not navigable. How can they be used?
5. What body of water separates Japan from the mainland of Asia?
6. What large peninsula lies between the Yellow Sea and the Sea of Japan?
7. Japan's largest cities are located on

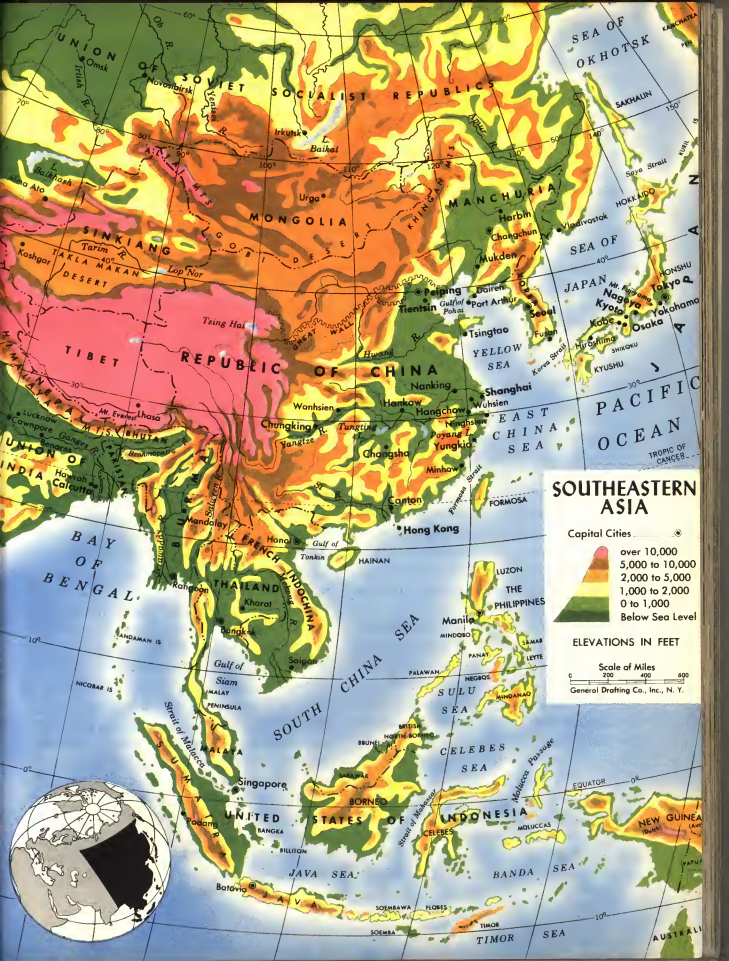
the island of Honshu. Name five large Japanese cities on this island.

### C

1. The mainland of Southeastern Asia extends outward as two peninsulas. Name the four countries on these peninsulas.
2. Why are these countries considered tropical lands? Which of them extends farthest south? Which touch China?
3. What large body of water lies to the east and south of the peninsulas? to the west?
4. What rivers flow south through the lowlands of Burma? On the delta of which of these rivers is the city of Rangoon?
5. Find a river in Thailand. What city is located at its mouth?
6. What river forms part of the boundary between Thailand and French Indochina? Where is the source of this river? What city is located at its mouth?
7. What large city is located at the southern tip of Malaya? Why did this city become so important in world trade?

### D

1. What are the names of the largest islands in the Philippines?
2. On which of these islands is Manila?
3. Why are the islands off Southeastern Asia called tropical islands?
4. Name the five large islands that lie along or near the equator. Large parts of them make up the United States of Indonesia. Which is nearest Malaya? What body of water separates the island from Malaya?
5. One of the world's largest islands belongs to this group of equatorial islands. What is its name? What continent does it almost touch?



**People in cities.** Millions of people live in China's crowded cities, yet each one usually has relatives somewhere in a farming village, and calls that rural spot his home. All the people from any one village or big family form a kind of society, banded together to help one another in their city life.

Chinese businessmen are among the cleverest and thriftiest in the world. Throughout the countries of the Far East, Chinese are the bankers, merchants, and traders. However, large industries are not common in China. Usually when a business gets very big it is divided. Many articles are made and sold in small shops, where the owner has his sons and possibly a few nephews as apprentices.

City workers are grouped into guilds, somewhat like those of Christian Europe in the Middle Ages. A great difference, however, lies in the fact that the Christian guilds had certain Christian laws of charity and justice for workers and masters to obey. Chinese have good sense but no Christian background. Their workers are often made to labor very long hours for very little pay. This is especially true where modern-style factories have been modeled on those in other lands.

Chinese cities always seem to swarm with busy people going about their work. Small fishing or cargo boats crowd the harbor along the waterfront. Markets and shops, open on the sidewalk, are thronged with buyers and sellers. Peddlers cry their wares, or clang bells through the narrow streets. Chinese laborers called coolies trot along, using shoulder poles for carrying freight.

China is a busy place, full of energetic people. It has been a democratic country, where a poor man may become wealthy, or well-educated, or may rise to high places in the government. A man may start by ped-

dling peanuts, and in time become a rich merchant. However, China is a pagan country, and to that fact are due many of China's troubles.

Many Chinese cities and villages have walls that were built long ago as protection against attack. Most houses are only one story high and are built of bricks or sun-dried mud mixed with straw. The houses of northern China are heated by means of a *kang*, a platform of bricks and mortar. The fire needed to cook the family meals is kindled in a stove which is built into the front of the kang. The hot smoke is drawn back in a series of openings under the kang, before it goes up the chimney. Thus one fire serves two purposes: no heat is lost, and the Chinese family have a warm platform on which to sit, work, or sleep.

**Dress.** Most of the Chinese wear cotton clothing which is comfortable, practical, and inexpensive. The women make it at home. For winter wear in cold sections, cotton wadding is used to pad clothing as we use it in quilts and comforters. This wadded clothing is more comfortable than any woolen garments would be in the cold, bleak, windy parts of northern China.

Wealthy Chinese men and women wear silk gowns. In northern China, in winter, silk or satin clothing may be lined with fur. The Chinese-style dress, for both men and women, has dignity and beauty. Old-fashioned Chinese dress for women is very modest, but modern styles from Europe and America are creeping in, changing some of the fine old Chinese ways. However, many good ideas have also come in. Years ago, Chinese women's feet were bound in childhood to keep them small. This cruel custom caused great suffering, but the women liked it because bound feet were considered beautiful. The custom is no longer followed.

**Important cities.** Peiping, in northern China, is about 100 miles from the coast. It was formerly called Peking (North Capital) and was once China's capital. Nanking (South Capital) later became the capital. When the Japanese invaded the land, the government moved to Chungking (Middle Capital); and after the Japanese defeat, in World War II, the capital was moved back to Nanking.

Peiping has many means of transportation. The city is located on the northern edge of a great farming region, called the Yellow Plain. It is also a manufacturing center. Some of the world's most beautiful buildings are located in Peiping. The inner part, once called the Forbidden City, was entirely surrounded by a wall. This part was the home of the royal family.

Shanghai is located a few miles south of the mouth of the Yangtze River. It is the chief trading post for central China, the richest farm region in the country. It is the nearest port to Japan. A large part of the foreign trade is carried on in this city. Shanghai is connected by railroad to Hangchow in the southeast, and to Nanking, in the northwest.

The people of Canton, center of a rich farming area, carry on much trade both with neighboring parts of China and with foreign countries. Many Chinese in the United States come from the region of Canton. Some parts of the city have wide streets and modern buildings.

Hong Kong, an island near Canton, was obtained by the British a hundred years ago. The chief city and port is Victoria, commonly known as Hong Kong. It has an excellent harbor well-suited for carrying on much trade. It is a reshipping point for goods to and from China and other parts of the Far East.

**Manufacturing.** The Chinese have always been clever manufacturers, making everything they need by skillful handwork. Millions of people turn out products in homes and small workshops. A few factories are found in the large cities; however, the Chinese do not use much large machinery. Hand labor is cheap. There are many millions of Chinese who prefer to work with their hands both on farms and in factories, rather than to starve in idleness while machines do the work.

Central China produces much cotton. Chinese clothing is made of cotton woven in Chinese mills. Many of the Chinese dye their cotton cloth blue with the indigo plant. Much of the world's silk is produced in China. Beautiful brocades, silks, and satins are woven on Chinese looms.

**Mining and lumber.** China, although a large country, produces few minerals. There is much coal, with the greatest deposits in northern China. In Manchuria there are beds of coal 400 feet thick, the thickest in the world, but very little coal is now mined. To the south antimony, copper, tin, zinc, and tungsten are mined in a few places. Mining is not developed because of poor transportation.

Trees grow well in southern China, helped by the abundant rainfall and warm climate. Fine hardwoods are produced in the forests, from which beautiful carved furniture is made by hand. There are forests in certain parts of northern China, also. Only a small amount of lumber is produced. Logs are sawed into boards by hand. One man standing on top of the log pulls one end of the saw up. Another, in a pit under the log, gives the down-pull on the saw. Imagine how long it would take two men to saw enough lumber for even a small house using this method.

# TRANSPORTATION



There are few good roads in China, a country of vast distances. Lack of transportation often makes it hard to market products and to help famine-stricken areas. However, huge quantities of freight are always going from place to place, and the Chinese use about every means that has ever been invented to move both goods and people. Airplanes, trains, trucks, and taxis are common enough in some sections. The waters along the seacoast and the immense system of rivers and canals are always full of busy shipping. Camel caravans, donkeys, mule trains, and horse carts are used in different parts of China. However, the strong, patient shoulders of men and women, more than anything else, bear the burdens of China.

206









When rice seedlings are a few inches high the farmer takes them from the fertile seed bed and plants them in flooded paddies. Before the



grain is harvested the water is drained off. Rice is everybody's chief dish, from Cardinal Tien to the family of the poor factory worker.

**Farmers for forty centuries.** Since farmers produce things that people need, farming is admired as a noble occupation in China. Her people have been farmers for forty centuries. Hot summers and rain make good growing seasons. Many rivers furnish water for irrigating rice fields and for carrying crops to market. Fertile lowlands along the rivers have fine soil.

Three fourths of the population are farmers, and live in little villages surrounded by their fields. However, less than one acre of every ten or fifteen acres in China is used to grow crops, since most of the land is either too dry or too hilly. Most farmers live in eastern China on small farms of three or four acres. In some places, there are so many people that it is hard for all to find work on the farms. Millions are poor because land is scarce and labor is very cheap.

Chinese farmers do not have modern machinery, and their common tools are the hoe and the spade. Few farm animals are kept. The Chinese are among the world's most skillful farmers. They produce huge crops on land that has been farmed for four thousand years. Thus they give a good ex-

ample to some people in America and other countries who ruin good farm land in a few years.

China also shows examples of the evils that happen to a country where forests are not preserved and dry grasslands are plowed up. Throughout years of poor government, a great and needy population, seeking wood for fuel, cut down many of China's trees. Much land too dry for farming has been plowed up. The results are of two kinds: great loss of good topsoil in dust storms, and loss of homes and lives in terrible floods. Both dry years and flood times are followed by famine, which causes millions of Chinese to starve to death. Pestilence usually comes with the flood and the famine. China's millions of people suffer much.

**Raising rice.** Rice is China's most important crop. It is raised chiefly on the lowlands along the Yangtze River and in other parts of southern China. Two crops a year are grown on some land. Rice plants need much water, so farms are irrigated.

In some places the fields are easily watered by means of canals which receive water from the rivers. In other places the

land lies too high. Then back-breaking labor is needed to raise the precious crop. A well-to-do farmer may have an ox to turn a water wheel. Very often the Chinese use foot-power. Bamboo buckets at the edge of the wheel fill with water from the stream, and as the wheel is turned by the power of the worker's foot, the water is carried up and dumped into a trough leading to the field. In other cases the water is thrown on the field by a swinging bucket operated by two men or women.

**Cereal foods.** Rice is the chief food in central and southern China. Even though much rice is raised, there is not enough for all of China's people. The northern Chinese live on corn and wheat. They also use millet and the seed of the sorghum plant. These are all healthful foods.

The Chinese use straw from the cereal crop to make paper, to burn as fuel, and to feed livestock. Mud mixed with straw is used to make sun-dried bricks. Straw may be used for house roofs; it can also be mixed with soil to make fertilizer. The Chinese seldom waste anything.

**Soybeans and nuts.** Farmers of Manchuria raise quantities of soybeans, which improve the soil and form a very valuable crop. Soybeans were introduced into America from China in recent years, and farmers are daily finding new uses for this plant. The beans provide food, as vegetables and soups; they also provide oil for cooking and lamp fuel. A salty brown sauce made from soybeans is used to season Chinese foods. Inks and soaps are made from the beans. Bean cake, the remains of beans after the oil is pressed out, is fed to animals. Bean vines make excellent hay. No part of the soybean plant is wasted.

China also raises millions of bushels of peanuts. Another useful nut crop is taken

from the tung oil tree, which produces a powerful drying oil for paints.

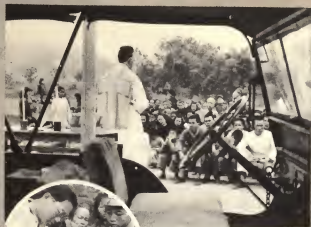
**Village life.** Families in China join together to help one another. Villages govern themselves democratically through a board of head men picked from the families. However, the central government of the nation has usually been weak. Strong family and village governments help the people to make necessary rules and laws, whether the national government helps or not.

A Chinese house is usually made of brick, with a tile or straw roof, and it is built in a hollow square with a courtyard in the middle. The poor use very little furniture, and have learned to get along comfortably without it. Wealthy Chinese have their homes filled with beautiful carved wood furniture and works of art.

As sons grow up and marry, more rooms are added to the family dwelling, as each son brings his wife home to live. Each new family has some rooms to itself, but much of the work is done together. Men and women work in the neighboring fields. Women do odd jobs in the courtyard, or "sky well," where the children play and dogs and chickens run about. Grandmothers, who are greatly honored, look after babies and direct much of the household work.

The wife and mother of sons is the queen of the home in China, especially as she grows older and becomes a grandmother. Young women serve the older ones and obey them. Girls are taught to be gentle and polite. They learn early to sew and embroider beautifully, and to help make all the family clothes. They often make even the shoes from scraps of cloth. There are, however, many shoemakers in China, and both cloth and leather shoes are made and sold in shops.

The Chinese are great tea drinkers. They



American priests, Brothers, and Sisters as well as missionaries from many European countries are spreading the Faith in China. Native Chinese priests and religious also work among their own people. The catechist is the greatest help in spreading the Faith. Catechists are men and women who know their Faith well and are hired by the pastor to spend all their time teaching it to the non-Catholic people.



raise tea on farms, on the hillsides and in the valleys of southern China. Both green and black tea are produced. The tea plant is a small tree. The leaves are picked three times a year by girls and women.

There is not enough good farm land in China to feed both families and livestock, so most farms are without cattle. The Chinese as a rule do not care for milk and butter. There are many hogs and chickens, however, since they eat waste food. Eggs are plentiful. Ducks and geese are raised along the canals.

**Religions.** Long ago, Confucius and Lao-tze taught their people many good sensible ways for peaceful, industrious living in family, village, and nation. As a result of their teachings, the scholar and the farmer are most honored in China. Love and care of parents and good manners have become Chinese virtues. But the Chinese have some wrong practices, too, including the worship of pagan gods and devils. They are lovers of the family, and they honor their ancestors, but they carry this honor even to the point of worship.

**The Faith.** Christianity was brought to China centuries ago, but China was already an old country, well settled in her ways, when the missionaries arrived. The people were slow to change. Though there are four million Catholics in China today, this is only a small number in a population of over four hundred million. Chinese babies are born in non-Christian families faster than Chinese converts are made. However, the Catholic Church in China is a thriving member of Christ's family. From early times, the Popes have wished the Chinese to have their own bishops, priests, and religious. There are now more than twenty Chinese bishops, more than two thousand Chinese Catholic priests, and nearly five thousand Chinese Brothers and Sisters in religious orders.

Seven hundred years ago a Franciscan, Father John of Montecorvino, made the long journey from Italy to Peking, now called Peiping. He set up a church and a mission, and finally made about six thousand converts. The Emperor of China allowed him to work in peace. Father John was joined by other priests, and in time became bishop. He died beloved and honored by Catholics and non-Christians. Chinese rulers soon grew suspicious of the priests from foreign countries, however, and began to persecute the Chinese Catholics. One missionary after another was sent away.

There were no Catholics left in China several hundred years later, when an Italian Jesuit, Father Ricci, arrived in Canton. Father Ricci was a learned man and a scientist. He began by teaching the scholars of China about geography and astronomy as those sciences were then known in Europe. He had maps of the world, fine books and paintings, clocks and scientific instruments from Europe. These proved to the learned Chinese that Europe was not a savage wilderness as they had thought.

Father Ricci went to Peking and there showed his exhibit to the Emperor. That royal ruler was much impressed with the foreign priest, arranged to study science with him, and gave him permission to preach and make converts. The good priest became a Chinese in habits and dress. He wrote books about the Faith in Chinese.

The Catholics of China have increased greatly, and have suffered persecution from time to time. There have been martyrs, among both native Chinese and missionaries from other lands. During more recent years, Protestants have set up missions in China, and have built many schools, hospitals, and colleges. Catholic missionaries have spent most of their efforts making converts in the

country villages, but some have been able to build excellent Catholic schools and hospitals in larger centers. Two great Catholic universities, one in Peiping, the other in Shanghai, carry on higher education.

After World War II, Soviet Russia began an outward push into Asia. The Soviet leaders remained in the background and used Communist Chinese leaders, trained in Moscow, and Chinese soldiers furnished with arms and ammunition. Soon they overthrew the lawful Chinese government and took control. The Communists then began their usual tactics. Again the Catholics of China had to suffer cruel persecution. China, too, became an iron-curtain country.

The great Jesuit missionary, Saint Francis Xavier, after working in parts of India and Japan, had hoped to go on to China. If he had carried out his intentions he would probably have had great success making it a Catholic nation. However, it was not to be. The saint fell ill and died on a little island called Sancian, overlooking the coast of China. God took Saint Francis Xavier, and left China for us to work and pray over in our own days.

#### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Complete the following statements by filling in the missing word or words in each blank space.

1. The city of \_\_\_\_\_ in northern China was once the capital of China.
2. The largest part of China's foreign trade is carried through the port of \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The island of Hong Kong on the coast of China is a possession of \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Mining in China has been handicapped by poor \_\_\_\_\_.
5. China's most important food crop is \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Most Chinese families make their living by \_\_\_\_\_.



# THE CHINESE, MONGOLS, AND TIBETANS:

1 Describe the surface of China and her climate. Where are the highest mountains? Which are the principal rivers?



Total population 463,493,000. Catholics 3,250,000. What percent is Catholic?

2 Make a list of the farm products and natural resources in the following areas:  
1. China 2. Tibet  
3. Mongolia 4. Formosa  
5. Sinkiang  
6. Manchuria.



The highest peak in the world is Mt. Everest. Give its location.

3 Tell something interesting about each of the following areas: Tibet, Mongolia, Manchuria, Formosa, Sinkiang.



One out of every five persons in the world is Chinese. What percentage is Chinese?



4 Why are China and other Oriental countries called the Far East, although we usually travel west over the Pacific to get there?



Give the reason why China's Great Wall was built. What century?

5 Describe the home life and occupation of a family of boat people. Why do these people live on water rather than on land?



Soybeans are an important crop in China. Name two uses of soybeans.

# 



Most of China's people live in great river valleys or along the seacoast. The chief rivers of China are these: the Hwang, or Yellow River; the Yangtze; the Si River. Eastern China is one of the best-watered countries of the world.

About three fourths of China is mountainous. The highest mountains in Asia, the Himalayas, are in southern Tibet. Mount Everest is the highest peak. China's lowlands are in Manchuria and in the great river valleys.

Winds from the Pacific carry rain to China during the summer. In the winter, when the winds usually blow out to sea, there is little rain. North China has cold winters and hot summers, with a growing season of less than five months. South China is tropical.

Three out of every four people in China are farmers, and the farm families live on their own produce. Loss of a harvest because of drought or flood causes famine. The most important food crops are rice and wheat. The two important textile crops are cotton and silk.

China is moderately rich in some minerals, but has large deposits of coal, especially in Manchuria. There are scattered deposits of iron ore—mostly in the north; tin is found in the south.

Canton, in South China, is an important harbor for imports. Shanghai, the largest city, is the center for exports.

Formosa is an island off the coast of China. The western part of Formosa is flat and well cultivated, yielding two crops of rice a year. Camphor trees furnish the bulk of the world's camphor.

Sinkiang Province is the Wild West of China. It is farther from the ocean than any other area on earth. The province is divided by the Heavenly Mountains. There are desert waste and salt marsh, where the annual rainfall is almost zero, but the Ili River valley is a rich agricultural region. Sinkiang has much mineral wealth, gold and petroleum.

Tibet is on a high plateau, and few people live there because of the altitude and poor climate. The Tibetan people do a little farming; they raise wheat, barley, vegetables, and fruits.

Mongolia is a vast territory with rather indefinite boundaries. The Gobi Desert covers a large part of the country. The natives are principally nomad herders.

6 Name and locate four important cities of China. Make a list of the important exports and imports of the port cities.



Tell the class how a Chinese farm family raises rice in South China.

7 What large island lies off the east coast of China? What product is obtained from trees that grow on this island?



## THE MARCHING CHURCH

The Chi Rho (pronounced key-row) is an ancient Christian symbol for Christ. It is made up of the first two letters in the Greek word for Christ. The circle stands for the world, and the meaning is: Christ for the whole world, and the whole world for Christ.

Jesus Christ, the Son of God, was born on our earth and lived for thirty-three years in a small, poor country of the Near East. He was disowned by His own nation, and finally put to a cruel death as a criminal. He worked out God's eternal plans to save all men from their sins and from their unhappiness and despair. Christ taught and healed and comforted a few people in the little land of His birth. He left this earth after a short life spent walking among men. Yet He intended His life, His death, His teachings, and the grace of God, which He gave, to be the precious possession of every man on earth until the end of time.

Jesus trained a little group of men in His ideas and His ways. He expected great things of those first missionaries, the Twelve Apostles.

After His body had been three days in the tomb Christ came back from the dead. On His lips was a message that would shake the world. "Going, therefore, teach ye all nations: baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost... and behold I am with you all days."

So Christ set up His Church and gave it His orders. It was, from the beginning, a marching Church. Its members were not to stay at home and only take care of their own souls. They were not to wait until all the people in Jerusalem were converted, before they would go to other nations. They were to begin at once and set out to the ends of the earth, teaching the life and death and the words of Christ to all men, making Christians of all. They were to baptize converts, and give them Christ's other great sacraments, which bring grace and salvation to souls. So the Church has continued her work until the present day. It is the great Church Universal—for the whole world—the Church Catholic. It has a center, in Rome, but it has no limits except the ends of the earth, and the end

of time, and the soul of the last person in the world.

Missioners have gone out from the Church since its beginning, Christianizing first the nations around the Mediterranean, then the more northern countries of Europe. As soon as the American continents were found, the Church was busy there; and on the islands of the South Seas, she set up palm-leaf chapels topped with the cross of her Master. Whenever the Faith was strongly founded in a new nation, from that, in turn, new missionaries went out to other countries. The Faith, like a fire, burned better when it spread. When the Faith was weak, missionary work died down, and when missionary work died down, the Faith at home became weak.

China and the other countries of the Far East have been the target of missionary work for hundreds of years. Most of the people of those countries are still pagans, with the sadness of heart and darkness of mind that belong with pagan beliefs. Non-Christian orientals spend their days fearing that they offend the devils, fearing bad luck, fearing death; and knowing nothing about the God of love, who is their Father.

An old Chinese woman who was studying to be baptized wept with joy when she heard the Ten Commandments. They were so sure, so clear! From them she learned just what to do, in order to please God. She knew she need never live in fear and doubt again.

"How long ago was it when this Son of God lived on earth?" she asked. "Was it just a few months ago?"

"No," answered the missionary priest. "No, it was nearly two thousand years ago."

"What! So long ago! Then why am I so late hearing about Him? Why did it take you so long to tell me? Where have you Christians been, all these hundreds of years?"

## Sinkiang and Tibet

**Sinkiang.** Sinkiang in the western part of China is one of the largest provinces of this country. It is surrounded by high mountains on the north, west, and south. Summers are hot, winters cold, and dust storms common. With little rain, the land is a desert. Sandy soil and lack of water make travel difficult. There are oases, however, and several great highways connecting eastern China with western Asia touch the oases. The highways are those used by Marco Polo and other traders and explorers many years ago.

**Tibet.** Tibet is south of Sinkiang and is considered part of China. It is sometimes called the roof of the world. It lies on a high plateau surrounded by mountain peaks higher still. Summers are short and warm, winters long and cold. Rainfall is light and in some places the farmers must depend on irrigation.

Lhasa, the chief city, is in a valley protected from cold winds. It was once known as the "Forbidden City," and until recently foreigners were not allowed to enter. A leader of the Buddhist faith, called the Grand Lama, and many Buddhist priests live there. Vegetables, fruits, and flowers are grown in the valley.

The long-haired yak is Tibet's principal domestic animal although camels, donkeys, and horses are also used. The yak is a beast of burden; its milk is good to drink and for making cheese; its hide makes good leather; and its hair can be made into rope or cloth. The yak lives well in the high, cool mountains, protected by its shaggy hair.

**Buddhism.** The people of Tibet are interested in religion more than with anything else. They are Buddhists, but of a special kind. Buddhism was started in India, some five hundred years before the time of Christ,



Mountains of Tibet seen from the border of India. A Tibetan woman holds a Buddhist rosary, and a "prayer wheel" with a rattle-like handle. Inside the wheel are prayers written on paper. The Buddhist twirls the wheel, meaning that the prayers are said each time the wheel goes round.



by a young Indian prince named Gautama. Finding that riches and pleasures did not bring him happiness, Gautama set out to try and find out more about God. He gave up his home and his wealth and spent his time thinking. Gautama had no one to guide him. The Jews, the only people on earth who had kept God's first teaching clear and pure, were far away in Palestine. The young prince worked out a religion, which he taught to others, and which spread from India to many other parts of Asia.

Gautama's followers called him Buddha, which means Enlightened One. His religion is called Buddhism. It is a religion of sadness and despair. To the Buddhist, life is evil and tiresome; he wishes to be rid of living as soon as possible. But he believes that after death his soul will be born again into some other creature on earth. He thinks he will become an animal if he has been bad, and a higher human being if he has been good.

**Strange likeness.** In some countries, and especially in Tibet, a surprising thing has happened to Buddhism. Hundreds of monasteries are full of Buddhist monks, who sing prayers day and night. A ceremony which, in appearance, is somewhat like Mass is celebrated. The Buddhists of Tibet have a spiritual leader, called the Living Buddha, whom they respect and obey somewhat as Catholics do the Pope. Buddhists use a kind of rosary in their prayers, and some of their beliefs have a faint likeness to Catholic truth. They even worship a goddess of mercy, who is believed to be sweet and gentle, listening to the prayers of all who come to her. Some people see in this an idea of Mary, the Mother of Mercy.

How did all these likenesses come to be? Perhaps the following is an explanation. The Buddhism found in Tibet was started long ago by a young man who was considered very holy. This young man taught the Tibetans a new way of Buddhism and many wise things about God. He started many of the practices that they carry on. According to the old story, he received his learning and his wisdom from a strange-looking foreigner who came from Europe. These things happened about the time the Catholic Church was spreading in Europe. Therefore many people believe that some missionary priest, toiling on foot across half the world, made his way over the mountains into Tibet. There he began instructing some bright young Buddhist in the Catholic Faith, but died before he finished.

The pupil went about preaching the few facts he had learned. He was soon followed by many Tibetans, and so became the reformer of Buddhism. He had not learned, however, very much of our Christian doctrine. Through the ages the people of this remote country have practised fearful devil

worship. In their own way they have done some searching for the true God. They are very pious, doing as well as they can with the little truth they have.

These Buddhists often make long pilgrimages to Lhasa, their holy city where their Living Buddha lives. Some pilgrims take years for this trip, traveling hundreds of miles on foot, throwing themselves on the ground at every step and touching their foreheads to the dust. The Tibetans have always claimed to be an independent nation, and wished to have none of the rule that the Chinese have forced on them from time to time.

**Tibet today.** After the Communists with Russian help took China, the Chinese Communist government announced that it was going to "free" Tibet from its lamas and make it a godless, iron-curtain country. Outside nations soon heard a faint, faraway radio voice calling from Lhasa. An Englishman had long ago settled there, married a Tibetan woman, and turned Tibetan. He had a little radio set, and was telling the world that Communists were threatening Tibet; that Tibet wished to be an independent country, not a part of Communist China. The faint radio voice asked the strong nations for help.

Tibet is a country that has remained unchanged for centuries, yet in modern times traders have been there. The few travelers who have made the dangerous journey say that the little shops have fountain pens and a few other foreign articles. Lhasa has electricity and telephones.

The monks of Saint Bernard, from the Alpine pass of Switzerland, recently set up a hostel, or inn, for travelers in the mountains bordering Tibet. There they intend to care for travelers as they have done for ages in the Alps. They did not bring any of their



big Saint Bernard dogs with them, but set about training native Tibetan dogs to search out people who are lost and exhausted crossing the mountains. The Tibetans have never allowed any missionaries to settle inside Tibet and establish the Church there.

## Mongolia

Mongolia, a large region in the interior of Asia, was considered part of China for many years. Later it was divided into Inner Mongolia, which remained part of China, and Outer Mongolia, called the Mongolian People's Republic, under the power of Soviet Russia. The people resemble the Chinese and are called Mongols.

Summers are hot and winters cold, and the country is subject to strong winds. Parts of the country are nearly level; others are hilly, and in many places coarse sand or gravel covers the land. Mongolia is generally dry, but in some places, where there is a little rain, there are grasslands. In most of the country irrigation is necessary to produce crops.

**A nomad people.** Those who are not herders live in small villages, where water may be obtained for irrigation. The villages are trading centers. Urga, the chief city, is connected by good roads with China and Russia. It is a trading center and has a few small factories.

Since grass is not very abundant, animals must travel great distances in search of food. Those tending the flocks ride horses, although camels are often used to carry baggage. Sheep are the most common animal. The people eat horse meat, mutton, and beef and drink milk and tea. There are a few good roads which are used in trading wool, hides, skins, and furs for millet, flour, and sugar. Caravans of camels are usually used in this trade, although motor trucks are

becoming more common. Mongols grow up on horseback and are among the world's skilled horsemen and cowboys.

Herders live in dwellings called *yurts*. A yurt is a framework of poles, over which is stretched heavy wool felt. It can be taken down easily, loaded on the back of a camel, and set up again in less than half an hour.

**Religion.** Most Mongolians practice the same kind of Buddhism as that of the people of Tibet. However, there have long been Catholic missions in Mongolia. Many of them are in charge of Belgian missionaries, who gather their Christian converts into Catholic villages and guide them in Catholic ways of living. Villages often have walls for protection against robbers. Fields and flocks are on every side. Church, school, and homes are close together, like the villages of European peasants. A slow, solid growth of the Catholic Faith will in time make a civilized Christian country of these half-desert wastes. Communism, however, the enemy of God and of the Church, creeps slowly in and gains power, persecuting the Christian people and robbing children of the Faith.

## Formosa

Formosa means beautiful, and this island received its name from early Portuguese sailors who were struck by its beauty. Japan took Formosa from China more than fifty years ago, and the island was not returned until after World War II. Most of the natives are Chinese who carry on farming or mining. The island is rich in natural resources. The climate and crops are tropical.

Camphor trees are grown here, and the camphor is obtained by cutting the trees into small pieces and passing steam over the wood. The steam causes camphor to come off in vapor. Camphor is then collected by cooling the vapor.

## PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Answer each of the following questions in a complete sentence.

1. What causes most famines in China?
2. What island supplies most of the world's camphor?
3. In what part of China is the Gobi Desert located?
4. Why is Tibet called the "roof of the world"?
5. Why are many of the people of Mongolia nomads?
6. What important textile fibers are produced in China?

Copy the numbered items in column A. Next to each write the item from column B that belongs with it.

### A

1. yaks
2. yurts
3. soybeans
4. tung trees
5. coolies
6. indigo

### B

Chinese laborers  
drying oil in paints  
beasts of burden  
blue dyes for cloth  
improve the soil  
tent-like dwellings

## 2. How People Live in Japan and Korea

Japan is a nation of four main islands off the eastern coast of Asia. Although it is many thousand miles west of the United States, we know it as part of "The Far East" and "The Land of the Rising Sun." It has received these names because it is far east of Europe, and because the Japanese name for their country, Nippon, means "sunrise." The Japanese of olden times worshiped the sun as a god, and believed their islands to be especially blessed by it.

**Surface and climate.** Japan's islands are mountainous. There are numerous rivers, most of them very short. Many have waterfalls which produce electricity.

In northern Japan winters are cold, with snowdrifts often higher than a man's head. Snow may stay on the ground all winter. The summers are warm, with a moderate amount of rain. In southern Japan summers are hot, with heavy rainfall; winters are mild, with a little snow which melts quickly.

**Quaking rim.** All around the Pacific Ocean lies an unquiet rim of land. Through the East Indies, the Philippine Islands, Japan, the islands approaching Alaska, and Alaska's rocky backbone, on down the Pacific coast through California, Middle America, and the South American countries of the Andes continues this restless frame of

the great ocean. Here and there, along this tremendous stretch of coast land rise volcanic peaks belching up their gases, lava, and volcanic ash. Throughout this rim the earth is uneasy and does not lie quiet. Hot springs and geysers boil and steam. No one knows when an earthquake or a tidal wave will strike.

Earthquakes shake Japan many times a year. Some are only quivers of the earth and are not noticed, but others have destroyed entire cities. Earthquakes of recent times have killed at least 200,000 people, once ruining all of the city of Yokohama and two thirds of Tokyo. Thousands of people drowned when a great tidal wave came in from the ocean. Buildings fell apart, trains were overturned, and bridges were damaged. Water pipes were broken and when fires broke out there was no water to fight them. Thousands of people died and thousands more were made homeless.

The Japanese build their homes very low, using light wood and bamboo, sometimes using rope to hold the pieces together. It is easier to escape from such buildings than from brick or stone houses. However, the best earthquake-proof buildings are those of modern steel and concrete which are being put up in some Japanese cities today.

**Shut off from other countries.** About a hundred years ago Japan was shut off from the rest of the world. The people knew nothing about foreign countries because their leaders prevented visits to them. The rest of the world knew nothing of the Japanese because they were not permitted to enter the country. Sailors feared Japan because the Japanese sometimes treated shipwrecked sailors unkindly. Not until the United States became a great shipping and trading nation in the Pacific did Japan permit foreign trade.

Commodore Perry of the U.S. Navy opened up Japan by sailing gunboats into Tokyo Bay off Yokohama. Perry's visit brought an end to Japan's fear of foreigners and in a short time the country's ports were opened to Americans, and later to merchants and travelers of all lands.

**Rise to empire.** Japan expanded rapidly, adopted modern ways, and built many factories. It obtained additional territory through war, receiving Formosa and small islands from China, and Sakhalin Island and other lands from Russia. Still later, Japan took over Korea. In World War I, Japan took over German islands in the Pacific, and later obtained special rights in Manchuria.

When World War II broke out, the Japanese Empire was as large as Texas and its population was over 100 million people. It was the most powerful nation in Asia and one of the strongest countries on earth. Japanese products were sold all over the world and her ships sailed to every big port. Steel mills, shipyards, electric power plants, and factories were spread all over the country. In only ninety years Japan had become a prosperous modern nation.

Japan's rulers were not satisfied with these gains. They made war on China and later attacked the United States. For a few months, Japan's armies gained much of southeastern Asia and many Pacific islands. But the United States fought back, bombed factories and cities, defeated Japanese armies and navies, and occupied the country. It was upon two Japanese cities that we used the first atom bombs to be exploded on this earth. As a result of the war Japan lost all the land it had taken in previous wars. It is no longer a mighty empire. Today Japan is still as large as it was in the days of Commodore Perry, but now it has many more people to support. Our forces under General MacArthur have taught the Japanese democratic ways. The people are busily and cheerfully rebuilding their nation.

**Farming.** Only one of every six acres can be farmed in hilly Japan. The entire acreage of Japanese farm land is less than the amount farmed in Illinois. Most of Japan, like Switzerland, "stands on end." Japanese farmers have accomplished wonders on some steep hillsides. They have terraced them, with each bank held in place by large stones. The stones are cut so that they do not fit exactly together; there are small holes and crevices between them. In these holes between the stones the farmers place

A torii (sacred gate) and a stone lantern stand where land and water meet on Miyajima (Temple Island) in the beautiful Inland Sea of Japan.





One way the Japanese use a steep slope.

strawberry plants, which send their roots back into the soil behind the rocks. The leaves and berries hang from the face of the rock, where the fruit ripens in the hot sun and cannot get damaged by water or mud. Japanese strawberry jam is a famous and delicious export product.

Rice is grown on many farms and is the chief food of the people. In southern Japan the same land may be used to grow many crops. After rice has been harvested, radishes or turnips may be grown in the same plot; and when they have been harvested, winter wheat is planted. When spring comes, it is time to plant rice again.

Farms in northern Japan are much larger and, because of the short growing season,

produce only one crop. The farmers raise some rice but also produce wheat, oats, beans, potatoes, and millet. Some live on their farms instead of in villages as most Japanese farmers do.

**Tea.** Tea was produced in China some two thousand years ago, and was at first used as medicine. It was introduced into Japan by Buddhist monks, who were used to drinking it to keep themselves awake during their midnight prayers. Now everybody in Japan drinks tea: men, women, and children. However, Japanese people drink green tea, not the black tea with which most of us are familiar.

The tea plant is evergreen, and its flowers are white and fragrant. It is raised from

seed, taking about three years to come into bearing, although ten-year-old plants produce excellent tea. The bush is not allowed to grow more than three or four feet high. Picking takes place two or three times during the season, in April or May, again in June or July, and again in autumn where the season is long enough. The tea plant grows well only south of latitude 40 degrees north. The enemy of the tea producer is dampness, and great care is taken to dry out the tea leaves as soon as possible after they have been picked.

In some districts the leaves are dried in the sun, but most commercial tea is dried immediately after picking. Leaves are steamed in a sieve for a half minute, then placed over a slow charcoal blaze in paper-bottomed frames, at a temperature of about 120 degrees Fahrenheit. During the drying process men rub and roll the leaves with their hands until each leaf is twisted and at length becomes brittle. Green tea is fired three times before it is finished; black tea goes through the same process after the leaves have been allowed to ferment, taking on a dark color.

Japanese do not use milk or sugar with their tea; that would spoil its delicate flavor. Tea has done much to set up trade routes and establish commerce in the world. It is over cups of tea that important questions are discussed, social talk is carried on, and matters of learning or business are talked over. Tea is one of the important matters in Japanese life.

**Useful grass.** Bamboo may be found throughout Japan. It is the ideal material for delicate as well as sturdy work, because it is light, strong, and straight. It is easy to cultivate and takes up little room. Indeed it has been called the poor man's gold mine. Bamboo costs the farmers nothing, for most

farmhouses have a little clump of the graceful plants growing near by.

The larger bamboos are used as poles for carrying heavy weights, for drying clothes, and punting boats. They are also used as flagstuffs, and as water pipes (for they do not rust nor rot easily).

A small bamboo is used to make tobacco pipe stems; one of middle size makes doors and windows. Bamboo, cut into thin strips and bound with silk, forms window-blinds which keep out the sun and let in the cool breezes. The tender sprouts of some kinds of bamboo are boiled and eaten as a delicious vegetable, like a giant asparagus.

Penholders, broom handles, walking sticks, umbrella handles, ribs of umbrellas, angling rods, whips, ladders, yard measures, bows and arrows, workmen's hats are all made of bamboo. So are under-water hedges for the collecting of oysters and edible seaweed, hedges around houses, dikes for rivers (large stones being placed for this purpose in bamboo crates), floors for verandas, travelers' trunks, torches, chopsticks, bird cages, fish traps, flutes, trumpets, picture frames, cask hoops, all these are made of bamboo. Even nails (bamboo nails do better for certain purposes than metal ones), ladles, tea scoops, sieves, shutters, fans, flower vases, toys, and ornaments of many kinds are made of this highly useful plant.

The dried husk of the young bamboo serves for wrapping up sandwiches, meat, and cakes, as well as for the manufacture of sandals and wooden clogs. The leaves of one kind provide a clean, cool surface on which to lay fish in a basket, which is made of bamboo split and twisted. Such twisted, split bamboos also serve to make strong hawsers for boats, and even for the construction of bridges in the rural districts;



no other material is so cheap and so easy to handle.

In the cultivation of rice the value of the bamboo is plainly seen. First, a broad stick of bamboo with loose, hanging strips serves to frighten birds away. Then the stalks of rice are drawn through a kind of comb consisting of a number of bamboo teeth on a wooden frame. Sometimes a type of flail made of bamboo is used to beat the grains from the stalks. Finally the rice is sifted through a sieve made of plaited bamboo, then winnowed in a bamboo basket. Bamboo is employed in the cultivation of tea from the picking to the sieving and its use in the silk industry is also very important.

Bamboo is not a tree, but a giant grass; neither is it a delicate tropical plant. Look at Japanese paintings and see the bamboo gracefully bending under a weight of snow! Nobody seems to be quite sure how many varieties of bamboo there are. Some say there are 550 species, of which Japan has 150. Some of these bamboos grow but a few inches in height, others to 50 feet with stems six or seven inches in diameter. Some develop at the rate of six or seven feet a year, others shoot up overnight.

**The Japanese farmer.** In America, a twenty-acre farm is very small. A family can, in some cases, make a living on such a small holding if the soil is rich, if the growing season is long, if there is plenty of rain or water for irrigation, and if the land is made to produce very highly. The average American farm is nearer two hundred acres.

For years, Japanese farmers have made a living on as little as two acres of land per family. On his income from his small, neat patch of earth the Japanese farmer and his family may have a small house spotlessly clean, with electric lights and radio, enjoy two baths each day, wear silk clothing, eat

nourishing food, send the children to school, and perhaps even put a son or two through agricultural college. And after a hard day's work in the hot sun, the farmer may enjoy a game of checkers on his breezy front porch, or write a poem about a butterfly and hang it on the blossoming cherry tree.

How can a family be supported on such a small farm? The answer is, intelligence, hard work, and the knowledge handed down from father to son for generations, combined with the latest scientific discoveries; and, in addition, the Japanese art of living simply while living well.

In agricultural college Japanese are taught that "what the farmer needs, he should produce." A meal in a Japanese farmhouse may consist of mushroom soup, rice with fish, omelet, sweet potatoes cooked in sugar, bamboo shoots, lotus pods, white radishes, pickled chrysanthemum petals, and tea made of cherry blossoms. And everything on the menu has been raised on the farm, even the fish.

The farmer reads two or three daily newspapers, up-to-date magazines, and the latest famous books, including some translated from English and other languages into Japanese. All these are paid for by the produce from the farm. A plot of mulberry bushes feeds the silkworms which the farmer's wife raises. She and her daughters spin the silk and weave clothing for the family. One of the boys shapes wooden sandals or clogs for all from wood of the "kiri" tree which grows on the farm. When the family is in the house, these clogs always stand in neat rows outside the door, for no one would dream of wearing them into the rooms. Japanese walk on their spotless, shining yellow mats only with clean bare feet, or shod in their dainty short mitten-toe socks. Their three-inch thick, soft mats are made of straw from

## SILK

the rice and so is the roof of the farmhouse.

Bark from mulberry trees on the farm provides tough, silky paper which is pasted over sliding windows, and over panels of the sliding doors that divide the house into rooms. Paper, instead of glass, makes these sliding panels light in weight, and lets in health-giving ultra-violet rays of sunlight that would be kept out by glass.

The Japanese have learned to live with little furniture, so that a small house is roomy. Closets in the wall with sliding doors hold bedding and cushions. At night, beds are made up on the clean, soft-padded floors, and in the morning all is put away again. People sit on cushions on this same floor, and food is served on small trays or tables easily removed after meals. A small charcoal fire in an artistic pottery brazier provides warmth in winter. An American Indian is said to have remarked "Pale Face build big fire, sit away back; Indian build little fire, sit close to." So it is also with the Japanese.

**Wise farming methods.** The Japanese farmer coaxes his crops. He treats each plant like a child, watching and feeding it carefully. Every stalk of wheat, every clump of rice is in its place. There are no weeds, no dry, caked soil. Every inch is moist, fresh, and loose. The farmer strokes the plants with his fingers to catch insects. He keeps a big compost heap, made up of all waste materials from farm and house. Even the old straw from worn-out roofs goes into it. This makes fertilizer for his crops.

The farmer says he practices six-story agriculture. For instance, he raises strawberries and vegetables on the "ground floor." Young fruit trees, to be transplanted when they are big enough, grow here and there in the patch. These are the "second floor" crop. A big walnut tree in the middle of the field makes the third story. It produces walnuts.

223

Probably two million Japanese families make a living by silkworm culture, and many others make it a part-time cottage industry.



Anyone can buy sheets of paper on which are glued hundreds of eggs laid by the silkworm moth. The family keep the room warm and watch carefully until the eggs hatch and small "worms" (really caterpillars) come out

and look for something to eat. Everybody gathers mulberry leaves then to feed these small livestock which are kept in trays. The room must be quiet and of a regular temperature. In a few weeks the silkworms are ready to



spin their cocoons. They are put into straw shelters where they soon wrap themselves in silk and go to sleep. Inside the cocoon, the caterpillar grows wings and will in time break out and fly away. The cocoons are roasted before this happens, then dipped in hot water to dissolve the gum that sticks the silk together. The silk is wound onto reels; one cocoon the size of a peanut may produce a thread 1,300 yards long. Much raw silk is spun and woven in Japan; much is exported.

In the walnut tree are beehives, so the fourth floor produces honey. The farmer says he has two basements, for he has a fish pool with two kinds of fish; one kind lives near the surface, one deeper down. So he has six-story agriculture.

In addition, the Japanese farmer has a rice field and plots on which he raises several crops a year. Young plants are set in between older ones, so when the older plants are harvested, younger ones take over. Bamboo and useful shrubs and trees grow on ditch banks. Chickens or ducks stroll about the little place. The farm is a productive powerhouse. Work on it is done by hand; only a few larger farms have work animals.

For years many Japanese farmers never owned their land; they had to pay a high rent to landlords who lived in the cities. After the war, our American General MacArthur guided the Japanese in making land reforms so that more farmers may own their acres.

**Forests and minerals.** Without trees Japan could not support so many people, because the soil on the mountainsides would be washed away. The forests hold back the water so that it will not run off too quickly and carry away the soil. The forests furnish wood for hundreds of things. The Japanese are careful of their forests, replanting, and preventing too much cutting of trees. However, after the war many forests had to be cut to rebuild bombed-out villages.

Japan is poor in minerals. Coal is the chief product, although small amounts of gold, copper, and sulphur are mined. Water power is used to make up for the lack of coal and petroleum.

**Fishing.** There is little farm land and few cattle or sheep or hogs, but the people eat a great deal of fish for food. One of every five Japanese is a fisherman. The fishermen

live in villages along the coast. Most of them fish from small boats near shore, but many go out in large ships and stay on the ocean several weeks. Some ships are refrigerated to keep the fish fresh, and some have canning factories on shipboard. Some sail to Antarctic regions to catch whales.

Japan has long exported mackerel, halibut, cod, and herring as well as canned crabmeat. Although much fish is sold fresh, some is dried, pickled, or canned. Fish oil is used in medicines and fish waste for fertilizer.

**Growth of manufacturing.** Before World War II, Japan was an important manufacturing country. It had large iron and steel mills, shipyards, and factories where textile goods were made. Many toys and small articles were manufactured. Many articles were made in homes. During the war many factories were damaged by bombs, and the manufacturing industry was set back. However, the industrious Japanese set to work at once to rebuild their factories and to get back their foreign trade.

#### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Complete the following statements by filling in the missing word or words in each blank space.

1. Japanese cities have often been destroyed by \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The grass plant for which the Japanese people have found many uses is \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The Japanese have made their hillsides into useful farm land by building \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The industry engaged in by the many Japanese who live in villages along the coast is \_\_\_\_\_.
5. An important natural resource that Japan lacks is \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Silkworms are fed with the leaves from \_\_\_\_\_ trees.
7. Work on Japanese farms is done by \_\_\_\_\_.
8. The raising of silkworms in Japan is a \_\_\_\_\_ industry.

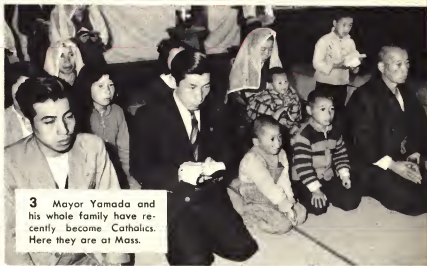


1 Mr. Yamada, the Mayor of Sakamoto Village, sits at his desk signing reports and attending to all sorts of village business. (Sakamata rhymes with "block a photo" and means "at the foot of the hill.")

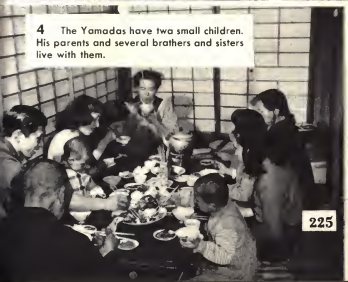
## THE MAYOR OF SAKAMOTO VILLAGE



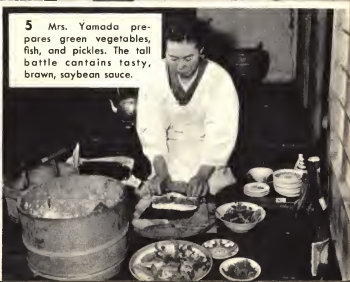
2 He often goes to see village people, to inspect new buildings and street cleaning.



3 Mayor Yamada and his whole family have recently become Catholics. Here they are at Mass.



4 The Yamadas have two small children. His parents and several brothers and sisters live with them.



5 Mrs. Yamada prepares green vegetables, fish, and pickles. The tall battle contains tasty, brawn, soybean sauce.

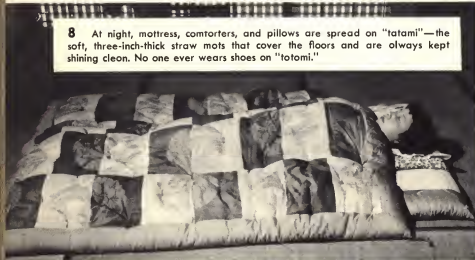




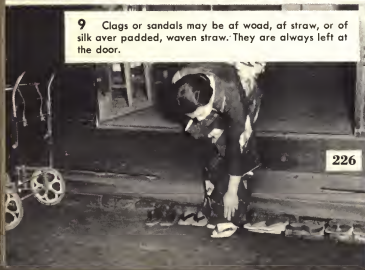
**6** The Yamadas are a cultured, well-educated family. Mr. Yamada often plays the flute or checkers in the evening. His sisters play the harp and take lessons in Japanese dances.



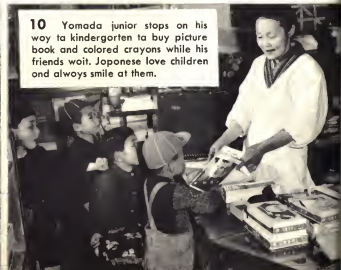
**7** Panels in wall slide back, show drawers and shelves where bedding and garments are kept neatly folded. Wall panels are usually closed; rooms are neat and bare.



**8** At night, mattress, comforters, and pillows are spread on "tatami"—the soft, three-inch-thick straw mats that cover the floors and are always kept shining clean. No one ever wears shoes on "tatami."



**9** Clags or sandals may be of wood, of straw, or of silk over padded, waven straw. They are always left at the door.

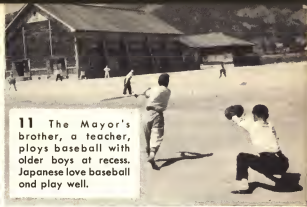


**10** Yamada junior stops on his way to kindergarten to buy picture book and colored crayons while his friends wait. Japanese love children and always smile at them.

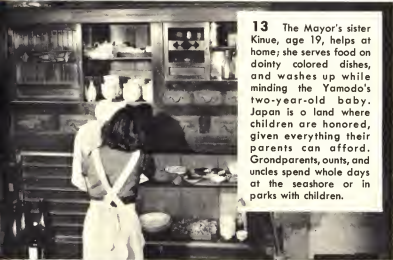




**12** Young teacher Yamada shows primary-school pupil how to read. The characters are the same used by the Chinese, but the Japanese pronounce them differently. He also teaches arithmetic on the obacus, a simple, wooden adding machine, very fast and sure.



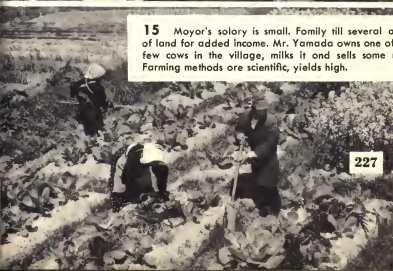
**11** The Mayor's brother, a teacher, plays baseball with older boys at recess. Japanese love baseball and play well.



**13** The Mayor's sister Kinue, age 19, helps at home; she serves food on dainty colored dishes, and washes up while minding the Yamodo's two-year-old baby. Japan is a land where children are honored, given everything their parents can afford. Grandparents, aunts, and uncles spend whole days at the seashore or in parks with children.



**14** Mayor's wife dons work apron and carries manure to spread on garden.



**15** Mayor's solory is small. Family till several acres of land for added income. Mr. Yamada owns one of the few cows in the village, milks it and sells some milk. Farming methods are scientific, yields high.



**Cities.** Osaka and Kobe are sometimes called twin cities because they are close to one another. Osaka, a great factory city, has three times as many people, but Kobe is more important as a port since the largest ships cannot enter Osaka's harbor. Kobe is a center of trade for Osaka and central Japan.

Kyoto is the center of the silk and tea industries. It is in a beautiful location, surrounded by hills. Every year thousands of tourists visit the city. Kyoto was once the capital of Japan. It is famous for beautiful temples, palaces, and parks.

Tokyo and Yokohama are also twin cities. Tokyo is the capital and greatest manufacturing city, while Yokohama is the chief seaport and silk export city. Tokyo has six times as many people as Yokohama and is one of the largest cities in the world. Its downtown area is modern, with wide, paved streets, department stores, and big office buildings. In other areas, however, Tokyo has many small, old-style Japanese wooden buildings on narrow streets. These buildings are used both as workshops and homes.

**Transportation.** Japan has excellent railroads. In crossing the mountains, the railroads wind about and pass through many tunnels. Ferryboats connect some islands and cross over to Korea. One underwater railway tunnel connects two of the islands. There are numerous bus lines, electric railways and street cars, taxicabs and trucks in the large cities of Japan.

**People and their work.** The Japanese have large hospitals and scientific research laboratories, where scientists work on experiments useful to the world of medicine and of manufacture. One Japanese scientist was a recent Nobel prize winner. The Japanese Doctor Noguchi, one of the world's famous men, died a victim of his work on

the cause and cure of yellow fever. Japanese women work in laboratories, too; many are scientific workers, and there are many nurses trained in Japanese hospitals.

There are large department stores in Japan and many small shops, each one the property of a family. The family lives in the back room or upstairs and keeps the place going with everybody's help. Father and mother work by turns, boys and girls help out after school hours, and even baby plays on the floor or looks on from his place on mother's back.

Peddlers move about shouting their wares as they carry loads of flowers, vegetables, fish, toys, cakes, roasted chestnuts, or other good things through the streets morning and evening. Busy housewives take time off from their work to come out and buy. Even goldfish—and some are very beautiful—are peddled through the streets in this way. The raising of goldfish is one of Japan's minor industries.

There are of course plenty of carpenters, bricklayers, railroad men, miners, bus drivers, airplane pilots, actors and actresses (motion picture making is a rising Japanese industry), and members of other trades and professions, much the same as in our own country.

Although many Japanese wear leather shoes, the native footgear is the sandal or wooden clog. Many Japanese make these clogs and sandals, sometimes with the short socks, with mitten toes, in white or black. There are cheap straw sandals for poor workmen, and there are dainty, embroidered and colored sandals to match ladies' kimono. Straw, bamboo, silk and velvet, rubber and rope fibers are used, besides a special kind of wood that is light and strong. Little shoe shops are often open to the street; shoes are made and sold in the same place,

and the owner's family lives in a back room or upstairs.

**Shinto.** Japan has had for ages a religion called "Shinto," or the "Way of the Gods." According to its teachings, one of the most important divine beings is the bright and beautiful goddess of the sun; and the Emperors of Japan have all been descended from her, reigning in one unbroken line from the beginning of the world; the people of Japan are not only the Emperor's subjects, but his children. The islands upon which they live were also said to have been born of the gods in the early ages of the world.

The Japanese, believing these things, have always been very patriotic. They love their Emperor and their country not only with a patriotic love, but with religious devotion. In former times the Emperor never mingled with his people but was treated as a god. When he rode through the streets no

one was allowed to look at him. However, after Japan was defeated in World War II, the Americans under General MacArthur introduced democratic ideas among the Japanese. The Emperor, his Empress, and the young princes and princesses are now often seen in public and their people love them more than ever. The old Shinto beliefs are passing away.

**Buddhism in Japan.** Buddhism came to Japan in early days. There are forty-one million Buddhists in Japan, with more than seventy-one thousand temples. One branch alone has eighteen thousand monks and nuns, and more than eight hundred priests. Buddhist monks and nuns live a severe life. They rise at half-past three in the morning. After folding up their beds and stowing them away, they pray in silence. Meals are

229

Things that children like are everywhere in Japan. The goldfish peddler brings his shining wares, swimming in tubs, through the streets. Toys are for sale in every shopping district. Picture books and children's magazines are plentiful, and all these things are low in price. Clothes are pretty and always spotless, and children enjoy going barefoot with protecting sandals.



light, with no meat, no fish, no eggs, no butter, no milk, and no cheese. Only vegetables and grains are allowed. The monastery is never heated, so that the winter cold is hard to bear.

Some Buddhists make pilgrimages, walking through the city streets, beating a drum and repeating the prayer "O, the jewel in the lotus!" which means something like "O, the treasure in the law of Buddha!" There are Buddhist services for the souls of the dead, and many other practices that remind us of the Catholic Church.

**Christianity.** In the year 1549 there landed in Japan a missionary from Europe—a Jesuit Father named Francis Xavier. After a study of the Japanese language, he began instructing the people in the Catholic doctrine; and within two years there were two thousand Catholics in the Islands. In the meantime, more Jesuits had arrived to continue the work. Francis Xavier, who was a great saint, left the Japanese mission in their care while he himself went on to try

to open a mission in China. He loved the Japanese, and wrote of them: "Working among intelligent people, anxious to learn in what religion they would best save their souls, brings great satisfaction. The Christians of Japan are very dear to me."

The Jesuits who were left in charge of the mission continued converting the people, working first with the members of the nobility, who were soon followed into the Church by the common people. Within thirty years there were two hundred thousand Catholics in Japan, and about two hundred and fifty churches had been built. The Christian princes of Japan sent an embassy to Rome, where they were received by European kings as well as by the Holy Father. The Church became established in Japan, and at its best period counted about a million Catholics.

Then trouble sprang up among some of the rulers who began to persecute the Church. Thousands of Japanese suffered martyrdom. A price was set on the head of every Christian. Missioners who tried to



On February 5, 1597, twenty-six Japanese were crucified for the Catholic Faith near the city of Nagasaki. One was a child of 12; another was 13. This group is only one of many Japanese martyrs. Today Japan has its own Archbishop and thousands of Catholics. Besides some hundreds of missionaries from France, Germany, America, and other countries, there are



several Japanese bishops, about one hundred native priests, and many young men training for the priesthood. There are good Catholic schools and many native Sisters. The diocese of Nagasaki is manned by Japanese priests under their own bishop. There is a Trappist monastery (a branch of St. Benedict's Order) at Hakodate, where many Japanese monks pray, do penance, and work silently on the large dairy farm.



enter were executed. After a couple of generations the rulers believed that every Japanese Christian had given up the Faith or had been put to death. This began about the year 1587—shortly after the first English colony was founded in America.

In the year 1854 Japan opened its ports to western trade and allowed Catholic chaplains to open churches for the foreigners living in port cities. A chapel was built in Nagasaki, the place where so many martyrs had suffered; and a French priest became pastor, caring for the foreign officials and merchants who lived there. One day, while standing at the door of his chapel, the priest saw a group of dignified Japanese coming in. They asked permission to go through the chapel. They examined particularly the statue of Our Lady. They asked the priest some questions. Where was the head of his Church? The Holy Father in Rome? Oh, yes. And the priest, was he married? No, Catholic priests do not marry. Was that the statue of the mother of Jesus? Yes.

The priest was amazed when the visitors knelt at his feet and welcomed him with tears. They were Catholics, they said, descendants of the old Christians. In their village were many more Catholics. After centuries of persecution, after hundreds of thousands had suffered and been slain for their Faith, these descendants of the first Catholics still numbered fifty thousand. Without priests or churches, for over two hundred years, they had met in secret to say their prayers; and had baptized their children and taught them the prayers and the Catholic doctrine; and they had tried to keep the Commandments and the laws of the Church! No wonder St. Francis Xavier loved these people! What steadfast courage and nobility of character!

It was upon the Catholic section of Naga-

saki, the city of martyrs, that our second atom bomb fell. The Japanese Catholics who died there perhaps offered their death and their prayers in heaven for their country, for after the war the Japanese began to turn toward the Church in great numbers. In one month the entire population of eleven towns and villages asked for priests to teach them Catholic doctrines. Mayors of towns begged for missionaries. One church has missions in seven other towns, with 10,000 people. There are not enough priests or Sisters to teach all the Japanese who want to learn to be Catholics. Japanese men and women teachers, called Catechists, help out in their work. The Japanese are ready to become a Christian nation.

**Beautiful Japan.** In order to understand the Japanese people, it is necessary to see them in their own country. Japan is rocky and mountainous; only a small part of it can be cultivated. Earthquakes, tidal waves, and tropical storms called typhoons are frequent; and its people must be hardy, intelligent, and thrifty in order to live. But it is one of the most beautiful countries in the world. Beauty is a daily necessity to the Japanese, and love of beauty is a part of the soul of every man, woman, and child. Japanese artists paint beautiful pictures, make exquisite lacquers and pottery, erect graceful buildings, but that is not all. Even the simplest things of everyday life are made beautiful with a sure touch and natural good taste.

Gardens are so designed as to make a whole landscape within a few yards of space. Wistaria is trained to hang over water, so that its blossoms are reflected and its beauty doubled. Fences and signs and bridges and street lamps—all are made with graceful line and lack of fussy ornaments. Paper lanterns and parasols, kimonos and sandals,





teapots and rice bowls and children's toys, all show beauty of color and design. Even the poorest home may have a few pots of great morning glories with blossoms as big as dinner plates, and in pastel shades like the rainbow.

In each house there is a small recess in the wall, called a *tokonoma*, for the enjoyment of beauty. Here is hung one (only one!) picture. It is changed from time to time. The Japanese consider it vulgar to cover the walls with pictures that nobody takes time to look at. And in the *tokonoma* stands a vase or flat bowl with an arrangement of flowers; not too many, not crowded or massed together, but just a few blossoms or interesting branches arranged artistically. The mistress of a house must know how to arrange flowers, and young girls take lessons in the art. It is not only the rich Japanese who have time to enjoy and appreciate beauty; it is also the middle class and the poor.

Besides the private gardens which surround the houses of the wealthier class, there are innumerable beautiful parks, usually near some temple or shrine. The pink-blossomed cherry trees, the pale yellow forsythia, and the feathery green willows make these parks a paradise of beauty in the first fine days of spring. Then is the time for picnics and sightseeing. Later come the wistaria, the iris, the peonies, and other flowers. The oriental peony, called the "tree peony," is a large flower as big as a hat, and it grows on a bush some eight or ten feet thick. The Japanese place park benches facing beds of peonies, so that people may sit and admire them.

In the autumn the chrysanthemum shows are held, and the queen flower of autumn is there in all colors and shapes. The poor government clerk or the policeman or the

carpenter may raise one or two pots of perfect chrysanthemums, laboring over them daily for months; and he may gain a prize, too, for his fine blossoms.

Whole mountains have been planted with maple trees, of which the Japanese have hundreds of varieties, and which in autumn turn blood-red and orange and gold. People come for miles to admire some famous maple mountain. The Inland Sea of Japan is a sight which can never be forgotten. Boats glide along between hundreds of little islands, almost under the drooping pine trees which hang over the water. There are sacred gates erected in some places in the water. At night the lanterns in the fishermen's boats shine like fireflies on every side, and the clear water is full of fish that glow with pale light.

Of course the most beautiful sight in Japan is the great silent cone of "Fujisan" or Mount Fujiyama. It is a volcano, now quiet, which towers over much of the Japanese scenery and which has been drawn and painted hundreds of times by Japan's great artists. Fujisan is sacred to the Japanese, and its beauty and simplicity seem to have become part of their lives.

#### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Complete each statement by choosing the correct word or words in the parentheses.

1. The capital city of Japan is (Osaka, Tokyo, Yokohama).
2. The chief seaport of Japan is (Kobe, Yokohama, Tokyo).
3. The religion of most Japanese is (Buddhism, Mohammedanism, Christianity).
4. The famous mountain peak in Japan is (Everest, Vesuvius, Fujiyama).
5. Most farms in Japan compared to farms in our country are (smaller, larger, about the same size).
6. The bamboo plant is a (tree, grass, shrub).



Total population of Japan 80,217,000. Catholics 120,000. What percent is Catholic?

1 Locate Japan and describe her physical features and climate. Make a list of her farm products and natural resources.



Tell the story of an American girl's dress, beginning with a mulberry tree on a Japanese farm.

2 The Japanese are an agricultural people, yet fishing and manufacturing are yearly becoming more important. Why?



Why are forests important in a mountainous country?



Total population of Korea 27,200,000. Catholics 180,000. What percent is Catholic?

3 Locate Nagasaki and tell two interesting things about the place; one connected with the Catholic Faith, the other with America.



List the important cities in Japan and Korea. Tell something about each.

4 Locate Korea and list her products, resources, exports and imports. Why are most of her cities in the west?



If you could take a trip to Japan and Korea, where would you go and why?

## JAPANESE AND KOREANS: Their Land and Work.

Japan, a land of great natural beauty, is made up of four main islands. There is ferryboat service between the islands, and two of them are connected by a railway tunnel. The islands are indented by many bays, affording excellent harbors. Many fishing villages lie along the coast. Most of the fishermen use small boats and fish near the shore.

All the Japanese islands are mountainous. They have many high peaks and volcanoes. Mount Fujiyama is the highest in Japan and is said to be the most beautiful mountain in the world.

Japan's rivers are short and rapid. Only a few of them are navigable, but they furnish a vast supply of hydroelectric power. Lakes and waterfalls are many and are noted for their beauty. The Inland Sea is the most important water area.

Most of Japan's people live in the lowlands; that is, along the coast. The country is so mountainous that only about one fifth of the land is fit for farming, yet Japan is a farming country. The farms are very small. A farmer may have only three acres, but he uses every inch to advantage—even hilly and rocky sections.

More than half the land is planted in rice, the chief food of the people. In the south, the same fields are used for several crops. After the rice has been harvested, vegetables are planted, and then winter wheat. After the wheat harvest, rice plants are set out. Thus the land is never idle. The farms in northern Japan are a little larger than those in the south. The growing season in the north is much shorter than that in the south.

The climate of northern Japan is somewhat like that of Maine. The winters are cold and snowy; the summers are warm with moderate rainfall. The south of Japan has a climate similar to that of North Carolina. The winters are mild; the summers are hot and rainy.

Japan possesses a variety of minerals. The forests are especially important for preventing erosion on the mountainsides, and are carefully kept and replanted by the people.

Japan is a manufacturing center for silks, textiles, and small articles. The output of silk is three fourths of the world's total.

Korea is a hilly peninsula with most of its mountains in the east and north. Most of the people live in the west, which is the more level section. Korea is a farming country. It has plenty of water power for electricity. The climate is dry and invigorating. The mulberry tree thrives, and many people raise silkworms. Rice is the chief crop. Korea has much mineral wealth, but it is undeveloped.

## Living in Korea

**Surface and climate.** Korea is a hilly peninsula on the east coast of Asia between the Yellow Sea and the Sea of Japan. About one fifth of the country is lowland. The many mountains along the eastern coast and in the north prevent farming; but the western part of the country (where most of the people live) is more nearly level.

The summers are long and hot and rainy; the winters are short and cold. The cold, bleak winds from Siberia and the Arctic waters sweep across it. Most Koreans are rice farmers. A large part of Korea is rich in forests, and much timber is cut every year. Korea has coal, iron ore, gold, and other minerals, but mining is not important. Little manufacturing is done, because about eight out of every ten Koreans earn their living by farming. Fishing is the leading occupation along the coast; gathering salt from evaporated sea water is also an important work.

**Mongolian peoples.** Chinese, Tibetans, Japanese, and Koreans belong to the Mongolian branch of the yellow race. However, Japanese and Koreans differ from Chinese in looks, in customs, and in language. The Japanese and Koreans use Chinese characters in their literature, but they also use alphabets of their own. The Japanese and the Korean languages use many Chinese words, just as the English language uses Latin words. A Japanese, a Korean, and a Chinese cannot understand one another any better than an Englishman can understand an Italian.

**Troubled history.** Korea has often been ruled by its stronger neighbors, China and Japan. It is a buffer state (like the bumper on a car) between those countries. Korea

was part of the Japanese Empire for many years, and the Japanese managed most of the factories, banks, power plants, and railroads.

At the end of World War II, the Russian army took the northern part of Korea, and the Americans occupied the south. The Allies granted independence to South Korea, and that part of the peninsula became a republic. Russia made North Korea into another iron-curtain country. Later, the Communists invaded South Korea.

**Cities and villages.** Seoul is the capital and largest city. It is an important trading center and has the advantage of being on the chief railroad. Some parts of the city have paved streets and modern buildings, while others have narrow streets and old, native-style houses. Many residents of Seoul work in factories or in their homes, making textiles, pottery, and other products.

The Koreans call their country Chosen or Land of Morning Freshness. The peninsula is, indeed, a beautiful, bright land, full of wooded hills and green fields, with picturesque, white villages in every nook and hollow. Korea is a country that smells sweetly of perfumed smoke from coast to coast, for the people burn fragrant pine needles in their stoves to cook their rice.

Many Koreans live in the little farming villages. Their homes are usually made of dried mud, whitewashed. Most roofs are thatched, although homes of rich Koreans have fancy tile roofs. Koreans sit on the floor. Their homes are heated by letting the smoke from the kitchen stove pass under the floor, which is made of stones and mortar, much like the *kang* of North China. The floor covering is thick, oiled paper with a shining brown surface. Koreans, like Japanese leave their shoes outside their houses; they spare their floors by walking on them

in cotton socks. Koreans, like Japanese, keep bedding in closets in the daytime, and make up beds on the warm floor at night. They also sit on cushions on the floor, and dine from trays set on short legs. Korean houses are more comfortable in winter than Japanese houses, for Japanese do not use the under-floor heating system. Recently American builders have discovered that heating pipes in floors and walls make a well-heated, healthful, and comfortable house.

**Korean people.** In winter, the people stay indoors on their warm floors as much as possible. They are a quiet, friendly people, who like to think and to chat, and who are never in a hurry. They have great dignity, and a high respect for learning. Koreans dress in white. They have worn white garments for a great many years. Throughout the Orient, white is the color worn to mourn the death of a relative. In Korea, in ancient times, the period to be spent in mourning for each death was set by law: so many years for a father or mother, so long for other members of the family. It came to pass that nearly everybody was always in mourning for someone, so most of the population came to wear white clothing as a matter of custom.

Little children wear the gayest of bright colors: red and yellow, pink and green. On holidays some of the older people wear color, too; ladies of wealthy families often dress in pale-colored silks, with fur trimmings in winter. On festivals, however, most Koreans wear newly-laundered white clothes.

The women have to work hard to keep the clothes clean. Korean women usually take the wash to the riverside or the brook, where they pound the clothes on a flat rock until they are clean. They iron clothing by placing it, folded, on a block and pounding it with wooden clubs. Cotton clothing laun-





Skillfully the Korean thatchers weave together the rice straw that will cover the roofs of their cozy houses.

dered in this way comes out snowy white with a satiny gloss. The Koreans are very particular about their clothes, and they do not like our way of laundering.

**Culture.** Koreans are artistic, and they are skilled in handicrafts. Their gray pottery, their beaten brass and silverware, and their chests of wood and brass are much prized. They have an old literature, and their writers delight in making short, delicate

poems much as the Japanese do. Their ancient temples and palaces have great beauty, and are usually set in beautiful surroundings, with a view of mountains, sea or river, and fine, old trees.

**The Faith in Korea.** The Koreans are people who went searching for the Catholic Faith. Years ago, after Father Ricci and other Jesuits had set up the Church in China, it happened that some Koreans vis-



A priest from America visits some of his Korean Catholics.

ited Peking and brought back some books about Christ and Christian truth, which these Jesuit missionaries had written in Chinese. The Koreans had long been Buddhists and pagans, with a great deal of witchcraft and devil worship among them. However, they always have been, and still are a thoughtful people. A group of Korean scholars went to a lonely place on a mountain, to seek the truth about men, heaven, and the world. Among other things, they studied the Christian books from China.

They knew the truth at once when they found it, for they were seeking it honestly. One Korean of that earnest group went to China and asked for Catholic missionaries. Soon the Church was at work on the little peninsula, and many Koreans were baptized. Kings and governors, however, began to persecute the Christians, and thousands

of them were tortured and killed. Thus Korea had its martyrs, but the Church grew and prospered.

Protestant missionaries, arriving some years after the Catholic priests, built large schools and hospitals in Korea. These missionaries made thousands of converts and have many native ministers.

Catholic Action has long been at work in Korea, since Korean men and women do much to spread the Faith among their neighbors. Here as in China and Japan, native Catechists help the priests teach Catholic doctrine to people in many scattered villages. After the American army freed Korea from the Japanese, in World War II, the Koreans were taught to vote for a democratic government of their own. This was something new to them.

Especially was it new to the women, who under old pagan customs were not thought to be important. Now the women, too, were to vote. Many of them had never learned to read or write, and few of them knew anything about voting. Educated, Catholic Korean women then went into action, visiting the little straw-roofed houses of the poor teaching them the meaning of democracy.

#### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Complete each statement by choosing the correct word or words in parentheses.

1. Most Koreans are (farmers, fishermen, miners).
2. The race of which the Korean people are members is the (white, yellow, black).
3. The two countries that occupied Korea after World War II are (Japan and China, U.S.S.R. and Japan, United States and U.S.S.R.).
4. The capital and largest city of Korea is (Tokyo, Seoul, Peiping).
5. The homes of many Korean farmers are built of (wood, brick, dried mud).

## For My Geography Notebook

### Questions for Review

#### China

1. How does China compare in area and population with the other countries of the world? 2. In what ways do the people of northern China differ from those of southern China? 3. What kind of weather do the monsoon winds bring to southeastern China during the summer season? 4. What uses do the people of eastern China make of their many canals? 5. Why is the Hwang River also known as the Yellow River? 6. Why did the ancient Chinese build a Great Wall across their country? 7. Make a list of five contributions that the early Chinese have made to our present-day culture. 8. How do methods of manufacturing in China differ from those in our country? 9. How does farming in China differ from that in our country? 10. How do the cereal crops raised in northern China differ from those raised in central and southern China? 11. Mention some of the uses that are made of the soybeans grown in China. 12. Give some reasons why Catholic missionary work has always been difficult in China. 13. Why is the population of Sinkiang small compared to that of other parts of China? 14. Why did the life of the people of Tibet remain unchanged until very recent years? 15. Why is Mongolia no longer a province of China?

#### Japan and Korea

1. Why are many of the buildings in Japan built of wood and bamboo rather than brick or stone? 2. Why was Japan considered an empire prior to World War II? 3. Why can only a small part of Japan's surface be used for farms? 4. How are tea leaves prepared for use after they have been picked from the plant? 5. Make a list of at least ten important uses that the Japanese make of bamboo. 6. Give some reasons why Japanese farmers get such large yields from their small farms. 7. Why are forests of great importance to Japanese farmers? 8. Why is "Shinto" a pagan religion? 9. Explain why the raising of silk worms can be called a "cottage industry"? 10. How do silk worms make the raw silk which is spun into thread? 11. Give some reasons why many Japanese are fisher-

men. 12. Why has Korea had a troubled history? 13. What part did Catholic Action play in Korea after World War II? 14. In what industry do most of the Korean people earn their living?

### Matching Cities

Copy the list of cities in column A. Next to each city write the item from column B with which it is associated.

A	B
1. Canton	Important city in Manchuria
2. Chungking	Former Chinese capital in the interior
3. Peiping	Capital of Korea
4. Shanghai	Holy city in Tibet
5. Lhasa	Japan's largest city
6. Urga	Chief city in Mongolia
7. Tokyo	Port city on the delta of the Si River
8. Yokohama	Former Chinese capital in North China
9. Seoul	China's chief port
10. Mukden	Port city for Tokyo

**Using Geography Words Correctly.** The following list contains geography words used in the chapter. Use each in a sentence.

1. coolie	7. terrace
2. tungsten	8. bamboo
3. indigo	9. winnowing
4. yak	10. millet
5. yurt	11. sorghum
6. camphor	12. tung trees

### Pause and Think

1. Explain how the Chinese solve the problem of labor for millions of workers.
2. What is meant by saying that the Chinese are a clever people?
3. What did Christ mean when He said: "Going, teach ye all nations...?"
4. Explain the meaning of this Japanese statement: "What the farmer needs he should produce."
5. How was the Faith preserved in Japan during hundreds of years of persecution?
6. Compare family life in Japan with family life in America.

### 3. The Peoples of Southeastern Asia

#### The Philippine Islands

There are more than 7,000 islands in the Philippines. They stretch north and south for more than 1,000 miles in the Pacific Ocean, about 500 miles southeast of Asia. Many are just rocks in the water and only one third are large enough to have names. Luzon and Mindanao make up more than two thirds of the total area of all the islands. The largest, Luzon, is in the north.

The Philippines are near the equator, and therefore the lowlands are hot all year. There is much rain, and dangerous storms called typhoons sometimes hit the area and cause great damage. The islands are really mountain tops rising from the sea. Some are volcanoes which throw off steam, gas, and rocks. There are plains between the mountains and along the coast lines where most of the people live.

Thick jungles cover much of the islands, and animals and brightly colored birds are numerous. There are large land snails which are often eaten. Fish, crabs, and other shellfish are plentiful in the surrounding seas.



In the Philippines, the men are Filipinos, the women, Filipinas. This young Filipina in graceful native dress is weaving on a hand loom. Native cloth is dainty, cool, pretty, and strong.

**The government.** The Philippine Islands became a republic on July 4, 1946 after four hundred years of control by other countries. Spain conquered the islands after the voyage of Magellan, and dominated them for three hundred and fifty years. Later, the United States ruled the Philippines for almost fifty years, and granted freedom to the people on the anniversary of our own Independence Day.

**The people of the Philippines.** Residents of the islands are known as Filipinos. Some belong to the black race; these live far back in the forests and on the mountains. Others are of yellow-brown or of mixed races. They speak many languages, but mainly English and Spanish. The Filipinos have been skilled farmers for hundreds of years.

The Filipinos were converted to Christianity during the years the islands were controlled by Spain, and their nation is the only Catholic one in Asia. Many of the Filipino tribes in outlying districts, however, still remain pagans, and some are Moslems. Missioners still work among them, but many more are needed.

Catholic universities in the Philippines are much older than those in the United States. Both the Church and the American government have built schools and colleges. The people of the Philippines love learning, and many of them, both men and women, become doctors, lawyers, and other professional people.

**Customs.** Life in Manila and other cities is gay and colorful. Filipinos love fiestas and religious processions, and there is great rejoicing with dances and songs on Church feast days. Life on the little farms is quieter, but here too there are feasts and barbecues. On these occasions a whole pig is roasted



Filipino family, on a mountain top, look out over the beautiful mountains of their native land.

over hot coals and served with plenty of fruit and melons. Even the rice-planting is done to the music of gay songs and the playing of instruments.

The Filipinos are a happy people, and their old Catholic culture and education have prepared them to be leaders in the Orient. They have kept many of the Spanish customs, including the pretty, graceful dress of the women. They have also adopted many American ways.

**Filipino farmers.** There are a few large plantations in the Philippines, but most farms are small and the work is done by hand. Rice is the most important crop, as the Filipinos are a rice-eating people.

Thousands of coconut trees along the

coast provide many products. Coconut palm leaves make house roofs and furnish shade for young tobacco plants. Coconut husk fiber is used to make rugs and mats, and the shell is used for bowls and cups. Coconut milk is a refreshing drink and the meat of the nut may be eaten or used to make oil. The Philippines produce a large part of the world's coconut supply and dried coconut meat called copra is exported.

Another important product is Manila hemp, a plant resembling the banana plant. Its leaves have strong but light fibers which can be made into rope strong enough for use on ships.

**Minerals.** More gold is mined in the Philippines than in Alaska; and almost as



much as in California. There are other minerals but the country lacks coal and petroleum. Only a few hydroelectric plants have been built because there are few factories to use the power.

**Manila, principal city.** Manila is located at the mouth of a river which flows into Manila Bay. It is the largest city on the islands. Old and beautiful, the city is an important port for air transportation and shipping. The Japanese occupied Manila in World War II and much of it was destroyed, but the Filipinos started rebuilding it as soon as the war was over.

### French Indochina

This land was once an important French possession. It is now divided into three states, Viet-Nam, Cambodia, and Laos. These states have been given much freedom to rule themselves, but the French retain some power in their foreign affairs and national defense departments.

Catholic missionaries from France, Portugal, and Spain have worked among the people of French Indochina for four hundred years. Nearly a hundred thousand martyrs have shed their blood for the Faith in these lands. Today the country has two million Catholics; that is, one person in every ten. Now there are many native priests working under native Bishops.

**Viet-Nam.** Viet-Nam is a large and prosperous land. Most of the people live in coastal lowlands; some live in delta plains around Hanoi in the northeast and around Saigon in the south. The interior is mountainous, with jungles and forests. The lowlands are hot and have heavy rains. Farming is the chief occupation, and the people live mainly in small villages

and raise rice. The country is rich in minerals, which are mined and exported.

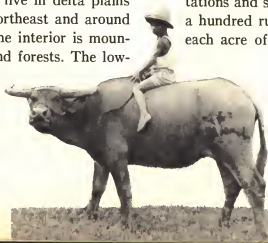
Saigon, the chief city, is in the south. It is a great rice port about forty miles from the sea. Hanoi, in the northeast, is the capital and has railroad connections with China.

### British Malaya

Malaya is located at the southern end of the Malay Peninsula. It is a British possession. The Malays are brown people, who live on little farms or work on great rubber plantations. Most of the city people are Chinese, the industrious merchants of the Orient. After the British, Chinese merchants control most of the business in British Malaya. People from India, Japanese, Jews, and Americans as well as Chinese all live in the cities and carry on trade.

For many years most of the world's rubber came from southeastern Asia and the neighboring islands. British Malaya was producing almost half of it. The rubber trade made this peninsula an important prize in world warfare. Because Malayan rubber supplies were cut off in World War II, American car owners had to do without new tires during the war, and American scientists devised ways to make rubber from chemicals.

British Malaya's hot, moist climate causes heavy jungle growth. This must be cleared before a plantation can be made. Two thirds of the land is divided into plantations and small native groves. About a hundred rubber trees are set out on each acre of land. Rubber trees must



The water buffalo or carabao is the farmer's beast of all work. It is fierce and dangerous to strangers, tame and obedient to the farmer's young children.

grow for six or eight years before being tapped. The bark is cut with sharp knives and a thick, milky liquid called latex flows from the cut. When the latex is heated over a smoky fire it hardens and forms rubber. Sometimes the liquid is sent all the way to the United States before being processed into rubber.

Much of the world's tin also comes from British Malaya. During World War II, Americans had to do without another familiar product: there were no more tin cans. Everything came in bottles or paper cartons.

Rice is the chief food of the people and is raised by irrigation in fertile lowlands. Copra, the dried meat of the coconut, is exported. The copra trade has grown into a huge industry, as coconut oil is used in soaps and foods all over the world.

### Singapore

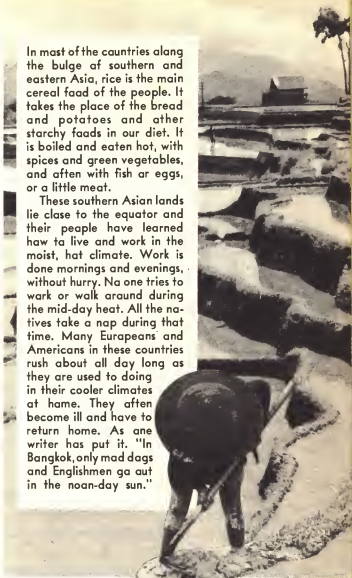
Because Singapore is on the route of many ships, and since one may go east or west from Singapore to New York and travel about the same distance, this city is known as the Crossroads of the East. It is at the southern end of a small island, separated from the Malay Peninsula by a channel. A railroad connects the island with the peninsula and extends as far north as Thailand. The city is less than 100 miles north of the equator and is hot and rainy.

Shipping plays a big part in Singapore's life. There are a good harbor and a coaling station where ships take on fuel. Many articles are exported here.

Sailors from all over the world walk the busy streets of Singapore. Shipping, trade, gambling, tin, rubber, and horse racing are the chief interests in this region. The Church has made little progress here, and the few Catholics are mostly Chinese. Most of the Malays are still Buddhists.

In most of the countries along the bulge of southern and eastern Asia, rice is the main cereal food of the people. It takes the place of the bread and potatoes and other starchy foods in our diet. It is boiled and eaten hot, with spices and green vegetables, and often with fish or eggs, or a little meat.

These southern Asian lands lie close to the equator and their people have learned how to live and work in the moist, hot climate. Work is done mornings and evenings, without hurry. No one tries to work or walk around during the mid-day heat. All the natives take a nap during that time. Many Europeans and Americans in these countries rush about all day long as they are used to doing in their cooler climates at home. They often become ill and have to return home. As one writer has put it, "In Bangkok, only mad dogs and Englishmen go out in the noon-day sun."



Burma

Burma is about the size of Texas, but it has many more people. Although it was once part of the British Empire, it is now independent.

The Irrawaddy Valley has Burma's most fertile soil and here most of the people live. Two thirds of the country's cultivated land is used to grow rice, and some is exported to India and other countries. Burma also has many rubber tree plantations. The country is a rich one, with large deposits of petroleum, which are exported, together with other minerals, and rubies, sapphires,

and jade. Teakwood and other tropical hardwoods grow in the dense forests which cover a large part of the country.

The Burmese belong to the yellow race. Most of them are Buddhists, and the Church has made little progress among them. There are, however, tribes living in the hills where some converts have been made. One great work of the Church in these lands is the care of lepers. The dreaded disease is common among these people, and Catholic priests and Sisters have founded and direct hospitals for them.

### Thailand

Thailand, which formerly was called Siam, has about the same number of people as Burma, although it is somewhat smaller. The country is near enough to the equator to give its lowlands hot or warm weather all year. The summer has a heavy rainfall.

The Thai are an active and freedom loving people. Their land is the only small country of the Far East that has remained free from foreign rule during recent centuries. The Thai have learned and adopted many western ways during modern times, but they have kept what they thought good of their own customs. This has been done peacefully, without wars or revolutions.

Thailand is a rich country, with fertile fields of rice, orchards of tropical fruits, and plenty of minerals and timber. The little kingdom is not in debt, but pays its way among nations. Formerly its kings were often despots who ruled in a high-handed manner, but more democratic ways have come with modern rulers. The people are gentle, patient, and love law and order.

Thailand is a strongly Buddhist country, and although French missionaries came to the country three hundred years ago, there are few Thai converts. Most of the Catholics

in the country are Chinese. Since Buddhism is their state religion the Thai people do not think that they love their country if they become Christians. Everywhere stand splendid Buddhist temples shining with gold and with colored tile. There are sixteen thousand temples in this small country.

More than two thirds of the Thai live in small farm villages and nine tenths of them are dependent on rice culture for a living. Central Thailand, an important farm region, is a large alluvial or wet, sandy plain where rice is the principal crop.

Much of northern Thailand is forested and teak trees are grown there. Teak is valuable because the wood does not decay easily and it is not destroyed by insects. During the rainy season elephants carry or drag the teak logs to the streams where they are floated to sawmills. Thailand's most important mining product is tin, which is often found mixed with gravel.

The capital and chief city is Bangkok. The royal palace and government buildings are in this city. Here the great rice crop is prepared for market.

#### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Complete each of the following statements by filling in the correct word or words in each blank space.

1. The present government in the Philippines is a \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The Philippines were a possession of the \_\_\_\_\_ until recently.
3. The dangerous storms that sometimes cause great damage in the Philippines are \_\_\_\_\_.
4. A valuable mineral mined in considerable amounts in the Philippines is \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The product for which Malaya is best known is \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The mineral found in great quantities in both Malaya and Thailand is \_\_\_\_\_.



Millions of people in Asia make their living by working in that industry which gives Americans, Britons, and many others their fragrant cups of tea. First the tea leaves must be picked, then weighed; sorted while fresh, then after drying sorted again, packed in boxes, shipped.

## Living in the East Indies

**Islands near Southeastern Asia.** Spread over a wide area between Southeastern Asia and Australia are many islands called the East Indies. New Guinea, Borneo, Sumatra, Java, the Celebes, and hundreds of small islands belong to the East Indies. Part of Timor, a small island, is controlled by Portugal. The British control some small islands and parts of Borneo and New Guinea.

Most of this area belonged to the Netherlands until recently. After World War II, the people of some of these islands wanted to rule themselves. The Queen of the Netherlands gave independence to them, and the United States of Indonesia came into being.

Java is the most important island of this group. The capital and chief port of Java, Jakarta (under the Netherlands called Batavia), is also the capital of the United States of Indonesia. Here live the president and the lawmakers of the new republic. The former Dutch part of New Guinea, the second largest island in the world, and of Borneo, the third largest island in the world, are also part of the new United States of Indonesia.

**Lands and people.** Some of the people belong to the black race, some to the yel-



low. Some are untamed savages, while others are civilized; and many have not had any contact with Europeans or Americans. Several languages are spoken. With the exception of Java, the islands are not densely populated.

Earthquakes occur in the mountains on some of the islands. Volcanic eruptions have caused much damage. Several years ago two thirds of an island was blown away during a volcanic eruption. Since the equator crosses the East Indies, the climate in the lowlands is hot throughout the year. Weather is cooler in the high mountains. Rainfall is very heavy.

**Crowded island.** Java is a little smaller than Illinois. It is the most densely populated country in the world with 900 people per square mile. If the United States were as densely settled as Java it would contain more people than there are in all the world today.

Java is known as "The Garden of the East." Two thirds of the island is used for farming. Parts are mountainous and hilly, but farmers grow crops on some of the mountain slopes.



Cities of Asio often have a mixed population from many nations. This is especially true of parts of southern and southeastern Asio. In this Catholic school in Jesselton, North Borneo, children of different races and faiths work and play together in peace. Some are Moslems, some Hindus, some Protestants, some Catholics, some from Chinese families who honor Confucius. All here are learning English, the language now spoken in many parts of the world. They also learn arithmetic, geography, and other subjects.







his boy is from India.

Here are some of the children in the primary grades at St. Francis School in Jesselton.



This is an English girl.



his little girl Chinese.



This one is Scottish.



He is from South India.



Portuguese girl, above, and a little Hindu from India.



**People at work.** Most of the natives work in rice fields, and much of the land is irrigated. Rice, the main crop, can be planted at any time of the year, and sometimes one field is being planted as another near by is being harvested. Farmers can grow two crops of rice each year. This is also true of crops of corn, peanuts, and cassava from which tapioca is made. Kapok, a fiber which looks like cotton, is taken from trees and used to stuff pillows and life preservers.

Quinine, a medicine taken from the bark of the cinchona tree, is used for malaria and colds and fevers. Most of the world's natural quinine comes from Java, although the cinchona tree was first discovered in the Andes Mountains. Cinchona tree seeds were taken to Southeastern Asia by the Netherlands, who developed fine trees.

Hot, moist climate and fertile lowlands favor crops throughout these islands. Natives produce many vegetables and tobacco on their small farms. Europeans manage many plantations and export products.

Birds of paradise are native to New Guinea. Their beautiful feathers used to be exported for the ladies of Europe and America to wear on their hats. Laws now protect the birds and forbid this trade.

**The Church at work.** Missioners from Europe and America are working steadily among the people of these islands. Protestants as well as Catholics are preaching and teaching. Saint Francis Xavier himself made converts on the island of Amboina. Most of the Javanese are Moslems; the people of most of the other islands are pagans; there are Buddhists and Hindus also in different parts of the islands, as well as Chinese followers of Confucius. But little mission stations, each with its church and school, have sprung up throughout the island world, and the Christianizing process is under way.



2 List the products of Thailand. What city is the capital and chief seaport? What products are imported and exported at this port?



There are 27,030,000 people in French Indochina; 1,500,000 Catholics. What percentage is Catholic?

3 List the products and exports of French Indochina. Find Hanoi. Near this city Theophane Venard, a young French missionary, died for the Faith.



There are 82,200,000 people in the Malay Peninsula and United States of Indonesia; 1,610,000 Catholics. What percentage is Catholic?

4 Define peninsula. List the products and exports of the Malay Peninsula. What important city is located near the end of this peninsula?



There are 35,000,000 people in Burma and Thailand. Catholics number 230,000. What percentage is Catholic?

5 What islands are included in the United States of Indonesia? List the products of these islands.



If you could take a trip to Southeastern Asia, where would you like to go and why?

6 Name the three largest islands in the Philippines. List the products of these islands. What city is the capital of the Philippines?

## THE PEOPLES OF SOUTHEASTERN ASIA: Their Lands and Work

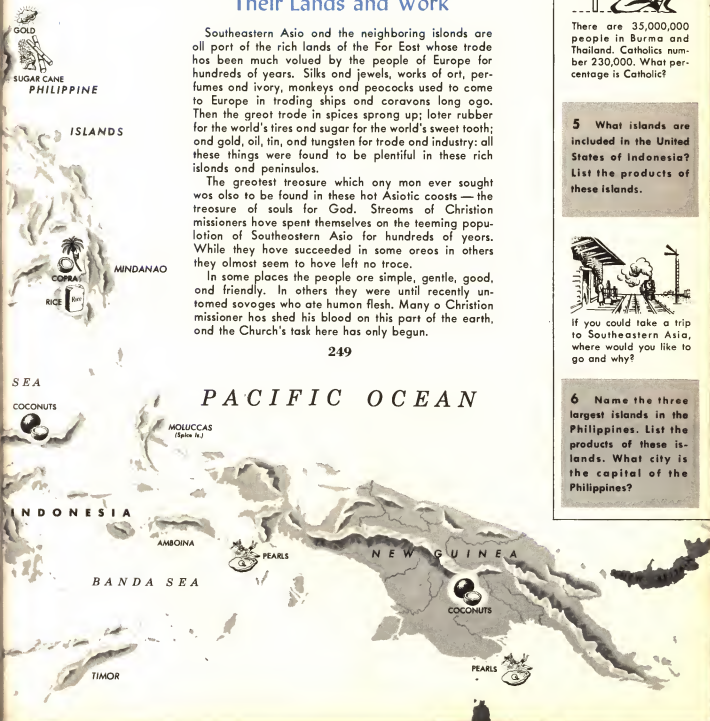
Southeastern Asia and the neighboring islands are all part of the rich lands of the Far East whose trade has been much valued by the people of Europe for hundreds of years. Silks and jewels, works of art, perfumes and ivory, monkeys and peacocks used to come to Europe in trading ships and caravans long ago. Then the great trade in spices sprang up; later rubber for the world's tires and sugar for the world's sweet tooth; and gold, oil, tin, and tungsten for trade and industry: all these things were found to be plentiful in these rich islands and peninsulas.

The greatest treasure which any man ever sought was also to be found in these hot Asiatic coasts — the treasure of souls for God. Streams of Christian missionaries have spent themselves on the teeming population of Southeastern Asia for hundreds of years. While they have succeeded in some areas in others they almost seem to have left no trace.

In some places the people are simple, gentle, good, and friendly. In others they were until recently untamed savages who ate human flesh. Many a Christian missionary has shed his blood on this part of the earth, and the Church's task here has only begun.

249

## PACIFIC OCEAN



## PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Complete each of the following statements by choosing the correct ending.

1. The island group that lies off the south-east coast of Asia is known as the

West Indies    East Indies    Hawaiian Islands

2. Until recent years the largest part of the East Indies was the possession of

Great Britain    Netherlands    Portugal

3. The largest island in the East Indies is

New Guinea    Borneo    Java

4. The most densely populated island of the East Indies is

Sumatra    New Guinea    Java

5. The medicine called quinine is obtained from the bark of the tree called

mahogany    cinchona    teak

6. The most important food crop of the people of Southeastern Asia is

wheat    copra    rice

7. The capital of the United States of Indonesia is called

Jakarta    Singapore    Manila

8. The most important port city of Southeastern Asia is

Singapore    Saigon    Rangoon

## 4. Life in India, Pakistan, and Ceylon

India and all the lands near it used to be called "The Indies." The inhabitants were known as Indians. The merchants of Europe and the Near East carried on a great business of trading with the Indians. Traders' caravans were always enroute to and from that land. European merchants were much distressed when the Moslems, having conquered much of the Mediterranean area, cut off their trade routes to the East. Then it was that the King and Queen of Spain sent Columbus to find a new way to the Indies. What happened then, we all know.

A bright young man of Portugal, named Vasco da Gama, set out to try another way. In his tiny sailing ship, da Gama conquered the long, dangerous passage around Africa and sailed on to India. There he found, not simple savages, but a land of wealth, where an Indian prince, clanking with diamonds and rubies, sat on a throne of velvet and gold. Around his neck hung strings of pearls as large as hazel nuts. The country was rich in the cinnamon, cloves, ginger, and pepper that Europeans wanted to buy. Da Gama told the prince that he had come for "Christians and spices." He had opened a new way

to India, both for the sake of trade, and so that missionaries could start at once preaching the message of Christ to pagan souls.

### India

India was for ages a region of small warring states. Great Britain began to grow into a world-wide trading power, and the British East India Company established trading posts all over India. Gradually Great Britain, through this company, came to control most of India. There was a long series of revolts before the people of India gained self government after World War II. The largest part of India became the Union of India, whose people are Hindus. The remainder of India became Pakistan, with a Moslem population.

The present-day Union of India is made up of about two thirds of India. It is one third the size of the United States but has twice our population, making it second only to China in number of people. Pakistan and the Union of India are members of the British Commonwealth of Nations.

**Surface features.** Northern India consists of the Himalayas and other high

mountains. Mount Everest, tallest peak in the world, is in Nepal, on India's border. Five and one half miles high, its top has never been reached by mountain climbers. The mountains on the northern border shut off India from China. The passes through the mountains are hard for caravans to cross, but airplanes have often gone "over the hump" from India to China.

A fertile farming region stretches across northern India. This plain is drained by the Ganges and Brahmaputra rivers. It was formed when streams wore away the mountain land and deposited silt in the lowlands. The Ganges furnishes water for irrigation where there is little rain. The plain is thickly settled and since it is nearly level, railroads and highways are built easily. Most of India's people live in the great valleys of the Ganges and the Brahmaputra rivers. The country is also heavily populated along the seacoasts and on the Deccan Plateau.

**Monsoon climate.** Much of India lies within the tropics. It is one of the world's hottest countries, and parts of it have very heavy rainfall. It is a great peninsula extending out into the warm waters of the Indian Ocean, and wet winds from the ocean sweep over the land.

In much of the country, and especially along the west coast, the rain pours hard during a great part of the summer. In one section near Calcutta, the rain streams down so heavily for three months that if the water did not run away everything would be covered forty feet deep. In winter dry winds from the north blow over India. The winter months are dry, and not quite so hot as the summer. Toward the end of the dry season the weather begins to get hotter and hotter. Dust and flies fill the air. People are happy

The elephant is tractor, bulldozer, and truck in India. Indian princes ride an elephant to hunt wild tigers.

when the rain comes. Sometimes the rains do not come; then the crops do not grow, and the people starve.

These seasonal winds and the rainy season they bring are called monsoons. India has what is called a "monsoon climate." Monsoon rains are usually accompanied by thunder and lightning. There is not always a steady downpour; storms come at certain times each day. Farmers plant crops between storms. The heavy rainfall causes dense forests to grow in some sections. The thick forests of India are called jungles. These hot, wet jungles are the home of tigers, elephants, and other animals including poisonous snakes.

**Dry lands.** There are places in India where the monsoon does not reach. These are dry lands, and no crops grow in them except by irrigation. India has a very good system of irrigation canals. Even in some places where there is much rain during a part of the year, people irrigate crops during the dry season. Water for irrigation is obtained from streams, reservoirs, and wells. Streams flowing from the Himalaya Mountains are fed in summer by melting snows, so they have water all the time. Canals lead the water to farm land. In southern India the reservoirs are called "tanks." They also furnish water for people and animals.





## Studying the Map of Southwestern Asia

A

1. In what zones is India located? Notice that the Tropic of Cancer crosses it.

2. Bodies of water on three sides make India a peninsula. The Indian Ocean lies to the south. What bodies of water lie to the east and west of India?

3. Study the surface features of India. Notice that the north is mountainous, the south is a plateau, and between them is a lowland plain. What plateau occupies a large part of the Indian peninsula?

4. The lowlands of India are found in the river valleys and along the coast. Name the three great rivers that drain the lowland plain of northern India.

5. Which of the rivers flows across the lowland into the Arabian Sea? Which two rivers flow across the lowland into the Bay of Bengal?

6. Each of the three rivers divides into several streams at its mouth. What is the feature at the mouth of these rivers called? How was it built by the rivers?

7. In what mountain range do all of these rivers have their source?

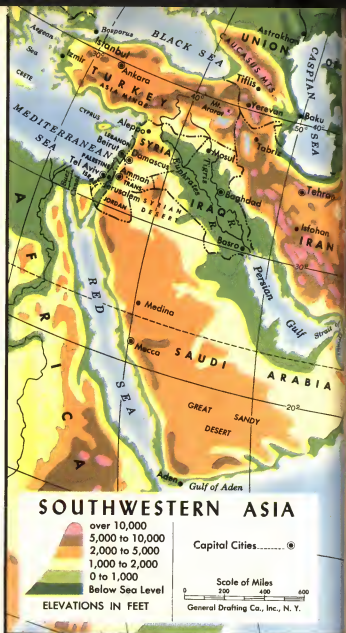
8. Find the Khyber Pass in Pakistan.

9. What mountains run parallel to the eastern and western coasts of India? How do these mountains compare in height with those lying in northern India?

10. India can be divided into three parts—Union of India, Pakistan, and the native Indian States. Which of these parts makes up the largest section of India?

11. Name and locate three large seaport cities in the Union of India. What important seaport is in Pakistan?

12. Use the scale of miles to determine how far the island of Ceylon is from India. What city is the chief port of Ceylon?



B

The countries of Southwestern Asia include Afghanistan, Iran, Iraq, Turkey, Syria, Lebanon, Israel, Palestine, Transjordan, Saudi Arabia.

1. Which of these countries is in both Europe and Asia? Which is nearest the continent of Africa?

2. Which of these countries can be called Mediterranean Lands?



3. Which of these countries border Pakistan?

4. Which has no seacoast?

5. What sea separates the Arabian peninsula from Africa? What body of water lies between this peninsula and Iran?

6. What large sea lies between the Arabian peninsula and the peninsula of India?

7. What is the part of Turkey called that lies in Asia? How would you describe the surface of this part of Turkey? What bodies of water lie to the north and to the south?

8. A large part of Iraq is a lowland. What are the names of the two rivers that drain this lowland?

9. Where on the Arabian peninsula are the lowlands located? On what part are the highest elevations? Why do few people live in the interior?

10. How would you describe the surface of most of Afghanistan? What industry would you be likely to find in this country?

11. Most of Iran is a plateau. What does the map show you about its altitude?

**The people.** In India, there are various groups whose people speak different languages. Very few of the people know how to read or write, but in recent years the government has been trying to educate both young and old. Most of the people of India are of a dark brown color, and have brown eyes and straight, black hair.

There are many Moslems in India, but most of the people are Hindus. The Hindu religion teaches that God made various classes or "castes" of people. Some people are born to a very high and noble class. These are the "high caste" people. There are others of middle caste, and still others of low caste, who do the harder, dirtier kinds of work and can never mix with higher caste people. Some are "out-caste" people whom the Hindus think so low and "unclean" that they may not even touch a higher caste person, nor let their shadows fall upon them. These are known as the "untouchables."

The Hindus believe that God made people according to different classes, and that it is no use trying to be any better. They think that people are different in their souls as well as in their bodies. Since Indians have set about making a modern nation of their country, they have passed laws to prevent the unjust treatment of the poor "untouchables." They are trying to make people of different castes work together for a more prosperous nation. However, the old ideas are slow to change.

The caste system has kept millions of people poor, ignorant, and miserable for centuries. Not until the Hindus become Christians will they learn that each man is made in the image of God, and that we should honor and respect each human being. Christian truth teaches us that all men are created equal and all are equal before God. It is from this truth that ideas of democracy

have grown and formed ways of living in Christian lands. Although sections of India are Catholic, only a small part of India's great population is Christian—about one person in every hundred. India is a non-Christian land.

**Farms and farmers.** India is an old country with an ancient civilization. Of the millions of its people, seven out of ten are farmers. On some of these farming lands people live very close together. Their farms are very small and many of the people of India are hungry much of the time. Indian farmers often live in houses of straw or mud. In large sections there are no roads or railroads; the people have little contact with other parts of India.

Families live together in villages and cultivate the neighboring fields. The land is usually owned by a landlord or *rajah*. Three of seven farm families own no land. Millions of people get just enough food to keep them alive, and if a crop fails, famine results. Lately, with new and better irrigation and farming methods, famines are less likely to occur. The farmers still use simple tools. Some have oxen or water buffalo to pull wooden plows. The climate is favorable for farming, and much of the land is fertile.

**Farm crops.** Indians, like many other Oriental people, raise rice because rice yields the most food for every square foot of land. Human beings usually need starch in their diet. Only a few peoples, like the Eskimos, have learned to do without it. Wheat, corn, and rice are widely used grains or cereals. Rice grows well in hot, wet places. It is used by the people of the Orient for the main part of their meal, as we use bread and potatoes.

Tea bushes grow on large plantations. India exports much tea and is one of the chief tea producing countries. Most Indian tea is black, not green. The plants were first

taken to India from China about one hundred years ago. Nearly a million Indian people work on the tea plantations.

In the north of India, in the mountains, the climate is cold during part of the year. There is not much rain. Here people raise grain and sheep, and sell wheat and wool. One of the chief dry-land grains is sorghum. Sorghum looks like corn, except that the grain is at the top of the plants. India is a leading sugar cane producing country, and cotton has been produced in India since ancient times. The fibers are coarse and short, but the Indians use it to make cloth. Some cotton is exported.

**Backward agriculture.** The Hindus believe that the cow is a holy animal. Hindus do not kill cattle and will not eat beef. Sacred cattle go where they like and eat whatever food they want from the shops. If they lie down in the middle of traffic no one will disturb them. Cattle wander over India in herds, and many of them are half-starved and useless, giving little or no milk. The Hindus will not slaughter the useless animals. Animal waste is largely burned for fuel instead of being used to fertilize the fields. Indian agriculture in the little villages is not very productive.

India has many cattle, most of them of the humpbacked variety called Brahma cattle in our country. These have been introduced into our hot southern states and have proved very successful.

In some sections experts from England and other countries have taught the people better methods of farming. They have taught them how to raise and keep only those cows that give plenty of milk, and hens that lay quantities of eggs. Where this advice has been followed the people soon begin to prosper.

If put to proper use, there is enough farm

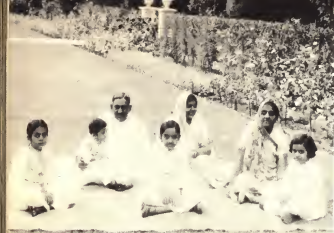
land in India for every family to live comfortably. Much of the land must be irrigated so that farmers can grow crops. The desert lands of India need the water from the Indus River and other rivers and tributaries to irrigate dry areas.

Age-old pagan customs have held back the people from progress. India is a land of famines and early deaths from disease and hunger, but in recent years, the Indian government is trying to improve matters. Missioners, both Protestant and Catholic, have labored long to help Indian bodies as well as souls. In some areas the results have been good. British experts have founded schools of agriculture. They have also built dams and canals which furnish water for the irrigation of vast areas.

The Indians, unlike Chinese, are great users of dairy products. These farm women in a little village of western India are churning butter in a copper churn. Such work is usually done out-of-doors in the farmyard.







▲ An Indian prince with his wife and five daughters sits in his palace garden. The mother and the alder daughter wear the beautiful draped veil and shawl called "sari."



◀ Indian working women are used for carrying burdens on the head. This habit gives the bearer a stately carriage and leaves the arms free for other purposes.

Clay pottery, handmade by Indian potters, is used for water, for storing food, and many other purposes. In this potters' market of Benares, big and little pots are on sale.



# BENARES

Benares is an ancient city, with 1500 temples to pagan gods, visited by a million Indian pilgrims each year. The city has a large Hindu University and many markets and bazaars. Silks, gold and silver cloth and jewelry, and many other objects of fine handicraft are made and sold. At the Catholic Mission is a grotto to Our Lady of Lourdes, built by a Hindu woman of wealth who, falling ill while traveling in France, made a vow to Christ's Mother.







▲ Small restaurants serve very spicy Indian food. Cooking is done out in front so everybody can see how clean the food is and be tempted by its appetizing odors. Customers eat in room in background.

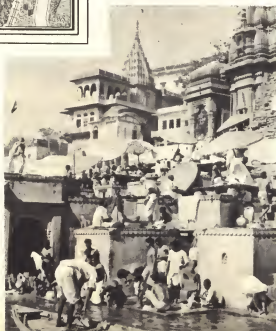


▲ The street entertainer charms the deadly cobra with his flute music. Cows, sacred animals to the Hindus, wander through city streets among automobiles and crowds.



◀ Hindus burn the bodies of their dead and scatter the ashes on the water of the Ganges River from the Cremation Ghat (steps).

At the Asi Sangam Ghat Hindu pilgrims must bathe in the sacred Ganges five times in one day. Beyond is an Indian crowd at the Benares railway station. ▶



**Cities and industries.** India is rich in raw materials. Minerals are scattered over the country. Some bituminous coal is mined and makes excellent coke for iron and steel industries. There are large deposits of manganese and some iron ore. Indians do much manufacturing, but only a small number of the people work in factories. Indians are skilled in many crafts, and they produce many fine articles made by hand in little shops.

Calcutta, eighty miles from the Bay of Bengal, is the chief city and largest port. Here trade is carried on with all parts of the world. It has good railroads and highway connections with the rest of India. It is modern, has electric lights and streetcars, and is a manufacturing center. Most British businessmen in India have their offices there.

Bombay's name means "good bay." It is the second city of India in size and importance, and is built on a hilly island with a fine natural harbor. It has good rail connections to all of India and is the port closest to Europe.

Madras, third largest city, is the leading port of southern India. Delhi is a large city in the Ganges Valley of northern India. It is an important railroad center. Government offices are at New Delhi, a new section. New Delhi is said to be the capital. Benares,

on the northern banks of the Ganges River, is halfway between Calcutta and Delhi. It is a sacred city for the Hindus and is a typical, busy Oriental city.

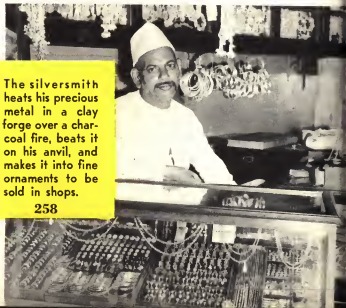
**People working at home.** India has many "cottage industries." As you remember, that means many people making things by hand, at home, both for their own use and for sale. In many of India's little village homes are looms where both parents and children work to weave cotton or silk cloth, rugs, and carpets. Silk, cotton, and wool are also spun into thread on hand-powered spinning wheels. Mats and ropes are made at home from coconut husks. Paper is made from bamboo. Gold and silver jewelry, figures carved of ivory and stone, fans and boxes of sweet-smelling sandalwood are also made in the homes of Indian farmers and workers.

Cottage industries are a very good thing for the people of India. The farms are so small that there is no work for many people during much of the year. Often the family can scarcely live on what is raised. Cottage work must help to bring in money. These industries keep the family at home together. In modern times, Indians had begun to give up many of their old cottage industries, but a modern leader, named Gandhi, brought back the old practices.



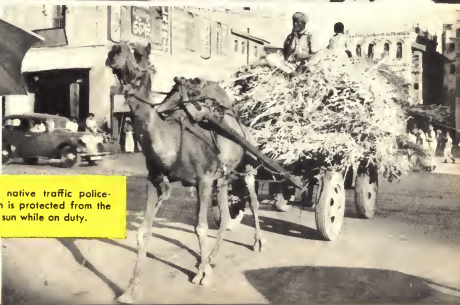
The silversmith heats his precious metal in a clay forge over a charcoal fire, beats it on his anvil, and makes it into fine ornaments to be sold in shops.

258



## INDUSTRIOUS INDIA

India is a busy land teeming with millions of people. It is a pagan land, where the ugly faces of idols look out from temple doorways. Streets are crowded with people and traffic. Merchants in their little shops sell about everything. Here one tradesman sells skeins of raw silk. In another shop tourists from foreign countries look over silks to buy cheaply and take home.



The native traffic policeman is protected from the hot sun while on duty.



Veiled Moslem women wait for the train outside the Agra station.

**Gandhi.** Mohandas Gandhi was a Hindu, born of a high caste family, and educated in India and England. He lived in England for a few years reading, studying, thinking, noticing the world around him. Then he went to South Africa where he practiced law for twenty years; still thinking, studying, noticing. Gandhi was a brown man, like other Hindus. White people of South Africa treated colored people badly. In South Africa Gandhi and his fellow Indians were kicked, beaten, spat upon; and were not allowed to eat in white men's restaurants or sleep in their hotels.

Gandhi read the life of Christ in the Gospels. He read some works of the Russian writer Tolstoy, a very religious man. And Gandhi came to believe that the colored people of the world would gain their freedom from the white man's rule, and their equal rights as human beings; not by hate and fighting but by charity and peace. He went back to India and began his work of leading his people.

While in Africa, Gandhi had visited a Catholic monastery, where he learned to keep silence and make mental prayer at certain times daily, and to live simply. He kept up these habits all his life. He taught Indians not to hate their British overlords, but to keep trying to gain independence by asking for it peacefully. Indians loved

Gandhi and respected him as a saint. After years of struggle, Gandhi's goal was reached. India was freed; but Gandhi himself was dead—shot down by an assassin.

Gandhi was a great and noble man. While leader of all India he lived as a poor Hindu. He had courage to speak out for his ideas even though they were different from those of most people. He worked to get decent human rights for the "untouchables," and to get people of other castes to work together.

**The Taj Mahal.** Although many Indians are Hindus, India is still one of the great Moslem lands of the world. At Agra is one of the most beautiful buildings in the world—a Moslem tomb—called the Taj Mahal (Tahj-ma-hall). It is made of snow-white marble, carved like lace, and it was built by an Indian emperor in memory of his favorite wife when she died. It is said that the architect was an Italian.

Mosques, as the Moslems call their church buildings, are usually very beautiful. Moslems must pray five times daily, and all pray together in the mosque every Friday. Women are not admitted to mosques. Moslem women are not very highly respected, nor do they have much freedom. They wear veils over their faces in public, and live hidden in a back part of the house. When Moslem women go riding in a carriage, they are hidden inside curtains so nobody can see them. In Moslem schools of India the boys learn to read by reciting aloud all together. They study mostly from the sacred book of Mohammed, called the Koran.

**The Catholic Faith in India.** On the west coast of India is the city of Goa, which belongs to Portugal and has many people of Portuguese blood. Here Saint Francis Xavier labored in days long ago, and here his body is still kept in a great shrine. At certain



times his coffin is taken into the church. Pilgrims by the thousands visit it, kiss the relics of the saint, and pray to him. Many people have been cured by miracles at these times.

There are many Catholics in parts of the west coast of India. In many centers there are large churches, each with four or five Indian priests. Masses are said from morning until noon on Sundays. Catholic schools often have a thousand pupils, and the parishes boast all the societies and sodalities to be found in an American city. There are Catholic newspapers, printed in the language of the people. Some were started almost a hundred years ago. These busy Catholic centers are in charge of native Indian bishops. Native priests and Sisters work among the people and conduct the schools. The Church here is entirely Indian.

**The Malabar coast.** One part of the west coast is called the Malabar Backwaters. It is full of lagoons, canals, lakes, and all kinds of waterways. People ride in rowboats or launches, chugging along canals between palm trees and little farms. Children go to school in boats. Peddlers come along in boats selling everything that anyone wants to buy. People go to weddings in boats. Even the bodies of those who die go in boats to be buried, and all the people in the funeral processions go along in boats. In each of these villages the church is the center of the people's life.

These Indian people of Malabar have been Catholic almost since the time of Our Lord. It is said that Saint Thomas himself, one of the twelve Apostles, brought the Faith to Malabar and baptized the first Indian Christians. Great numbers of religious from Malabar go to other parts of India as "foreign missionaries"—priests and Sisters who go out to teach the Catholic Faith in

pagan sections of the country. Even though the Church is old and well settled in this area, India as a whole is still a non-Christian land. Catholics among its many millions are only a small percentage.

**Schools and science.** India has a great system of schools, colleges, and universities where young Indians are educated. Many of these are government schools. Protestants and Catholics have also built centers of learning.

Since there are poisonous snakes, insects, and spiders in hot, wet India, many of the people die from the bites of these creatures every year. In the laboratories of one of these colleges, one of the priests teaches the Indian students to make serum which will cure the bites of these snakes and insects. Different kinds of snakes are kept there in glass cages.

**High caste missionary.** About the time the Pilgrims and Puritans were setting up their farms and fisheries in the wilderness of New England, a lad named John de Britto was growing up in the cultured society of Lisbon, in Portugal. He was of a noble family and was brought up at the King's court. While a boy in his teens he became a Jesuit, and in time went to India as a missionary.

An American Medical Mission Sister cares for an Indian baby in a little Catholic hospital.





There he found that the high caste Brahmans and priests of the Hindu religion were respected by the people, while foreigners were despised as being of no caste.

Father de Britto, himself a Portuguese nobleman and a Christian priest, decided to copy the example of Father Robert de Nobili, a Jesuit who had worked in India before him. He became one with the Indians and entered one of the high noble castes. He wore the yellow cotton gown, abstained from animal food and from wine, and outdid the Hindus in penance and prayer. He made himself perfect in the native language, and traveled about, teaching Christian truth and starting the Church in each section. He hobnobbed with princes, and made many conversions by his holy life, by his teaching, and by working miracles. The Brahmans persecuted him and finally had him beheaded. The holy martyr, now called Saint John de Britto, has worked many more miracles since he went to heaven.

**Work of a modern missionary.** In the region around the city of Nagpur, southwest of Calcutta, there is an interesting settlement of Catholic Indian people. This section is away from the coast, on the higher plateau. Here are villages of Catholic Indians

where their little houses are built around the church. The priests are native Indians. Native Indian Sisters wear pretty blue and white Indian dress for their religious habit, and go barefoot like most Indian women. In the homes of the Catholic Indian people, pictures of Our Lady and of the Sacred Heart hang on the walls.

Missioners have started "co-op" stores to help the poor people. The farmers once had to pay very high prices for seed and farm tools. Now the stores sell things at reasonable prices, and the people prosper. There are thousands of Catholics. Only a few years ago these people were all pagans who worshiped many gods. They were very poor. A few men owned all the land and made the farmers give up much of their crops for rent every year. Often they would take the land away from the small farmers for a debt or some other reason.

A good Jesuit priest, Father Lievens, came from Belgium and learned the language and the ways of these people. He studied all the laws about lands and rents and farms. When a poor farmer was treated badly by his landlord, the priest would go to the judge with him and help him win his case. Soon all the poor began coming to

Little village boys study in an outdoor school in Kashmir, where the weather is good most of the year. Indian naval cadets march in Bombay. Students learn mechanics, others study art in some of India's many good colleges.





Afghan traders lead their camel caravan into India through the Khyber Pass. Native Catholic Sisters of Pakistan wisely wear Indian women's dress as religious garb. They are well received by Moslem women and do much good among them.

Father Lievens for help in their troubles. While he was helping them he also taught them about Our Lord and about God's Church. Within a few years nearly the whole area became Catholic, mostly from the work of this young priest.

## Pakistan

Pakistan is a Moslem state, divided in two by the rest of India. There are about one fourth as many people in Pakistan as in India. Most of them are Moslems.

The two parts of Pakistan, 1,000 miles apart, differ in climate. West Pakistan is hot and dry, although some mountain peaks are always covered with snow. East Pakistan is hot and rainy, and monsoons cause heavy rains in summer.

The Khyber Pass in northwestern Pakistan has been used for centuries by people traveling to and from old India. Caravans of camels and trucks and shepherds tending flocks still use it. A railroad runs to about the middle of the pass and a highway runs to Kabul, capital of Afghanistan. Shepherds drive their sheep and cattle up mountain

slopes in summer to search for grass. In winter, they move the flocks to the lowlands. Thousands of miles of canals bring water to many acres of land in the Indus Valley. Large dams store the water. Karachi, the capital of Pakistan, is near the main mouth of the Indus River.

Where crops are grown in west Pakistan, the land is usually irrigated. The chief crop is wheat. Nomadic herdsman pasture their animals on much of the dry land where grass can be found.

East Pakistan is sometimes called the land of rice and jute. Many farmers raise jute on the flood plains of the Brahmaputra and Ganges rivers. The jute plant grows, like rice, in hot, wet lands. When the plant is ready, the farmers soak it in water for several weeks. Then it is easy to strip off the long threads of fibers, which are sold to the factories where rope, gunny sacks, and coarse burlap cloth are made. Some jute is shipped to mills in Calcutta. Jute is also shipped to Britain.

1 Study the map and locate the three geographic divisions of India. How does the climate differ in these regions and why?



Total population 415,435,000; Catholics in India and Pakistan number 4,680,000.

2 List India's products according to region. Where is the best farm land located? Name the rivers the farmers depend upon for irrigation.



In what parts of India is rice the important crop? What climatic conditions are necessary for this crop?

3 Locate the two parts of Pakistan and list the products of each. How far apart are the two sections?



What is a delta? Locate two deltas in Pakistan. By what rivers were they farmed?



4 What large bodies of water border India on the east? on the west? What great ocean lies south of India?



Total population 7,184,000; Catholics in Ceylon number 530,000.

5 Make a list of the important parts of India and Pakistan. What products are exported and imported at each?



## PEOPLES OF SOUTHERN ASIA: Their Lands and Work

India may be divided into three regions: the great mountain wall in the north; the Ganges-Brahmaputra Plain; and the plateau and coastal plains in the south.

The northern mountains, the Himalayas, aid India by shutting off cold, northern winds. The melting snow on their slopes provides water for many streams used for navigation and for the irrigation of dry lawlands. The Ganges-Brahmaputra Plain is situated between the mountains in the north and the plateau in the south. This great plain is the heart of India and is densely settled. It is a very fertile region.

Southern India is chiefly a peninsula. Most of the region is occupied by the Deccan Plateau. The eastern and western edges of the plateau are very hilly and much higher than the narrow, coastal lawlands. The eastern and western edges are called Ghats, which means steps.

Seventy per cent of the people of India depend on farming for a living. Most of the farms are small, and the farmers use simple tools. Rice is the chief crop; but grains, tropical fruits, spices, and cotton are grown in abundance. A large part of India has a climate that is favorable for farming. The Tropic of Cancer passes through the middle of the country, and the lowlands are close enough to the equator to have hot summers and mild winters. Only on the mountains are the winters very cold.

India's important mineral region is in the hilly land two hundred miles west of Calcutta. A small percentage of the population is engaged in mining.

Much of India's manufacturing is done in the hames. There are factories in the large cities. The leading industry is the manufacturing of textiles. Much of the cotton raised in India is spun into thread and woven into cloth.

Pakistan is an independent country and consists of two blocks of land. It is the only country on earth that has its home territory divided into two main parts by another country.

Western Pakistan stretches from the hot, dry plains along the coast of the Arabian Sea, to high mountains along the Afghanistan border. The famous Khyber Pass leads through the mountains to the country of Afghanistan. Nomadic herders live in the hilly land, where there are no farms. Much of western Pakistan is made up of the Indus Valley. The Indus River rises in the Himalaya Mountains and empties into the Arabian Sea, where it has built a large delta. Irrigation is necessary for successful farming in the Indus Valley.

Much of Eastern Pakistan is made up of the vast delta of the Ganges and Brahmaputra rivers. The region is densely settled. The summers are very hot and rainy. Most of the world's supply of jute, from which burlap is made, is grown in this wet delta land.

The island of Ceylon is about half the size of New York State. The interior of the island is hilly. Only about one fifth of the land is productive; the remainder is jungle country. The climate is tropical.

If you could take a trip to Southern Asia, where would you like to go and why?

7 How far is Ceylon from the coast of India? Measure the distance on the map. Why is Ceylon hot and rainy? List her products.



Where is tea grown in India? How would you go about raising this crop in India?

6 What industry is carried on in the northern mountainous parts of India and Pakistan?



A woman worker of Ceylon makes cuts in rubber tree bark and collects latex. She wears a hand-printed gown made by the "batik" process, using wax and dye. Although Malaya and Sumatra lead in rubber production, the people of Ceylon are rapidly catching up. The cuts in the bark must be carefully made by experts. A cut too deep injures the tree. The milky latex runs into the small cup at the base of the tree. Workers empty it into shallow pans, let it curdle, roll it into flat sheets, wash, dry, and smoke them. These sheets are packed in boxes or bales and shipped away for export.

#### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Complete each of the following statements.

1. The largest part of India is made up of (Union of India, Pakistan, independent States).
2. Among nations of the world, India ranks (first, second, third) in population.
3. The monsoons bring heavy rains to many parts of India during (spring, summer, winter).
4. The people of Pakistan are largely (Hindus, Moslems, Buddhists).
5. The fiber from which gunny sacks and burlap are made is (jute, hemp, bamboo).

## Ceylon

The Dominion of Ceylon is an island separated from southern India by a strait twenty-two miles wide. It is part of the British Commonwealth. Only a few degrees from the equator, it is hot and has heavy rains. It has thick jungles containing snakes, monkeys, and elephants.

Most ships sailing around India stop at Ceylon's capital city of Colombo, which has a fine harbor on the western side of the island. In ancient times, trade drew Chinese junks to Ceylon from the east and Arabian boats from the west. Marco Polo stopped there in the 13th century.

**Productive island.** Farmers raise the usual tropical crops and fruits. In the hilly interior, tea, rubber, coffee, and quinine are grown. Ceylon's minerals include iron ore, graphite, sapphires, and rubies. The people get pearls from oysters in the Indian Ocean.

India was the home of Gautama, the founder of Buddhism, but there are few Buddhists in India. Ceylon, however, is a great Buddhist country, with millions of believers. In the city of Kandy is the beautiful Golden Temple of Buddha where people honor that Indian prince of long ago. Catholic and Protestant missionaries are working in the island.

6. The sacred city of the Hindus on the Ganges River is (Delhi, Calcutta, Benares).

7. India's chief city and largest port is (Calcutta, Bombay, Benares).

8. The capital of Pakistan is (Delhi, Bombay, Karachi).

9. The capital of the Union of India is at (New Delhi, Benares, Calcutta).

10. The product for which Ceylon is becoming important is (cotton, rubber, wheat).



## 5. The Peoples of Southwestern Asia



Modern citizens of the Holy Land of Palestine ride camels on the road to Bethlehem.

Southwestern Asia, near the point where Asia touches Europe and Africa, is called the Near East. These lands have long been famous. Here, it is believed, was the Garden of Eden. Here Christ was born and crucified. It was here that great caravans of the ancient traders crossed from continent to continent carrying silks, spices, and other products from the Far East to Europe. Even today most land travel between the three continents must pass through the countries of the Near East.

267

Turkish girls, using colored wool and a hand loom, weave beautiful Oriental rugs.



1 Name the countries of Southwest Asia. Discuss the climate and how it effects the products. List the important products according to country.



Total population 65,667,000  
Catholics number 772,000.  
Estimate the percentage of Catholics.

2 Once the soil of these countries was fertile. Now much of it is desert. Pick out the desert regions. Review Chapter 2 and explain.



How do people live in deserts and in the oases?

## PEOPLES OF SOUTHWESTERN ASIA: Their Lands and Work

Southwestern Asia is bordered by five seas. Much of the area is desert or grassland, because of the light rainfall. Turkey, Lebanon, Syria, Palestine, Israel, Arabia with its several divisions, Trans-Jordan, Iraq, Iran, and Afghanistan are located in this region.

Some of Turkey lies in Europe, but most of the country, including its capital, Ankara, is in Asia. The main occupations in Turkey are farming and herding; mining has never been considered important there.

Lebanon is a very small, mountainous strip of land along the Mediterranean coast. Farming occupies most of the population, although irrigation is necessary for successful farming.

Syria has a mountainous coast. But much of its lands extends eastward into the desert, where crops are grown with the aid of irrigation.

In Palestine, the chief occupation of the people is farming, because the land has practically no minerals or forests. However, much of the country is too dry or rugged to be farmed. There is a narrow plain along the western coast; and east of this plain, there is a hilly plateau. In some places in these two areas, crops can be grown without irrigation. Next to the hilly plateau is a dry plain, which contains the

Jordan River and the Dead Sea.

Arabia is a peninsula about as large as the part of the United States east of the Mississippi River. The greater part of Arabia is a plateau, and much of the country is sandy desert.

Saudi Arabia and Yemen are two countries in Arabia. The people of Saudi Arabia either wander about as herders, or live in towns and villages where farming and some manufacturing are done. Most of the villages and cities are located in oases in the desert. In Yemen, in the southwest part of Arabia, coffee is an important crop.

Trans-Jordan is a small desert country.

Iraq, a very hot, dry region believed to have been the home of Adam and Eve, has much petroleum. In summer it is one of the hottest places on the earth. The soil is fertile but must be irrigated if it is farmed.

Iran and Afghanistan are chiefly mountain and plateau countries, with very little rainfall. The people of Afghanistan live in the fertile river valleys. The country has some mineral deposits, but they are not mined. There are no railroads, but the famous Khyber Pass connects Afghanistan with Pakistan.

Israel is the independent Jewish country that was created by the United Nations in 1948. It was formed by dividing Palestine between the Jews and the Arabs. The Jewish people call Israel their homeland.

268



Describe the city of Tel Aviv and the industries of modern Israel.

3 Find the birthplace of Mohammed. What effects did he and his followers have on the world? Point out Moslem lands in Southwestern Asia.



Find the city in Syria where St. Paul was baptized. Tell something about him.

**4** Locate several place names in Palestine familiar from the Gospels. Tell something Jesus did or said at each place you locate.



What country produced famous trees to build King Solomon's temple?

**5** Find Istanbul—modern name for ancient Constantinople. Tell something about Emperor Constantine and the gorgeous cathedral he built.



What city is connected with Arabian Nights tales? Find it.

### Three Neighboring Countries

**Iran.** Iran, a country of mountains and plateaus, has hot summers and cold winters. Since there is little rainfall, most farming is done through irrigation. Farmers raise fine fruits and melons in the irrigated areas. Cattle and sheep graze on dry land in the mountains in summer and on plateaus in winter. Persian rugs, so named because Iran was once called Persia, are made of the wool of local sheep. Iran is rich in petroleum and many millions of barrels are sent to the Persian Gulf for shipment all over the world.

Great improvement has been made in transportation in recent years. Good highways are found in parts of the country, but because the land is hilly, building roads is costly. A railroad connects the Caspian Sea with the Persian Gulf. Tehran, the capital and largest city, has broad streets, electric lights, and many modern buildings.

**Afghanistan** About the same size as Texas, Afghanistan has a few million people, most of whom are Moslems. It is a country of hot summers and cold winters. Most of its rainfall comes in winter and early spring.

The best farms are found in irrigated re-

gions. Water is usually obtained from wells and rivers. Farmers plant some crops in the fall and harvest them in early summer. They plant others in spring and harvest them in late summer. Many of the people are herders, and raise sheep, cattle, camels, and donkeys. They use lard made from the fat tails of sheep, and live on the flesh and dairy products of their flocks. Kabul, the capital, is located in the Kabul River Valley region.


**Iraq.** The most important part of Iraq is sometimes called Mesopotamia, which means "between the rivers." The rivers are the Tigris and the Euphrates. After World War II, Mesopotamia and a stretch of land to the west were united to form Iraq.

Because of the extreme heat, the people remain in cellars or underground caves during the hottest part of the summer days. Even winters are warm. Little rain falls in any region during the year, so even though the soil is fertile, land must be irrigated to raise crops. In recent years, some dams have been built and ditches dug. Petroleum is sent through pipe lines to Tripoli and Haifa on the Mediterranean coast.

Basra, a shipping center is only a few miles from the Persian Gulf. Baghdad is the capital and principal city. Small rafts, held up by goatskins filled with air, travel on the river between Mosul and Baghdad. Mosul is a center for many caravan routes to Syria, Asia Minor, and Iran.

### Turkey on Two Continents

Once almost all the Balkan Peninsula belonged to Turkey. Now it occupies only a small part of the region. Part of Turkey is in Europe, but most of it is in Asia. Its great trading city of Istanbul is in Europe, but its capital at Ankara is in Asia. Farming is the chief occupation.



When the young Bedouin lad of Iraq comes to study in the Catholic college in Baghdad, he hands over his firearms to the Jesuit Father who welcomes him.

The Dardanelles Strait, the Sea of Marmara, and the Bosphorus Strait separate Turkey in Asia from Turkey in Europe. Ships must pass through these waters in going between the Black Sea and the Mediterranean Sea.

**Istanbul.** The city of Istanbul is very old and was once called Constantinople. At that time it was the capital. Later the name was changed to Istanbul and the capital was moved to Ankara. A crossroads city, Istanbul is the crossing place of a land route between Europe and Asia and of a water route from the Mediterranean to the Black Sea. The city has been an important trading center since the old days of caravans. Today it is Turkey's chief port, and one of the most important in southern Europe.

**Turkey in Asia.** The greater part of Turkey is in that part of Asia called the Plateau of Anatolia. It is a rugged region with mountains on all sides. There are wide valleys in the west and some fertile valleys in the interior. The region near the Black Sea has a moderate amount of rainfall in both summer and winter, while the coastal region along the Mediterranean Sea has hot, dry summers and mild, moist winters, with Mediterranean-type crops. Irrigation is carried on along the Mediterranean coast.

Manufacturing is becoming more important. However, there is not enough sugar, flour, cotton, and leather to meet the needs of the people. Turkish tobacco for cigarettes is famous the world over. The tobacco leaves are smaller than American leaves. Figs from



Nomad herders of Turkey make camp on the grassy plains. While their herds and flocks are grazing, the family make a campfire in their brazier and start the coffee pot boiling.

the region near Izmir are also famous, and are shipped all over the world.

Much of Turkey's interior land is used to raise goats, sheep, cattle, and horses. Herders raise angora goats to provide mohair which is woven into beautiful fabrics.

**Old and new.** In the past twenty or thirty years, Turkey has become a modern country. Most roads are dusty in summer or muddy in the rainy season. Caravans of camels are still used. Some highways and railroads have been built to aid a generally poor transportation system. The people are changing, but many people are still uneducated and poor. They are Moslems, but women no longer wear veils, and the men do not wear the Turkish fez, or red cap. There are few Catholics in Turkey.





A small caravan passes through the bare mountains of Syria on the way to Damascus. Such travelers have passed this way for thousands of years. A girl of Palestine picks olives.



## Bible Lands

**Lebanon and Syria.** Both these small countries are rich in ancient and Bible history. For a long time owned by Turkey, they were given to France after World War I. A few years ago they were both made independent.

In ancient times the coastal region of modern Lebanon was the home of the Phoenicians. They sailed beyond the Mediterranean Sea and reached England hundreds of years before Christ was born. These people were famous traders and they built great cities. In those days the Lebanon Mountains were renowned for their cedar trees and lumber.

Lebanon today is a small Christian country edging the eastern coast of the Mediterranean Sea. The coastal region has hot, dry summers and mild winters with some rain. Many farm products are grown. Beirut is the capital and chief port. A pipe line for oil runs from the fields of Iraq to the port of Tripoli in Lebanon.

To the east of the Lebanon Mountains lies Syria. It is larger than Lebanon. Damascus, the capital, is an important city on many trade routes.

**Palestine and Israel.** Most of Palestine, the Holy Land, is now known as the Re-

public of Israel. The Arabic-Jewish war ended in 1948 with most of Palestine being taken by the Jews. This section, about the size of New Hampshire, was renamed Israel when it was awarded to the Jews as a national home by the United Nations.

The land is sacred to Christians, Jews, and Moslems alike. Palestine is loved by Christians because Jesus was born in the little town of Bethlehem. He spent all His life teaching in the Holy Land, and places like Jerusalem, the Sea of Galilee, the Jordan, and the Dead Sea are well known to us. Palestine is sacred to the Jews because it was the Promised Land for them before Jesus was born. And it is also home to a large number of Arabs, who are Moslems and have lived there many years.

**Farming.** Farming has been the occupation of the people of Palestine for thousands of years, and even the Bible called it a land flowing with milk and honey. The country was prosperous until the Moslems took control hundreds of years ago. Now Jews returning there from all over the world are trying to rebuild irrigation systems, reclaim the soil, and once more produce good crops. They are starting factories and chemical works.

Over most of the interior of what is now known as Israel it is necessary to irrigate



Modern Jews of Israel, thousands of them immigrants from Europe's troubled lands, herd sheep, tend vineyards, and turn dry acres into good farm land by means of irrigation and hard work.

crops if they are to grow. A large part of the country is too dry and rugged for farming. Mediterranean-type crops grow along the coast, and many homes have olive orchards. An olive tree in Israel may bear fruit for more than a hundred years. Much wine is made from grapes.

**Cities.** There are no large manufacturing cities. Some products are made on a small scale. Jerusalem and Bethlehem are cities of great religious importance and receive many visitors. Haifa, Jaffa, and Tel Aviv are important cities on the coast. Tel Aviv is a modern city, set in an ancient land. A pipe line runs from the oil fields in Iraq to the Mediterranean Sea at Haifa.

**Transjordan.** This small country east of Palestine and Israel is a hot desert region with no rivers or lakes. The people get their water from deep wells, cisterns, and pools, which are supplied by the rainfall which comes chiefly in the winter.

Some of the people are farmers and live in villages. Some wander about the country, taking flocks of sheep, goats, and camels in search of grass and water.

Large herds of goats furnish meat, milk, hides, and hair. The black hair is woven into coarse cloth to make black tents.

**Moslem lands.** Most of these countries of

the Near East are Moslem lands, and this fact has had a great effect upon both geography and history. When the Moslems conquered these regions long ago, great armies of Christians formed in Europe, and marched against the Arabs, whom they called Saracens. These wars were called the Crusades.

The Crusades failed to free the Holy Land from the Moslems. However, they gave the Europeans contact with some Arab learning, for the Arabs were skilled in mathematics, in chemistry, and in many arts and crafts. Many of the waste desert lands of the Near East and Africa owe their poverty in part to Moslem conquerors. If the Moslems had not been turned back from Europe in the famous Battle of Lepanto, all Europeans, and we Americans, too, might today be Moslems.

## The Arabian Peninsula

Although Arabia is one third the size of the United States, this desert land has fewer people than Pennsylvania. A narrow, sandy plain lies next to the Red Sea in Arabia, but to the east of it mountains rise more than 8,000 feet. Beyond the mountains are great stretches of sandy plain. Lying in the region of the northeast trade winds and the horse latitudes, Arabia has little rainfall. Only the mountains of the southwest and a few other places get enough rain for crops. The weather is very hot in summer. Freezing weather comes at night in winter, but the days are warm since the region is near the equator.

Arabia's great oil fields and large deposits of petroleum produce many barrels of oil each year. Foreign countries, including the United States, have interests in the wells. Arabia is crossed by many airplane routes, and airfields are located at many places.

Arabia is composed of two independent countries, Saudi Arabia and Yemen; Aden, a British colony; and other areas near the southern and southeastern coasts.

**Saudi Arabia.** Some of the people of Saudi Arabia do their farming in villages located on oases, and others wander about the country tending flocks. Little of Saudi Arabia's land can be farmed without irrigation. Wells, streams, springs, and cisterns irrigate only a small amount of the land.

There are few railroads in Arabia, so camels are used as freight carriers. Blankets and tents are made of camel hair.

Many of the desert people used to be robbers, who raided the settlements when there was no rainfall for grass and their flocks began to die. However, the modern King Ibn Saud made Saudi Arabia a land almost entirely free of crime. He used stern methods. Thieves are punished by having their right hands cut off. Murderers are beheaded, and their heads are hung up on a pole for all to see. The millions of Moslem pilgrims on their way to Mecca can now travel through Saudi Arabia without fear.

#### PAUSE AND REMEMBER

Choose the correct ending for each sentence.

1. A person traveling through the Khyber Pass would go from India to

Iran      Iraq      Afghanistan

2. The ancient country of Persia is now known as

Afghanistan      Iran      Iraq

3. The country of Southwestern Asia that extends into Europe is

Turkey      Arabia      Iraq

4. Mohair is obtained from  
sheep      Angora goats      cattle

5. An important natural resource of Arabia and Iraq is

water power      coal      petroleum

Mecca and Medina, the two most important Mohammedan cities, are in Saudi Arabia. Mohammed, founder of the Moslem religion, was born in Mecca and is buried at Medina. Mecca is a great tourist city and often as many as 150,000 Moslems from many countries make pilgrimages to the city each year. Arabia is a strongly Moslem land.

**Yemen.** Yemen, in southwestern Arabia, is a great coffee-growing country, and its coffee is exported through the small port of Mocha. Mocha coffee is of high grade and very famous. The region has fertile soil and its hillsides furnish good drainage. Thunderstorms bring rain from the west. Heavy mists supply water for the coffee plants and help keep the region from becoming too hot. Water may also be stored in Yemen's cisterns for use in irrigating the land.

**Aden.** The British control a region called Aden in southwestern Arabia. The port of Aden has a good harbor and is excellently located for trade. It exports materials for both Arabia and Africa, and is a coaling station for steamships. It guards the route between the Red Sea and the Indian Ocean.

6. The modern city of Tel Aviv is in

Turkey      Israel      Saudi Arabia

7. A coffee growing country on the Arabian Peninsula is

Saudi Arabia      Yemen      Aden

8. Most of the oil of Southwestern Asia is shipped to ports by

railroad tank cars      tank trucks      pipe line

9. The Arabian Peninsula is described as mountainous plateau fertile lowland desert

10. The region located between the Tigris and Euphrates rivers is called

Transjordan      Mesopotamia      Anatolia

## For My Geography Notebook

### Questions for Review

#### Southeastern Asia

1. Explain why the climate in much of the Philippines is hot all year. 2. Where do most of the people of the Philippines live? 3. Why do the Filipinos have a Catholic culture? 4. Mention the chief uses of the products of the coconut tree. 5. What product is made from hemp? 6. Of what important French possession was Viet-Nam formerly part? 7. How is rubber obtained? 8. What are some products made from copra? 9. Why would you expect to meet people of many nations in Singapore? 10. Of what importance is the valley of the Irrawaddy River to the Burmese? 11. By what name was Thailand formerly known? 12. Why is teak a valuable wood for the people living in tropical countries? 13. Locate the United States of Indonesia in relation to Asia and Australia.

#### The Union of India, Pakistan, and Ceylon

1. What is the connection between India and the discovery of America by Columbus? 2. Why was India divided into Pakistan and the Union of India? 3. In what parts of India do most of the people live? 4. Describe the effect of the monsoon winds on the climate of India. 5. Why is irrigation used even in parts of India where rainfall is heavy? 6. Give some reasons why rice is raised in southern and eastern Asia rather than other food crops. 7. What products are made from jute grown in India? 8. Why do the Hindus fail to use their cattle for beef? 9. Why are cottage industries a good thing for the Indians? 10. Make a list of products which the people of India make in their homes. 11. What did Gandhi gain for the people of India? 12. What member of the British Commonwealth of Nations lies just south of India?

#### Southwestern Asia

1. What part of Asia is called the Near East? 2. What is Iran's most important mineral resource? 3. How did the part of Iraq called Mesopotamia receive its name? 4. How was the Republic of Israel created? 5. What Mediterranean lands are connected by pipe line with the oil fields of Iraq? 6. Why are many of the people

of Southwestern Asia nomads? 7. Why do many Mohammedans make pilgrimages to Mecca and Medina? 8. What makes Aden important to the British? 9. What conditions favor the production of coffee in Yemen?

**Capital Cities.** Copy the list of countries in column A. Next to each write its capital listed in column B.

A	B
1. The Philippines	New Delhi
2. United States of Indonesia	Kabul
3. Thailand	Colombo
4. Union of India	Manila
5. Pakistan	Tehran
6. Afghanistan	Damascus
7. Iran	Baghdad
8. Iraq	Bangkok
9. Syria	Ankara
10. Lebanon	Tel Aviv
11. Turkey	Beirut
12. Israel	Hanoi
13. Ceylon	Jakarta
14. Viet-Nam	Karachi

**Using Geography Words Correctly.** The following geography words have all been used in this chapter. Use each in a sentence.

1. typhoon	9. kapok
2. copra	10. cassava
3. hemp	11. quinine
4. latex	12. cinchona
5. teak	13. caste system
6. horse latitudes	14. monsoon
7. northeast trade winds	15. irrigation canal
8. alluvial plain	16. jute

#### Pause and Think

1. How did the Catholic Faith help the people of the Philippine Islands?
2. Why are there so many Catholics in French Indochina?
3. Can you tell a few ways in which the Thai are like Americans?
4. Why is the caste system of India opposed to Christ's teaching that men are created equal?
5. Why must Jews, Christians, and Moslems respect one another's rights in Palestine?

# AREA AND POPULATION

## WORLD SUMMARY

	<i>square miles</i>	<i>population</i>
Africa	12,563,807	175,869,488
Antarctica	5,000,000	
Asia	17,000,000	*1,178,341,250
Australasia & Oceania	3,645,294	23,796,858
Europe	3,750,000	*380,960,346
North America	9,028,716	206,410,000
South America	6,895,862	101,399,661

\*Excluding U.S.S.R.'s population: 211,384,985

## EUROPE

	<i>square miles</i>	<i>population</i>	<i>Catholics</i>
Albania	10,629	1,003,000	113,000
Austria	32,369	6,953,000	1,569,726
Belgium	11,775	8,512,000	8,238,959
Bulgaria	42,808	7,022,000	45,000
Czechoslovakia	49,358	12,164,000	8,500,000
Denmark	16,575	4,045,000	23,350
Estonia	18,353	1,137,000	3,000
Finland	134,588	3,711,000	1,800
France	212,659	40,503,000	31,000,000
Germany	143,200	66,007,000	20,000,000
Greece	50,257	7,345,000	50,000
Hungary	35,875	9,201,000	6,000,000
Ireland	27,137	2,953,000	2,773,920
Italy	119,800	47,000,000	46,837,425
Latvia	25,402	1,950,502	506,500
Lithuania	22,959	3,032,863	2,100,000
Luxembourg	999	301,000	295,000
Netherlands	15,764	7,936,000	3,100,000
Norway	124,556	3,123,000	4,300
Poland	120,818	23,930,000	21,537,000
Portugal	35,466	8,400,000	7,782,800
Romania	91,584	15,873,000	3,000,000
Spain	196,607	27,502,661	27,452,661
Sweden	173,347	6,674,000	11,500
Switzerland	15,737	4,266,000	1,745,146
Union of Soviet Socialist Republics	8,473,444	211,384,985	8,000,000
United Kingdom	94,279	46,038,000	3,698,590
Yugoslavia	95,558	15,752,000	5,670,696

## ASIA

	<i>square miles</i>	<i>population</i>	<i>Catholics</i>
Afghanistan	250,000	12,000,000	
Arabia	1,000,000	10,000,000	770
Burma	261,610	16,824,000	140,300
Ceylon	25,332	6,657,000	460,000
China	4,314,097	462,798,093	3,274,740
Federation of Malaya	50,956	4,908,000	80,339
French Indochina	280,849	25,000,000	2,000,000
India and Pakistan	1,596,880	337,000,000	3,959,616
Indonesia	218,365	55,710,000	800,000

## ASIA (Cont.)

	<i>square miles</i>	<i>population</i>	<i>Catholics</i>
Iran	628,060	16,550,000	12,000
Iraq	175,000	4,800,000	80,000
Japan	147,690	80,217,000	130,388
Korea	85,246	25,120,000	500,000
Lebanon	3,600	1,116,000	460,479
Palestine (incl. Israel)	10,429	1,673,071	58,706
Philippines	114,830	20,172,000	13,750,000
Syria	54,300	2,930,000	109,898
Thailand	200,148	17,317,000	100,000
Transjordan	34,740	306,000	8,683
Turkey	294,493	19,500,000	41,391

## AFRICA

	<i>square miles</i>	<i>population</i>	<i>Catholics</i>
Algeria	851,978	7,490,000	660,000
Anglo-Egyptian Sudan	950,950	6,233,605	65,431
Angola	487,788	3,740,787	500,000
Bechuanaland	275,000	284,189	54,000
Belgian Congo	902,040	10,240,499	4,010,721
British Somaliland	67,936	350,000	3,559
Cameroon	162,892	2,516,623	441,000
Egypt	383,000	16,522,000	150,000
Eritrea	45,754	835,917	40,000
Ethiopia	305,731	9,450,000	30,000
French Equatorial Africa	959,982	3,500,000	600,000
French Somaliland	8,376	50,000	704
French West Africa	1,814,808	14,944,830	283,000
Gambia	4,068	220,509	3,125
Gold Coast	91,843	3,820,000	257,158
Italian Somaliland	194,000	1,250,000	10,000
Kenya	224,960	3,366,000	269,250
Liberia	43,000	1,000,000	10,000
Libya	679,183	888,401	90,000
Madagascar	229,438	3,797,936	605,000
Morocco	153,870	7,295,202	180,000
Mozambique	297,654	5,085,630	520,000
Nigeria	372,674	22,334,000	544,311
Northern Rhodesia	290,320	1,400,000	240,101
Nyasaland	36,829	2,050,051	242,207
Sierra Leone	27,925	1,970,000	7,853
Southern Rhodesia	150,333	1,448,393	(incl. in fig. for Bechuanaland)
Southwest Africa	317,725	293,000	17,642
Tanganyika	342,706	5,258,000	628,616
Tunisia	48,300	2,700,000	220,000
Uganda	86,301	3,900,000	894,973
Union of South Africa	472,550	9,979,900	293,383
Zanzibar	1,020	242,000	(incl. in fig. for Kenya)



# AUSTRALIA and NEW ZEALAND

	<i>square miles</i>	<i>population</i>	<i>Catholics</i>
Australia	2,974,581	7,581,000	1,569,726
New Zealand	103,935	1,802,000	215,629

# NORTH AMERICA

	<i>square miles</i>	<i>population</i>	<i>Catholics</i>
Alaska	586,400	92,000	14,000
British Honduras	8,867	59,150	35,263
Canada	3,690,410	12,883,000	4,690,820
Costa Rica	23,000	771,503	729,587
El Salvador	13,176	2,047,000	1,644,686
Guatemala	45,452	3,678,000	3,498,700
Honduras	59,161	1,240,000	1,174,269
Mexico	763,944	23,425,000	22,800,000
Nicaragua	57,145	1,136,000	1,063,826
Panama	28,575	641,000	624,100
United States*	3,022,387	143,592,000	26,075,697

\*48 States only

# SOUTH AMERICA

	<i>square miles</i>	<i>population</i>	<i>Catholics</i>
Argentina	1,073,663	13,906,694	13,800,000
Bolivia	416,040	3,991,600	3,851,022
Brazil	3,286,170	39,900,000	39,177,880
British Guiana	89,480	337,521	139,609
Chile	286,323	5,487,404	5,475,650
Colombia	439,714	11,000,000	10,450,000
Ecuador	104,510	3,200,000	3,040,000
French Guiana	34,740	37,000	23,000
Netherlands Guiana			
(Surinam)	54,291	174,000	30,000
Paraguay	169,222	1,040,420	1,025,000
Peru	482,133	7,200,000	6,750,000
Uruguay	72,153	2,202,936	1,824,950
Venezuela	346,481	4,101,910	3,925,000

## Population of Some Large Cities in the Eastern Hemisphere

<i>cities</i>	<i>country</i>	<i>population</i>	<i>cities</i>	<i>country</i>	<i>population</i>
Adelaide	Australia	370,000	Bombay	India	1,489,883
Agra	India	284,149	Bordeaux	France	253,751
Ahmadabad	India	591,257	Bradford	England	261,700
Alep	Syria	320,167	Bremen	Germany	390,000
Alexandria	Egypt	685,736	Breslau	Germany	615,006
Algiers	Algeria	252,321	Brisbane	Australia	396,890
Allahabad	India	260,630	Bristol	England	416,500
Alma Ata	U.S.S.R.	230,528	Brno	Czechoslovakia	268,873
Altona	Germany	241,970	Brunswick	Germany	201,309
Amritsar	India	389,581	Brussels, Greater	Belgium	911,696
Amsterdam	Netherlands	769,144	Bucharest	Romania	984,619
Amoy	China	234,159	Budapest, Greater	Hungary	1,162,800
Ankara	Turkey	226,712	Cairo	Egypt	1,312,096
Antwerp	Belgium	256,332	Calcutta	India	2,108,891
Archangel	U.S.S.R.	281,000	Canton	China	861,024
Astrakhan	U.S.S.R.	254,000	Cape Town	Union of South Africa	214,201
Athens	Greece	652,385	Cardiff	Wales	236,100
Auckland	New Zealand	263,575	Casablanca	Morocco	435,000
Baghdad	Iraq	499,410	Cawnpore	India	487,324
Baku	U.S.S.R.	809,347	Changsha	China	606,972
Bangalore	India	248,334	Chelyabinsk	U.S.S.R.	273,127
Bangkok	Thailand	931,170	Chemnitz	Germany	334,563
Barcelona	Spain	1,125,158	Chungking	China	635,000
Beirut	Lebanon	233,970	Cologne	Germany	488,039
Belfast	Northern Ireland	438,112	Colombo	Ceylon	361,000
Belgrade	Yugoslavia	405,000	Copenhagen	Denmark	927,404
Benares	India	263,100	Coventry	England	240,420
Berlin, Greater	Germany	4,332,242	Croydon	England	241,120
Bilbao	Spain	216,263	Dacca	Pakistan	213,218
Birmingham	England	1,090,150	Dairen	China	282,665
Bologna	Italy	322,527	Damascus	Syria	286,310

## CITIES (Continued)

<i>cities</i>	<i>country</i>	<i>population</i>	<i>cities</i>	<i>country</i>	<i>population</i>
Danzig	Free State	415,000	Leningrad	U.S.S.R.	3,191,304
Delhi	India	521,849	Lille	France	200,575
Dnepropetrovsk	U.S.S.R.	500,662	Lisbon	Portugal	709,179
Dortmund	Germany	433,792	Liverpool	England	680,500
Dresden	Germany	625,174	Lódz	Poland	496,851
Dublin	Ireland	506,635	London, Greater	England	8,700,000
Duisburg-Hamborn	Germany	355,487	Lubeck	Germany	224,427
Düsseldorf	Germany	419,589	Lueknow	India	387,177
Edinburgh	Scotland	471,200	Lvov	U.S.S.R.	317,700
Erivan	U.S.S.R.	200,000	Lyons	France	570,622
Essen	Germany	520,656	Madras	India	777,481
Florence	Italy	370,980	Madrid	Spain	1,171,428
Foochow	China	322,725	Madura	India	239,144
Frankfort	Germany	546,649	Magdeburg	Germany	334,358
Fukuoka	Japan	322,000	Málaga	Spain	271,407
Fushun	China	295,036	Manchester	England	684,640
Genoa	Italy	649,778	Mannheim	Germany	283,801
Glasgow	Scotland	1,075,700	Marseille	France	635,939
Gorki	U.S.S.R.	644,116	Melbourne, Greater	Australia	1,192,850
Göteborg	Sweden	300,000	Messina	Italy	213,957
Graz	Germany	315,774	Milan	Italy	1,264,381
The Hague	Netherlands	476,308	Minsk	U.S.S.R.	239,000
Hakodate	Japan	226,500	Moscow	U.S.S.R.	4,137,018
Halle	Germany	220,364	Mukden	Manchuria	863,515
Hamburg	Germany	1,384,106	Munich	Germany	828,325
Hankow	China	777,993	Murcia	Spain	221,209
Hanover	Germany	355,484	Nagasaki	Japan	253,000
Harbin	Manchuria	520,000	Nagoya	Japan	1,249,100
Helsinki	Finland	327,627	Nagpur	India	301,957
Hiroshima	Japan	200,000	Nanking	China	1,019,148
Hong Kong	China	1,071,893	Nantes	France	200,625
Howrah	India	379,292	Naples	Italy	967,673
Changchun	China	415,264	Newcastle	England	290,730
Hull	England	319,400	New Delhi	India	93,733
Hyderabad	India	739,159	Nice	France	211,165
Ibadan	Nigeria	327,284	Ningpo	China	218,774
Indore	India	203,695	Nottingham	England	290,320
Irkutsk	U.S.S.R.	243,000	Novosibirsk	U.S.S.R.	278,000
Isfahan	Iran	205,000	Nürnberg	Germany	430,851
Istanbul	Turkey	845,136	Odessa	U.S.S.R.	604,223
Izmir	Turkey	200,038	Omsk	U.S.S.R.	281,000
Jakarta	Java, U.S.I.	437,000	Oporto	Portugal	262,309
Johannesburg	U. of S. Afr.	324,304	Osaka, Greater	Japan	3,092,498
Kalinin	U.S.S.R.	216,000	Oslo	Norway	289,000
Karachi	Pakistan	386,555	Palermo	Italy	452,417
Kazan	U.S.S.R.	402,200	Paris	France	2,725,374
Kharkov	U.S.S.R.	833,432	Paris, Greater	France	6,657,859
Kiel	Germany	213,299	Peiping	China	1,556,364
Kiev	U.S.S.R.	846,293	Perm	U.S.S.R.	255,196
Kobe	Japan	1,006,100	Perth	Australia	233,000
Kraków	Poland	299,565	Piraeus	Greece	328,299
Krasnodar	U.S.S.R.	203,946	Poona	India	258,197
Kuibyshev	U.S.S.R.	390,000	Portsmouth	England	210,440
Kure	Japan	262,300	Poznań	Poland	267,962
Kyoto	Japan	1,177,200	Salonika	Greece	236,524
Lahore	Pakistan	632,136	Stalingrad	U.S.S.R.	445,476
Leeds	England	493,120	Stalino	U.S.S.R.	462,000
Leicester	England	275,080	Stettin	Poland	268,915
Leipzig	Germany	701,606	Stockholm	Sweden	688,482
			Stoke on Trent	England	269,890

## CITIES (Continued)

<i>cities</i>	<i>country</i>	<i>population</i>	<i>cities</i>	<i>country</i>	<i>population</i>
Stuttgart	Germany	459,538	Sendai	Japan	223,630
Sverdeovsk	U.S.S.R.	425,544	Seoul	Korea	935,464
Sydney, Greater	Australia	1,398,170	Seville	Spain	370,320
Tabriz	Iran	214,000	Shanghai	China	4,274,486
Taihou	Formosa	274,157	Sheffield	England	508,850
Tashkent	U.S.S.R.	585,005	Shizuoka	Japan	200,737
Tehran	Iran	699,110	Sholapur	India	212,620
Tientsin	China	1,292,025	Singapore	Straits Set.	769,216
Tiflis	U.S.S.R.	519,175	Soerabaja	Java, U.S.I.	313,000
Tokyo, Greater	Japan	3,276,000	Sofia	Bulgaria	436,936
Toulouse	France	264,411	Srinagar	India	207,787
Trieste	Free City	261,368	Venice	Italy	302,417
Tsingtao	China	514,769	Vienna	Austria	1,930,000
Tula	U.S.S.R.	272,000	Vladivostok	U.S.S.R.	206,000
Tunis	Tunisia	219,578	Voronezh	U.S.S.R.	327,000
Turin	Italy	709,535	Wanhhsien	China	210,837
Ufa	U.S.S.R.	245,863	Warsaw	Poland	476,538
Valencia	Spain	544,039	Wilno	Poland	209,000
Prague	Czechoslovakia	923,946	Wuksien	China	260,000
Rangoon	Burma	400,415	Wuppertal	Germany	324,962
Riga	U.S.S.R.	393,211	Yaroslavl	U.S.S.R.	298,000
Rome	Italy	1,551,520	Yawata	Japan	243,500
Roston-on-Don	U.S.S.R.	510,258	Yokohama	Japan	2,652,988
Rotterdam	Netherlands	616,065	Yungkia	China	631,276
Saragossa	Spain	283,857	Zaporozhe	U.S.S.R.	289,000
Saratov	U.S.S.R.	376,000	Zhdanov	U.S.S.R.	222,000
			Zurich	Switzerland	674,505

## Air-Age Timetable

<i>from</i>	<i>to</i>	<i>airline miles</i>	<i>hours (approx.)</i>	<i>from</i>	<i>to</i>	<i>airline miles</i>	<i>hours (approx.)</i>
Chicago	New York	724	3½	New York	Moscow	4,662	23
Chicago	San Francisco	1,856	9	New York	Paris	3,600	18
London	Berlin	575	3	New York	Rome	4,400	22
London	Bombay	4,526	22	New York	San Francisco	2,580	12
London	Cairo	2,218	11	New York	Shanghai	7,353	36
London	Calcutta	4,954	24	New York	Singapore	9,617	45
London	Cape Town	5,975	29	New York	Sydney	10,088	50
London	Istanbul	1,551	7	New York	Tokyo	6,846	34
London	Moscow	1,549	7	Paris	Baghdad	2,385	11
London	Paris	213	1	Paris	Berlin	542	2½
London	Rome	887	4½	Paris	Bombay	4,391	22
London	Shanghai	5,710	28	Paris	Cairo	2,020	10
London	Singapore	6,818	34	Paris	Lisbon	898	4½
London	Sydney	10,590	53	Paris	Rome	650	3
London	Tokyo	6,056	30	Paris	Shanghai	5,752	28
Moscow	Berlin	996	31	Paris	Singapore	6,730	33
Moscow	Istanbul	1,088	5	San Francisco	Sydney	10,500	52
Moscow	London	1,549	7	San Francisco	Baghdad	7,521	37
Moscow	Paris	1,541	7	San Francisco	Berlin	5,744	28
Moscow	Shanghai	4,235	21	San Francisco	Bombay	8,523	42
Moscow	Sydney	8,510	42	San Francisco	Cairo	7,554	37
Moscow	Tokyo	4,650	23	San Francisco	Cape Town	10,340	51
Moscow	Washington	4,883	24	San Francisco	Honolulu	2,407	12
New York	Baghdad	6,066	30	San Francisco	Istanbul	6,700	33
New York	Berlin	3,960	20	San Francisco	London	5,440	27
New York	Bombay	7,875	39	San Francisco	Manila	6,963	34
New York	Cairo	5,701	28	San Francisco	Moscow	5,868	29
New York	Cape Town	7,845	39	San Francisco	New York	2,580	12
New York	Chicago	724	3½	San Francisco	Shanghai	6,132	35
New York	Istanbul	5,009	25	San Francisco	Singapore	8,440	42
New York	London	3,460	17	San Francisco	Sydney	7,517	37
				San Francisco	Tokyo	5,250	26

# INDEX AND PRONUNCIATION

**Key:** This list of key sounds will help you to pronounce the words marked in the index:

āte	ārm	ēvent	īll	hōt	out	cīrcūs
always	ask	ēnd	charīty	cōtain	oil	fūr
cāre	Afrīcā	bushēl	ōld	sōft	use	thēn
hāt	ēve	makēr	ōbey	mōōn	unīte	thīn
dnother	hēre	īce	ōr	fōōt	hūt	pīct'rē
						menū

An asterisk (\*) after the page number indicates a picture.

- A**
- Aachen (ā'kæn), Ger., 120  
 Abbey Theater, 105  
 acorns (ā'kōrnz), 83, 172  
 Acropolis (ā.krōp'ō.līs), 180  
 Aden (ā'd'n), 274  
 resource-product map, 268-269  
 Adriatic Sea (ā'drī.ăt'tīk), 169, 171, 173  
 Aegean Sea (ē.jē' ān), 169, 180  
 Afghanistan (āf.gān'f.stān), 252-253, 270  
 resource-product map, 268-269  
 agriculture. *See* farmers and farming  
 air,  
 picture story, 22  
 airplanes, 5, 61, 196, 273  
 Alaska (ā.lās'kā), 196  
 Albania (āl.bā'n.lā), 173  
 history. *See* Balkan Peninsula  
 resource-product map, 170-171  
 Alexander II, Czar, 187  
 Alkmaar (āl'kmār), Neth., 137  
 Alps Mts. (ālpz), 50, 69, 81, 83, 161-162  
 aluminum (ā.lū'mī.nūm), 83  
 Amboina (ām.boi'nā), 247  
 Amsterdam (ām.stēr.dām), Neth., 136  
 Andersen, Hans Christian, 138  
 Angles (āng'g'z), 85  
 Angora goats (āng.gō'rā), 271  
 animals,  
 farm, 174, 273. *See also* entries for farmers and farming  
 jungle, 240, 251, 266  
 Ankara (āng'kā.rā), Turk., 270, 271  
 Ansgar, St., 144  
 Antakya (ān'tā.kyā'), Turk., 33  
 Anthony of Padua, St., 61  
 Antioch (ān'tī.ōk), Turk., 33  
 Antwerp (ānt'wūrp), Bel., 132-133  
 Apennine Mts. (āp'ē.nīn), 50  
 apples, 68\*
- Arabian Peninsula** (ā.rā'bī.ān), 273-274  
 resource-product map, 268-269  
 Arabs, 33, 34, 272  
 Arch of Triumph, 79\*  
 Arno River (ār'nō), 50  
 Asia (ā'zī), 18-20, 199-274  
 map studies, 8-9, 182-183, 202-203, 252-253. *See also* individual countries  
 Assisi (ā.sē'zē), It., 51  
 Athens (āth'ēnz), Gr., 36, 180  
 Atlantic Ocean (āt.lān'tīk), 4, 25, 61, 69, 80, 85, 100, 104, 142, 143  
 attar of roses, 177  
 Augustine, St., 33, 85  
 aurora borealis (ō.rō'rā bō'rē.ālīs), 142  
 Austria (ōs'trī.ā), 161-163  
 history, 162  
 regional study, 161-162, 163  
 resource-product map, 150-151  
 Austria-Hungary, 161
- B**
- Baghdad (bāg'dād), Irq., 270  
 Baikal (bī.kāl'), Lake, 195  
 Baku (bā.kō'), U.S.S.R., 194  
 balalaika (bāl.āl'ī.kā), 187  
 balance of power, 120  
 Balkan Peninsula (bōl'kān), 34-36, 169-180  
 history, 34-36, 169  
 regional study, 169-180.  
*See also* under individual countries  
 resource-product map, 170-171  
 Balkans, the. *See* Balkan Peninsula  
 ballet, (bāl'ā), 186\*, 187  
 Baltic Sea (bōl'tīk), 118, 138, 155, 196, 197  
 bamboo (bām.bō'), 221-222, 224, 258  
 Bangkok (bāng'kōk), Thai., 244  
 Barbary coast (bār'bā.rī), 33  
 Barcelona (bār'sē.lō'nā), Sp., 61  
 barley, 99, 125
- Basques, the (bāskz), 59  
 Batavia (bāt.ā'vī.ā), U.S.I., 245  
 batik process (bāt'tēk), 266\*  
 Batum (bāt.tōōm'), U.S.S.R., 195  
 Bavaria (bā.vār'tī.ā), 118\*  
 Bedouin (bēd'ōō.in), 270\*  
 beehives, 224  
 beer, 125  
 Beethoven (bē'tō.vēn), 127  
 beet sugar mills, 155  
 Beirut (bē.rōōt'), Leb., 272  
 Belfast (bēl'fāst), N. Ire., 105  
 Belgrade (bēl'grād), Yugo., 171  
 Belgium (bēl'jām), 128-134  
 history, 128-129  
 regional study, 128, 130-134  
 resource-product map, 116-117  
 Benares (bē.nā'rēs), U.I., 258  
 picture story, 256-257  
 Benedict, St., 42-43, 86  
 Benedictines, the (bēn.ē.dī'tūnz), 85-86, 111-112, 119, 162, 165, 169, 172  
 picture story, 42-43  
 Benelux countries (bēn'ē.lūks). *See* Belgium, Netherlands, and Luxembourg  
 Bengal (bēn.gōl'), Bay of, 258  
 Ben Nevis, Mt. (bēn.nē'vīs), 96  
 Beran, Archbishop (bē.rān'), 158  
 Berlin (bēr.līn'), Ger., 127  
 Bernadette, St., 83  
 picture story, 80  
 Berne (bōrn), Swit., 113, 114  
 Bethlehem (bēth'lē.ēm), Isr., 20\*, 273  
 bicycles, 136, 139\*  
 Bilbao (bīl.bā'ō), Sp., 61  
 birds of paradise, 247  
 Birmingham (būr'mīng-hām), Eng., 99  
 Biscay (bīskā'), Bay of, 83  
 "Black Country", 133  
 Black Sea, 34, 169, 174, 175, 185, 196, 271  
 Blue Coast, 81
- Bobola, Fr. Andrew, 197  
 Bohemia (bō.hē'mf.ā), 158  
 Bombay (bōm.bā'), U.I., 258  
 Bonaparte (bō'nā.pārt), Napoleon, 72, 77  
 Boniface, St., 119  
 Bonn (bōn), Ger., 122, 127  
 books, 44, 122  
 Bordeaux (bōr'dō'), Fr., 80  
 Borneo (bōr'nē.ō), 245  
 resource-product map, 268-269  
 Bosphorus Strait (bōs'pō.rūs), 34, 41, 169, 271  
 Bradford (brād'fērd), Eng., 99  
 Brahmins (brā'mānz), 262  
 Brahmaputra River (brā'mā.pōō'trī), 251, 263  
 Bratislava (brā'ty'lsā.vā'), Cz., 157  
 Bremen (brē'mēn), Ger., 127  
 Breslau (brēs'lou), Pol., 155  
 British Empire, 242-243, 245, 266  
 British Malaya (mā.lā'ā), 242-243  
 Brittany (brīt'nī), 73, 75, 83  
 Brno (būr'nō), Cz., 157  
 Bronze Age, 163  
 Bruges, (brōōzh), Bel., 152  
 Brussels (brūs'z), Bel., 128, 129, 132  
 Bucharest (bōō'kā.rēst), Rom., 174  
 Budapest (bōō'dā.pēst'), Hung., 165, 168  
 Buddhists and Buddhism (bōōd'fz'm),  
 in British Malaya, 243  
 in Burma, 244  
 in Ceylon, 266  
 in Indonesia, 247  
 in Japan, 229-230  
 in Thailand, 244  
 in Tibet, 215-216, 217  
 bulbs, 136  
 Bulgaria (būlgār'tī.ā)  
 history. *See* Balkan Peninsula  
 regional study, 175-177  
 resource-product map, 170-171  
 Burma (būr'mā), 243-244  
 resource-product map, 264-265

**C.**  
**Caesar** (sē'zēr), 69, 110, 128  
**Calcutta** (kāl.kū'tā), U.I., 251, 258, 262, 263  
**Calvin, John** (kāl'vīn), 111, 280  
**Cambodia** (kām.bō'dī), 242  
**camels**, 19\*, 217, 263, 270, 271, 274  
**camphor trees** (kām'fēr), 217  
**canals** (kā.nālz'), 50, 128, 135, 136, 137\*, 148, 196, 263  
**Canterbury** (kān'tēr.bēr't), Eng., 85  
**Canton** (kān.tōn'), Chin., 200, 205, 211  
**carabao** (kā.rā'bō) 242\*  
**caravans** (kā.rā.vānz), 206, 217, 251, 263, 271  
**Cardiff** (kā.r'dīf), W., 99  
**carillons** (kā.r'lōnz), 134  
**Carmelite Order** (kā'r.mēl-īt), 56  
**Carpethian Mts.** (kā.r.pē'thī.n), 154  
**Carrara** (kā.rār'ā), It., 52  
**Cashel, Rock of** (kāsh'ēl), 100\*  
**Caspian Sea** (kā.s'pī.n), 194, 196, 270  
**cassava** (kā.sā'vā), 247  
**caste system**, 254  
**catcombs** (kā.t.kōmz), 51  
**cathedrals** (kā.thē'drdlz), 128  
 feature story, 70-71  
**Catherine, Empress**, 186  
**Catholic Action**  
 in Belgium, 129  
 in Italy, 46  
**Catholic Church**, among Gypsies, 164  
 and civilization, 16-17, 20, 42-43, 186  
 picture story, 28-29  
 social teaching of the, 47\*, 54, 72-73, 86, 115, 125, 146, 214  
 in Albania, 173  
 in Arabia, 274  
 in Austria, 162, 163  
 in Balkans, 169. *See also* in individual countries  
 in Belgium, 128, 129  
 in Br. Malaya, 243  
 in Bulgaria, 177  
 in Burma, 244  
 in China, 210-211, 214, 217  
 in Czechoslovakia, 157-158  
 in East Indies, 247  
 in Finland, 148-149  
 in France, 69, 70-71, 73-74, 83  
 in Fr. Indochina, 242  
 in Germany, 118-119, 120  
 in Great Britain, 85-87, 91, 96  
 picture story, 90  
 in Hungary, 165  
 in Iceland, 142  
 in India, 260-261, 261-263

in Ireland, 100, 101, 106\*, 107\*, 108  
 in Italy, 41-45, 47  
 in Japan, 230-231  
 in Korea, 237-238  
 in Lebanon, 33  
 in Mediterranean lands, 26-29, 31, 33-34, 35, 36  
 in Netherlands, 131  
 in Philippines, 240, 241  
 in Poland, 154\*, 155, 156  
 in Portugal, 61, 62  
 in Scandinavia, 144-145  
 in Spain, 55-56, 59, 63, 64-65  
 in Switzerland, 110-111, 112  
 in Thailand, 244  
 in Turkey, 271  
 in U.S.S.R., 185-186, 197  
 in Yugoslavia, 172  
**cattle raising**, 99, 157, 162, 165, 168, 174, 270, 273  
 Ayrshires, 140\*  
 Brahmas, 255  
**cedar trees**, 272  
**Celebes** (sē'fē.bēz), 245  
 resource-product map, 248-249  
**Celts** (sēltz), 100, 128, 162  
**cereals**, 209. *See also* under name of  
**Ceylon** (sē.lōn'), 266  
 resource-product map, 264-265  
**Charlemagne** (shār'lē.mān), 119-120, 162, 169, 172  
**Charlevoix** (shār'lē.rwā'), Bel., 133  
**cheese**, 77, 114, 136, 137\*, 177  
**chestnut trees**, 77, 83  
**China** (chī'nā), 200-217  
 history, 200-202, 210-211  
 regional study, 199-200, 202, 204-210, 212-213, 214-217  
 resource-product map, 212-213  
**China's Sorrow**, 200  
**Chi Rho**, 214  
**chivalry** (shīv'ādl.rī), 86  
**Chopin**, (shō'pān'), 155  
**Christopher, St.**, 34  
**chrysanthemums** (krī.sān'thēmz), 233  
**Chungking** (chōng'king'), Chin., 205  
**cinchona tree** (sīn.kō'nā), 247  
**cinnamon**, 266  
**cisterns** (sīs'tērnz), 273, 274  
**citrus fruits**, 26, 61, 273  
**city life**,  
 in China, 204  
 in Germany, 123-124  
 in Great Britain, 91-93  
 in India, 256-257  
**civilization** (sīv'ī.lī.zā'shūn), Chinese, 200  
 Gypsies and, 163-164  
 history of, 11-36. *See also* Catholic Church and St. Benedict's influence on, picture story, 42-43

**clay**, 157  
**climate**,  
 of Afghanistan, 270  
 of Arabian Peninsula, 273, 274  
 of Belgium, 128  
 of British Malaya, 242, 243  
 of China, 199, 215, 217  
 of Czechoslovakia, 157  
 of Denmark, 140  
 of Finland, 148  
 of France, 69, 81, 83  
 of Germany, 118  
 of Great Britain, 85, 96, 99  
 of Hungary, 168  
 of Iceland, 140, 142  
 of India, 251, 255  
 of Indonesia, 245  
 of Iran, 270  
 of Iraq, 270  
 of Ireland, 104  
 of Israel, 273  
 of Italy, 40, 52  
 of Japan, 218  
 of Java, 247  
 of Korea, 235  
 of Lebanon, 272  
 of Mediterranean lands, 25-26  
 of Norway, 138, 140  
 of Pakistan, 263  
 of Philippines, 240  
 of Poland, 154  
 of Romania, 174  
 of Spain, 55, 61  
 of Sweden, 138, 140, 142  
 of Switzerland, 110  
 of U.S.S.R., 194, 196  
 of Yugoslavia, 171  
**clocks**, 114\*  
**clothes**. *See* dress, people, and customs  
**cloves**, 266  
**coal**,  
 in Belgium, 133  
 in China, 205  
 in Czechoslovakia, 157  
 in France, 80, 83  
 in Great Britain, 99  
 in Korea, 235  
 in Poland, 155  
 in Spain, 61  
 in U.S.S.R., 194  
*See also* resource-product maps  
**coaling station**, 243, 274  
**coal tar**, 127  
**Cobb**, (kōv), Ire., 105  
**coconut** (kō'kō.nūt), 241, 243, 258, 266  
**cod**, 99. *See also* product maps  
**coffee**, 266, 274  
**Coimbra** (kō.lm'brā), Port., 67\*  
**coke**, 80, 127  
**collective farms**, 175  
 picture story, 190-191  
**Cologne** (kō.lōn'), Ger., 127  
**Colombo** (kō.lōm'bō), Cey., 266  
**Colonies, Dutch**, 136-137  
**colored glass**, 157

**Colosseum** (kō'lō.sē'ūm), 41, 51  
**Columbanus, St.**, 110  
**Columbus** (kō.lūm'būs), Christopher, 51, 55  
**Communists and Communism** (kōm'ū.nīz'm), 35-36, 46, 57, 148, 154, 156, 158, 159, 165, 169, 172, 173, 175, 178-180, 187, 188, 211, 216, 217  
 feature stories, 152-153, 166-167, 190-191  
**compass**, 200  
**compost** (kōm'pōst), 114-115, 223  
**Confucius** (kōn.fū'shī.ūs), 201, 247, 248  
**conservation**, 224. *See also* soil improvement and foresters and forestry  
**Constantine** (kōn'stān.tīn), 41, 43\*  
**Constantinople** (kōn'stān.tīn.pō'l), Turk., 41, 185, 186  
**coolies**, 204  
**co-operatives** (kō.ōp'ēr.ā'tīvz)  
 history, in Rochdale, 98\*, 143  
 in Denmark, 139  
 in Finland, 148, 152  
 in India, 262  
 in Ireland, 107\*, 108  
 in Sweden, 143  
**Copenhagen** (kō'pēn.hā'gēn), Den., 138, 139\*  
**copra** (kōp'rā), 241, 243  
**Corfu I.** (kōr.fō'), 179\*  
**Cork** (kōrk), Ire., 105, 152  
**cork oak**, 60\*, 61, 77  
**corn**, 68\*, 157, 168, 174, 273  
**corporate state** (kōr'pō.rī.tīv), 66  
**Corsica I.** (kōr.sī.kā), Sp., 61  
**Coruna** (kō.rūn'ā), 77, 61  
**Cossacks** (kōs'āks), 187  
**cottage industries**,  
 in India, 258  
 in Ireland, 108  
 in Japan, 223  
**cotton**, 194, 205, 255  
**cowboys**, 168, 217  
**cows**, 107\*, 136, 158. *See also* cattle raising  
**crafts**, Indian, 258  
**Creation**, 6, 7  
**credit unions**, 139  
**Crete** (krēt'), 180  
**cricket**, 87\*  
**Croatia** (krō.ā'shā'), 172  
**crsps**. *See* farmers and farming and individual names of  
**Crusades** (krō.sād's), 273  
**culture**, 159, 160, 163-164, 180, 200, 237, 273  
*See also* civilization, customs, and people  
**Curie, Madame** (kā'rē'), 155  
**currants** (kūr'ānts), 178, 180



**customs**,  
 British, 87\*, 90, 91, 96  
 Chinese, 204, 209-210, 217  
 Czech, 158-159  
 Filipino, 240-241  
 Finnish, 149, 152  
 French, 75, 77\*  
 German, 120, 123\*, 124\*  
 281  
 Hungarian, 168  
 Indian, 254, 255, 258, 260,  
 261, 262  
 Italian, 48-49  
 Japanese, 222-223, 229\*  
 Korean, 236-237  
 peasant, 159, 176, 177  
 Polish, 155  
 Russian, 186, 187  
 Spanish,  
 picture story, 58  
 Thai, 244  
 Tibetan, 215\*  
 Yugoslavian, 112  
*See also culture and people*  
**Cyrl, St.**, 169  
**Czechoslovakia** (chěk'ò.slo-  
 vá'k.lá),  
 history, 157-159  
 regional study, 157, 158-  
 159  
 resource-product map,  
 151  
**Czestochowa, Pol.** (chén'  
 stó.k'ò.vá), 154\*, 164  
**D**  
**Dacia** (dä'shl.á), 174  
**dairy farms and products**,  
 96, 149\*, 255\*, 270  
**Dalmatia** (dál'má'shl.á), 172  
**Damascus** (dä.más'kús),  
 Syr., 33, 272  
**Danube delta**, (dän'úb),  
 174, 175  
**Danube River**, 157, 161,  
 162, 168, 169, 171, 174,  
 175  
**Danube Valley**, 162, 169,  
 174, 175  
**Danubian countries**, 161-  
 180  
**Danzig** (dän'slg; -zlg), Pol.,  
 155  
**Dardanelles, Strait of** (där'  
 dá.ně'z'), 169, 271  
**Deccan Plateau** (dék'án),  
 251  
**decimation** (dēs.i.má'shún),  
 110, 189  
**Deift** (dēift), Neth., 136  
**deftware**, 136  
**Delhi** (dēfī), U.I., 258  
**delta plains**, 242  
**democracy** (dē.mók'rā.sī),  
 113, 122, 152, 204  
**Denmark** (dēn'märk), 138-  
 145  
 history, 144-145  
 regional study, 138-141  
 resource-product map,  
 140-141  
**Dermot** (dīr'mfd), 100  
**desert** (dēs'ert), 273  
**diamonds** (dī.dā.mündz),  
 cutting and polishing of  
 132-133, 136

**dikes**, 135  
**ditches**, 270  
**doldrums** (döl'drūmz), 22  
**Dominic, St.**, 55  
**donkeys**, 270  
**Don River** (dōn), 187  
**Dover, Strait of** (dō'vēr),  
 85, 99  
**dress**,  
 Chinese 204  
 Filipino, 240\*, 241  
 Gypsy, 164  
 Japanese, 228, 229\*, 231  
 Korean, 226-237  
 peasant, 159, 160, 172  
**Dublin** (dūb'lín), Ire., 102\*,  
 105  
**dyes**, 127, 205  
**E**  
**earthquakes**, 218, 231, 245  
**Eastern Church**, 169  
**East Indies**, 245-249. *See*  
*also names of islands*  
*and United States of*  
*Indonesia.*  
**Ebro River** (ē'brō), 61  
**Egypt** (ē'jpt), 31-32  
**Eiffel Tower**, 79\*  
**Einsiedeln** (īn'zē'dēln),  
 111-112, 165  
**Elbe River** (ēl'bē), 118, 157  
**electric power**, 81, 83, 96,  
 142, 148, 157, 162, 219.  
*See also hydroelectric*  
*power*  
**elephant**, 244, 251\*, 266  
**emigrants** (ēm'f.grānts),  
 100, 101, 103, 127, 149,  
 153\*, 156  
**England** (īng'glānd). *See*  
*Great Britain*  
**English Channel**, 81, 85  
**English language**, 97  
**equatorial calms, belt of**, 22  
**Ericson, Leif** (ēr'īk.sūn),  
 144  
**erosion** (ēr'ō.shūn), 178  
**Essen** (ēs'n), Ger., 127  
**Estonia** (ēs'tō'nī.á), 197  
 resource product map,  
 194-195  
**estuaries** (ēs't'ō'ēz), 85\*,  
 97, 99  
**Etna** (ēt'nā) Mt., 52  
**Euphrates River** (ū'frā'tēz),  
 270  
**Eurasia** (ūr.ā'shū), 6-7  
**Europe** (ūr'ūp), 14-17, 38-  
 197  
 map studies, 8, 9, 28-29,  
 38-39, 182-183. *See*  
*also individual coun-*  
*tries*  
**Everest** (ēv'ēr.ēst), Mt.,  
 212\*, 251  
**evergreen trees**, 157  
**exports**. *See* resource-pro-  
 duct maps  
**F**  
**factories**. *See* manufactur-  
 ing

**families and family life**, 48-  
 49, 91-93, 106-107, 123-  
 124, 130-131, 160, 172,  
 225-227. *See also cus-*  
*tom, houses, and people*  
**famine** (fām'īn), 197, 254  
**Far East**, 204, 205, 267  
**farmers and farming**,  
 peasant, feature story,  
 159-160  
 in Afghanistan, 270  
 in Albania, 171, 173  
 in Arabia, 274  
 in Austria, 162, 163  
 in Belgium, 128  
 picture story, 130-131  
 in Bulgaria, 171, 176, 177  
 in Burma, 243  
 in China, 18\*, 205, 208-  
 209, 210, 217  
 in Crete, 180  
 in Czechoslovakia, 157  
 in Denmark, 139, 141  
 in Finland, 141, 149  
 in France, 75-77, 80, 81  
 picture story, 76  
 in Germany, 125  
 in Great Britain, 96, 99  
 in Greece, 171, 177-178  
 in Hungary, 168  
 in Iceland, 141, 142  
 in India, 251, 254-255  
 in Iran, 270  
 in Ireland, 102\*, 105  
 picture story, 106-107  
 in Israel, 272, 273  
 in Italy, 48\*, 49\*, 51, 52  
 in Japan, 219-224, 227\*  
 in Korea, 235  
 in Lebanon, 272  
 in Luxembourg, 137  
 in Norway, 138, 141  
 in Philippines, 241  
 in Poland, 154  
 in Portugal, 61  
 in Romania, 171, 174, 175  
 in Siberia, 196  
 in Spain, 61  
 in Sweden, 138, 141  
 in Switzerland, 114  
 in Thailand, 244  
 in Transjordan, 273  
 in U.S.S.R., 194, 195, 196,  
 197  
 picture story, 190-191  
 in Viet-Nam, 242  
 in Yugoslavia, 171, 172  
**Fatima** (fā'tī.mā), Our Lady  
 of, picture story, 64-65  
**Ferdinand, King**, 55  
**fertilizer**. *See* compost  
**fez** (fēz), 271  
**figs**, 178, 271  
**Finland** (fīn'lānd), 148-152  
 history, 148-149  
 regional study, 148, 149-  
 152  
 resource-product map,  
 150-151  
**fjords** (fyōrdz), 144  
**fishermen and fishing**,  
 in France, 83  
 in Great Britain, 99  
 in Iceland, 141, 142

in Italy, 52  
 in Japan, 224  
 in Korea, 235  
 in Netherlands, 136\*  
 in Norway, 141, 143, 144  
 in Philippines, 240  
 in Portugal, 61, 62\*  
 in Sicily, 52  
 in U.S.S.R., 195  
**Fiume** (fyō'mā), Yugo.,  
 173  
**Flanders** (flān'dērs), 128,  
 132  
 picture story, 130-131  
**flax**,  
 in Belgium, 128, 130\*,  
 132  
 in Ireland, 105  
 in U.S.S.R., 194  
**Flemings**, 128  
**flood plains**, 263  
**Florence** (flōr'ēns), It., 50  
**flour**, 61, 155, 168, 175, 180  
**flowers**, 81, 114\*, 133, 233  
**food**, 48\*, 49\*, 75, 124\*,  
 217, 240, 241, 254  
**foreign trade**, 176  
**foresters and forestry**, 83,  
 126, 148, 155, 157, 162,  
 163, 171, 172, 195, 205,  
 208, 235, 244, 251. *See*  
*also lumber and lum-*  
*bering.*  
**Formosa** (fōr.mō'sā), 217,  
 219  
**fox hunting**, 105  
**France** (frāns), 69-83  
 history, 69-74  
 regional study, 69, 74-83  
 resource-product map,  
 82-83  
**Franciscan Order** (frān.sīs'  
 kōn), 51  
**Francis de Sales, St.**, 83,  
 111  
**Francis of Assisi, St.**, 51  
**Francis Xavier, St.**, 59, 211,  
 230, 231, 247  
**French colonies**, 80, 81  
**French Indochina** (īn'dō-  
 chí'nā), 242  
**resource-product map**,  
 248-249  
**Freiburg** (frē'bōör), Swit.,  
 114\*, 115  
**fruits**, 61, 157, 178, 223, 244  
**fuel**, 107\*, 155, 255  
**Fujisan** (fōō.jē.sān), 233  
**Fujiyama, Mt.** (fōō'jī.yā'  
 mā), 233  
**fur trappers**, 196  
**Fyn** (fūn), 138  
**G**  
**Galilee, Sea of** (gāl'ī.lē), 20\*  
**Gall, St.**, 110  
**Gama, Vasco da** (dā.gā'mā),  
 250  
**Gandhi, Mohandas** (gān'dē),  
 260  
**Ganges River** (gān'jēz), 251,  
 258, 263  
**gardens, Japanese**, 231  
**Garonne River** (gā.rōn'), 80  
**Gaul** (gōl), 69  
**Gautama** (gō'tā.mā), 215,  
 266

Gdynia (gá.dín'tá), Pol., 155  
 geese, 81\*, 158  
 Geneva (jé.né.vá), Swit., 111  
 Genoa (jén'ó.a), It., 50-51  
 Germany (júr'má.ní), 116-127  
   history, 118-125  
   regional study, 118, 125-127  
   resource-product map, 116-117  
 geysers (gí'zéz), 142, 218  
 Ghent (gént), Bel., 132, 133  
 Gibraltar (jít.bró'tér), 61  
 Glastonbury (glás'tún-bér't), Eng., 98  
 Goa (gó'á), U.I., 260-261  
 goats, 77, 186, 273  
 Gobi Desert (gó'bé), 199  
 Godin, Father (gó'dán'), 74  
 gold,  
   in Korea, 235  
   in Philippines, 241  
   in U.S.S.R., 195  
 goldfish, 228  
 gondolas (gón'dó.lá), 50  
 Göta Canal (yó'tá), 143  
 Göteborg (yó'té.bór'y'), Swed., 143  
 government, 87, 113  
 Grail, the, 137  
 grain. *See* names of granite, 99  
 grapes,  
   in France, 75-76, 83  
   in Greece, 178  
   in Hungary, 168  
   in Israel, 273  
   in Italy, 52  
   in Portugal, 61, 68\*  
   in Spain, 61  
 graphite (gráf'ít), 266  
 grasslands, 168  
 Great Britain (brít'n), 85-99  
   history, 85-90  
   regional study, 90-99  
   resource-product map, 98-99  
 Great Lowland Plain, 83  
 Great Wall, 200  
 Greece (grés), 177-180  
   history, 178. *See also* Balkan Peninsula  
   regional study, 177-180  
 Greek Orthodox Church, 36, 169, 180  
 Grenoble (gré.nó'b'l), Fr., 81  
 growing season, 148  
 Guadaluquivir River (gwó'd'í.kwiv'ér), 61  
 guilds, 66, 115, 128, 129, 204  
 Gulf of Finland, 148, 195, 196  
 Gutenberg, Johann (gó'f't'n.búrg), 122, 200  
 Gypsies (jíp'stíz),  
   feature study, 163-164

## H

haddock, 99

Hague, The (hág), Neth., 136  
 Haifa (há'fá), Isr. 270, 273  
 Half Moon, the, 136  
 halibut, 224  
 Hamburg (hám'búrg), Ger., 127  
 Hangchow (háng'chou'), Chin., 205  
 Hankow (hán'kou'), Chin., 200  
 Hanoi (há.noí'), V.N., 242  
 hardware, 157  
 hardwood trees, 157, 205.  
   *See also* forests and forestry  
 Harmeel (há'r'mél'), 72-73  
 Helsinki (hél'síng.kí), Fin., 148  
 hemp, Manila, 241  
 hens, 255  
 herdsmen,  
   civilization of, 12-13. *See also* sheep raising  
 hermits, 111-112  
 herring, 99, 224  
 Himalaya Mts. (hí.má'í-dá-yá), 18, 19\*, 250-251  
 Hindus, 247, 254, 255, 260  
 Hitler (hít'lér), 120-121  
 Holland. *See* Netherlands  
 Holy Land, 272-273  
 Holy Roman Empire, 162, 172  
 home life, German, 120.  
   *See also* peasants, customs, houses, and families and family life  
 Homer (hóm'ér), 180  
 Hong Kong (hóng'kóng'), 205  
 hops, 125  
 horse latitudes, 22, 273  
 horses, 99, 102\*, 105, 165, 174, 271  
 hot springs, 218  
 houseboats, Chinese, 199  
 houses, 105\*, 124\*, 145, 184, 199, 200, 217, 218, 222-223, 236, 237\*  
 Hull (hú'l), Eng., 99  
 humus (hú'mús), 114  
 Hungary (húng'gá.rí), 165-168  
   history, 165  
   regional study, 166-168  
   resource-product map, 150-151  
 Huns, 165  
 hunters, civilization of, 11.  
   *See also* fur trappers  
 Hwang River (hwáng), 199-200  
 Hyacinth, St., 187  
 hydroelectric power, 50, 52, 140, 155, 242

## I

Iberian Peninsula (Íbér'Íá.n), 61. *See also* Spain and Portugal  
 Ibn Saud, King (íb'n sáw-ód'), 274  
 Ice Age, 118

icebreakers, 195, 196  
 Iceland (Ís'lánd), 140-142  
 Ignatius Loyola, St., 55  
 imports, 80, 99.  
 India (Ín'dí.á), 250-265  
   history, 250, 260-263  
   regional study, 250-260, 261, 262  
   resource-product map, 264, 265  
 Indian Ocean, 251, 266  
 Indies, the (Ín'dí.á), 250  
 indigo plant, 205  
 Indochina. *See* French Indochina  
 Indonesia (Ín'dó.né'zhá), United States of, 245-249  
   resource-product map, 248-249  
 Indus River (Ín'dús), 263  
 Industrial Revolution, 89-90  
   industry,  
     feature study, 54. *See also* under various names of, as manufacturing, printing, etc., also cottage industries  
 industry councils, 73  
 Innsbruck (Ínz'bróók), Aust., 163  
 Interlaken (Ín'tér.lá'kén), Swit., 114\*  
 inventions, 91, 200  
 Inverness (Ín'ver.nés'), Scot., 97\*  
 Ionian Sea (Íón'Íá.n), 169  
 Iran (Í.rán'), 270  
   resource-product map, 268-269  
 Iraq (Í.rák'), 30, 270  
   resource-product map, 268-269  
 Ireland (Ír'lánd), history, 100-102  
   regional study, 102-108  
   resource-product map, 104-105  
 Irish Sea, 100  
 Irkutsk (Ír.kóótsk'), U.S.S.R., 195  
 iron curtain, 156, 165, 173, 177, 211  
   feature study, 152-153  
 iron and steel, 61, 80, 127, 133, 137, 155, 157, 195, 219, 224, 235  
 Irrawaddy River (Ír'á-wó'd'í), 243  
 Irrawaddy Valley, 243  
 irrigation (Ír'gá'ghín), 27, 30, 32, 61, 194, 243, 247, 263, 270, 272-273, 274  
 Isabella, Queen (Íz'á.bél'á), 55  
 Isadore, St., 160  
 Israel (Íz'rí.á), 33, 272-273  
   resource-product map, 268-269  
 Istanbul (Ís'tán.búól'), Turk., 171, 270, 271.  
   *See also* Constantinople, 33

Italy (Ít'Íl), 40-54, 173  
   history, 40-46, 50, 51  
   regional study, 46-54  
   resource-product map, 52-53  
 Ivan, the Terrible, Czar, (é.vá'), 186  
 ivory (Ív'ó.rí), 258  
 Izmir (Íz.mír'), Turk., 271  
 J  
 Jaffa (jáf'á), Isr., 273  
 Jakarta (yá.kár'tá), U.S.I., 245  
 jam, strawberry, 220  
 James, St., 59  
 Japan (jáp.pán'), 218-235  
   history, 219  
   regional study, 218, 219-235  
   resource-product map, 234-235  
 Japanese Empire, 219  
 Jaricot, Pauline (zhár'í.có), 83  
 Java (já'vá), 245-249  
   product map, 248-249  
 Jefferson, Thomas, 180  
 Jerome, St., 172  
 Jerusalem (jér.ró'sá.lém), Pal., 273  
 Jesuits (jéz'ú.Íts), 56, 187, 229, 237, 270\*  
 jewelry, 258  
 Jews, 128, 165, 272  
 Joan of Arc, St., 83  
 John, King, 87  
 John Bosco, St., 50  
 John de Britto, St., 261-262  
 jungles, 240, 242, 266  
 jute (jóót), 263  
 K  
 Kabul (ká'búól), Afghan., 263, 270  
 Kandy (ká'n'dí), Cey., 266  
 kang (káng), 204, 236  
 kapok (ká'pók), 247  
 Karachi (ká.rá'chí), Pak., 263  
 Karoly Varj (ká'r.ló.ví vá'rí), Cz., 157  
 Ketteler, Bishop Wm. von., 125  
 Khyber Pass (kí'fér), 263  
 Kiel Canal (kél), 118  
 Kiev (kí'v'í), U.S.S.R., 185  
 kimonos (kí.mó'nó), 231  
 "kiri" tree, 222  
 Kjolén Mts. (chó'lén), 138  
 Kobe (kó'bé), Jap., 228  
 Korea (kó.ré'á), 234-238  
   history, 235-236  
   regional study, 235, 236-238  
   resource-product map, 234-235  
 Krakow (krá'kóóf), Pol., 154, 155  
 Kulaks (kóó.láks'), 187, 188, 190  
 Kyoto (kyó'tó), Jap., 228  
 L  
 labor, 47\*, 54. *See also* people (of various countries) and industry

labor unions, 108, 115. *See also* guilds

lace,

in Belgium, 132

in Ireland, 105, 106\*

ladder ware (lák'ér), 231

lagoons (lá.góonz'), 261

lakes, 104, 105, 148, 195, 261

lanterns (lán'térnz), 231

Laos (lá'ós), Fr. Ind., 242

Laotze (lou'dzú), 210

Lapland (láp'lánd), 145

Lapps, 145

lard, 270

Larkin, Jim (lár'kín), 108

latex (lá'téks), 243, 266\*

Latium (lá'shí.úm), 41

Latvia (lá'tví.á), 197

Lebanon (lé'bán.nún), 33, 272

Lebanon Mts., 272

Leeds (lédz), Eng., 99

Le Havre (lé á'vr'), Fr., 80

Leningrad (lén'ín.grád),

U.S.S.R., 195, 196, 197

Lepanto (lé.pán'tó), Battle

of, 273

lepers, 244

Lhasa (lá'sá), Tibet, 215,

216

Libya (lí'bý.á), 32-33

liege (lé.áh), Bel., 133

Lievens, Fr., 262, 263

Lille (lí), Fr., 80

Limerick (lí'mér.ík), Ire.,

105

limestone, 99

Lincoln, President (líng'

kún), 149, 189

Lindberg (línd'búrg), 5

linen industry,

in Belgium, 132

in Ireland, 105\*

Lisbon (líz'bún), Port., 61

literature, 159, 200-201, 237

English,

feature story, 97

Lithuania (líth'ú.á'ní.á), 197

resource-product map,

194-195

Liverpool (lí'vr.póól),

Eng., 91

Lódz (lój), Pol., 155

Lofoten (ló'fó'tín), Nor.,

144\*

log cabins, 149

London (lún'dún), Eng.,

picture story, 94-95

Lorraine (ló.rán'), 83

Louis, St., 69

Lourdes (lóord)

picture story, 80

Louvain (ló'ván'), Bel.,

133

Louvre Art Gallery, 79\*

lowlands, coastal, 242

Lucerne (lú.súrn'), Swit.,

112

lumber and lumbering, 177,

83, 140, 144, 148, 157,

171, 205, 272. *See also*

foresters and forestry

Luther, Martin (lí'thér),

111, 145

Lutherans, 142, 177. *See also* Protestants

Luxembourg (lúk'sém-búrg), 137

resource-product map,

116-117

Luzon (loo.zón'), 240

Lyons (lí'ón'), Fr., 81

Lys River (lés), 132

## M

MacArthur, Gen. (mák.ár'thér), 219, 227

Macedonia (mák'sé.dó'ní.á), 172

machinery (mák.shén'ér.í), 157, 171. *See also* manufacturing

Madras (mád'rás), U.I., 258

Madrid (mád'rid'), Sp., 61

Magellan (mák.jel'án), 240

Magna Carta (mág'ná kár'tá), 87

Magnitogorsk (mág.né'tó-górsk'), U.S.S.R., 195

Main River (mán), 122

Mainz (mínz), 122

Malabar Coast (mál'á.bár), 261

Malaya, British, 242-243

resource-product map,

248-249

Malay Peninsula (mál'á'), 242

Manchester (mán'chés'tér),

Eng., 99

Manchuria (mán.chóo'f.á), 200, 209

manganese (máng'gá.nés), 194, 258

Manila (mán'ní.á), P.I., 242

Manila Bay, 242

manufacturing (mán'ú.fák'tú.ríng),

Austria, 162

in Belgium, 132-133

in Bulgaria, 175

in China, 205

in Czechoslovakia, 157

in France, 80-81, 83

in Germany, 123\*, 124\*,

126, 127

in Great Britain, 89-90,

99

in Hungary, 168

in India, 258

in Ireland, 105

in Israel, 272

Italy, 59

in Japan, 219, 224

in Netherlands, 136

in Norway, 144

in Poland, 154, 155, 157

in Singapore, 243

in Spain, 61

in Turkey, 271

in U.S.S.R., 189-190, 195.

*See also* individual re-

source-product maps

maps,

city,

Buenos Aires, 256-257

London, 94-95

Paris, 78-79

Vatican City, 42-43

physical - political,

Eurasia, 182-183

Europe, 38-39

Southeastern Asia, 202-

203

Southwestern Asia, 252-

253

resource-product,

Balkans, 170-171

China, Mongolia, and

Tibet, 212-213

France, 82-83

Great Britain, 98-99

Iberian Peninsula, 60-

61

India, Pakistan, and

Ceylon, 264-265

Ireland, 104-105

Italy, 52-53

Japan and Korea, 234-

235

Middle Europe, 150-151

Scandinavia, 140-141

Switzerland, Germany,

and Benelux coun-

tries, 116-117

Southeastern Asia, 248-

249

Southwestern Asia, 268-

269

Soviet Union, 194-195

special,

Eurasian land usage,

8-9

Mediterranean lands,

28-29

Moslem world, 268

Russian Bear, 184

size of Asia, 20

size of Europe, 16

marble, 52, 180

Marconi (már.kó'né), 47

Margaret Mary, St., 83

Mark, St., 31

market day, 177

Marmara, Sea of (már'má-rá), 271

Marseille (már.sá), Fr. 80

Marx, Karl (márks), 187

mate, 258

Maurice, St., 110, 189

meat-packing plants, 155

Mecca (mek'á), S.A., 274

medicine, Chinese, 201

Medina (méd'éná), S.A.,

274

Mediterranean climate

(méd'té.rá'né.án), 25

26, 52, 61, 177, 273

Mediterranean crops, 26,

61, 177, 180, 271, 273.

*See also* farmers and

farming (in countries on

the Mediterranean)

Mediterranean lands, 25-

36, 179. *See also* Italy,

Spain, Portugal, France,

Balkan countries, Tur-

key, Israel, Lebanon,

and Syria

Mediterranean Sea, 18, 25-

26, 35\*, 45, 52, 61, 81,

82, 169, 180, 271, 272,

273

picture story, 28-29

Meinrad, St., 111

melons, 240, 270

Mercator, Gerardus (múr-ká'tér), 132

merchants and trade, 99,

155, 157, 162, 175, 180,

242, 250, 274

Mersey River (múr'sí), 91

Mesopotamia (més'ó.pó-tá'mí.á), 30, 178, 270

metals, 163

Methodius, St., 169

Milan (míl.án'), I., 50

millet (míl'et), 209

Mindanao (mín'dá.ná'ó),

240

Mindszenty, Cardinal

(mínd'sén.tí), 165

minerals, 61, 80, 83, 98-99,

127, 133, 140-141, 154,

155, 171, 195, 205, 217,

241-242, 258, 266

miners and mining,

in Belgium, 133

in China, 205, 217

in France, 80, 83

in Germany, 127

in Great Britain, 13,

98-99

in Poland, 154, 155

in Spain, 61

in Sweden, 140-141

in U.S.S.R., 194, 195

in Yugoslavia, 171

miracles, 64-65, 80, 261

Miranda de Ebro (mí.rán'dá thá á'vró), Sp., 61

missions,

feature story, 214

Mocha (mó'kó), Yem., 274

moihar (mó'hár), 217

Mohammed (mó.hám'éd),

26-27, 274

Mongolia (món.gó'lyá), 217,

resource-product map,

212-213

monsoon climate, 251

monsoons (món.sóonz'),

199, 251, 263

Monte Cassino (món'té ká-sé'no),

feature story, 42-43

Montenegro (món'té.ne'gró), 172

Moravia (mó.rá.ví.á), 158

Moravska Ostrava (mó'ráf-ská ó'strá vá), Cz., 157

Moray River (múr'f), 97

Moscardo, Luis, 57\*

Moscow (mós'kou),

U.S.S.R., 175, 195, 196,

197

Moslems (mós'lémz), 26-

27, 31-32, 33-35, 55,

59, 169, 172, 173, 240,

247, 260, 263, 270, 271,

273, 274

mosques (mós'ks), 31-32, 33,

260

Mosul (mó.só'ól'), I., 270

mountaineers (moun'tí-nérx), 172, 173

mountains, 16\*

Alps, 50, 69, 81, 83, 161-162

Apennine, 50

Carpathian, 154

Himalayas, 215\*, 250-251

Kjolen, 138  
 Lebanon, 272  
 Pennine, 85, 89  
 Pyrenees, 61  
 Sudeten, 154  
 Urals, 194, 195  
**Mozart** (mō'zärt), 163  
**mulberry trees**,  
 in France, 81  
 in Greece, 178  
 in Spain, 61  
**Murmansk** (mōōr.mānsk'),  
 U.S.S.R., 196  
**music**,  
 folk, 160  
 in Germany, feature  
 story, 126  
 in Italy, 47  
 in Russia, 187  
 in Wales, 96  
**Mussolini** (mōōs'sō.lē'nē),  
 46  
**N**  
**Nagasaki** (nā'gā.sā'kē),  
 Jap., 231  
**Nagpur** (nā'g'pūr), U.I.,  
 262  
**Nanking** (nā'n'king'), Chin.,  
 205  
**Naples** (nā'p'le), It., 40\*, 51  
**Nazis** (nā'tsē), 121  
**Near East**, 27, 33-34, 267-  
 274  
**Nepal** (nē'pāl'), 251  
**Netherlands** (nēth'ēr-  
 lāndz),  
 history, 137  
 regional study, 135-137  
 resource-product map,  
 116-117  
**Newcastle** (nū'kās'l), Eng.,  
 99  
**New Delhi** (dē'lī'), U.I., 258  
**New Guinea** (gīn'ī), 245  
 resource-product map,  
 248-249  
**Nicholas, Czar**, 187-188  
**Nicholas, St.**, 34  
**Nicholas of Flue, St.**, 112  
**Nile River** (nīl), 31  
**Nile Valley**, 31  
**Nippon** (nī'pōn'), 218  
**Nobel** (nō'bēl'), 143  
 prize, 228  
**Nobili, Fr. Robert de**, 262  
**Noguchi, Doctor** (nō.gō'chī), 228  
**nomads** (nō'mādz), 12, 145,  
 200, 217, 263, 271\*  
*See also* Gypsies  
**Normandy** (nōr'mān.dī), 69,  
 144  
**Normans**, 86  
**Norsemen** (nōrs'mēn), 69,  
 138, 144  
**North China**, 200  
**Northern Ireland**, 99, 105  
 resource-product map,  
 104-105  
**North German Plain**, 118  
**North Sea**, 85, 118  
 Ship Canal, 136  
**Norway** (nōr'wā),  
 history, 144-145  
 regional study, 138, 141,  
 143-144

resource-product map,  
 140-141  
**Notre Dame Cathedral**, 70,  
 78\*

## O

**oak trees**, 83, 172  
**oases**, 274  
**oats**, 97  
**Oberammergau** (ō'bēr.ām'ēr.gou), Ger., 118\*  
**oceans**, 16  
 feature stories, 4, 21  
 occupations. *See* individual  
 names of  
**Oder River** (ō'dēr), 154, 155  
**oil fields**, 273. *See also*  
 petroleum  
**Olga, Princess**, 185  
**olives and olive oil**, 52, 61,  
 80, 169, 178, 273  
**Omsk** (ōm'sk), U.S.S.R., 195  
**onions**, 68\*, 177  
**opera** (ō'p'ēr.ā), 47, 126, 187  
**Oporto** (ō.pōr'tō), Port., 61  
**Orient** (ōr'ēnt), 241, 242  
**oriental rugs**, 32, 267\*  
**Osaka** (ō'sā.kā), Jap., 228  
**Oslo** (ō'slō), Nor., 144  
**oxen**, 174  
**oysters**, 266

## P

**Pacific Ocean**, 196, 240  
**Paderewski** (pā'dēr.ēf'skē),  
 155  
**Pakistan** (pāk'tān'), 263  
 resource-product map,  
 264-265  
**Palestine** (pāl'ēs.tīn), 33,  
 272  
 resource-product map,  
 268-269  
**Palos** (pāl'ōs), Sp., 55  
**Pannonia** (pā.nō'nī.ā), 172  
 paper, 258  
**parasols, Japanese** (pār'ā-  
 sōlz'), 231  
**Paris** (pār'is), 83  
 Patrick, St., 100  
 picture story, 78-79  
**Paul, St.**, 25, 33, 36, 41  
**peanuts**, 209, 247  
**pearl fishing**, 266  
**peasants** (pē'sānts), 11-12,  
 18\*, 52, 56, 60\*, 61,  
 75, 76, 77\*, 81, 114\*,  
 149, 152, 155, 159, 163,  
 168, 171, 172, 173\*,  
 175, 176, 177, 178, 186,  
 187. *See also* people  
 feature story, 159-160  
**peat** (pēt), 104, 194  
**peddlers**, 204, 229\*  
**Peiping** (bē'pīng'), Chin.,  
 205, 211  
**Peking**. *See* Peiping  
**peninsula, Indian**, 251  
**Pennine Mts.** (pē'nīn), 85,  
 90  
**people**,  
 of Afghanistan, 270  
 of Albania, 173  
 of Asia, 10\*, 12\*, 18\*,  
 19\*, 20\*, 24\*, 28\*, 29\*,  
 32. *See also* by coun-  
 try

of Austria, 162, 163  
 of Balkans, 169. *See also*  
 individual countries  
 of Belgium, 128, 130\*,  
 131\*, 133  
 of Bulgaria, 176, 177  
 of Burma, 244  
 of Ceylon, 266\*  
 of China, 18\*, 199, 201\*,  
 204, 205, 208, 209-210,  
 217  
 of Czechoslovakia, 157,  
 158-159  
 of Denmark, 138, 139,  
 144  
 of Europe, 10\*, 13\*, 16\*,  
 17\*, 28\*, 29\*. *See also*  
 by country  
 of Finland, 149, 152  
 of France, 13\*, 69, 73-74,  
 76\*, 77\*, 78\*, 79\*  
 of Germany, 13\*, 118-  
 120, 123-124  
 of Great Britain, 85, 87\*,  
 90-91, 92\*, 93\*, 96, 97\*,  
 99  
 of Greece, 35-36, 177-178,  
 180  
 of Hungary, 165, 168  
 of Iceland, 142  
 of India, 12\*, 254, 255,  
 258, 259, 261  
 of Indonesia, 12\*, 245,  
 247  
 of Ireland, 13\*, 100, 101\*,  
 102-103, 104-105, 106\*,  
 107\*, 153, 156  
 of Israel, 272  
 of Italy, 13\*, 40, 46-49  
 of Japan, 225-227, 228,  
 231-233  
 of Korea, 12\*, 235, 236-  
 237, 238\*  
 of Lapland, 145\*  
 of Malaya, 242  
 of Mediterranean lands,  
 28\*, 29\*  
 of Netherlands, 135-136  
 of Norway, 138, 143, 144  
 of Philippines, 240-241  
 of Poland, 155, 156  
 of Portugal, 62\*, 63\*, 67\*  
 of Rumania, 174, 175  
 of Saudi Arabia, 12\*, 24\*,  
 274  
 of Spain, 55, 58, 59  
 of Switzerland, 110, 113,  
 114\*  
 of Tibet, 215\*  
 of Thailand, 244  
 of Transjordan, 273  
 of Turkey, 33, 271  
 of U.S.S.R., 13\*, 184\*,  
 185\*, 186-187, 189-191,  
 197  
 of Yugoslavia, 172, 173\*  
*See also* Bedouins, Gyp-  
 sies, peasants, etc.  
**Perry, Commodore**, 219  
**Persian Gulf** (pār'zhān),  
 270  
**Peter, St.**, 33, 41  
**Peter the Great**, 196-197

**petroleum**, (pē.trō'lē.ām),  
 195, 243, 270, 273. *See*  
*also* miners and mining  
 and resource-product  
 maps  
**Philippine Islands** (fīl-  
 ī'pēn),  
 history, 240  
 regional study, 240-242  
 resource-product map,  
 248-249  
**Phoenicians** (fē.nīsh'ānz),  
 272  
**Pilsen** (pīl'zēn), Cz., 157  
**pipe line**, 24\*, 194, 272, 273  
**Piraeus** (pī.rē'ās), Gr., 180  
**pirates**, 144  
**pitchblende** (pīch'blēnd'),  
 157  
**plains**, 16\*, 165, 175, 240.  
*See also* surface  
**plant nursery**, 136  
**plastic** (plās'tīk), 127  
**Plateau of Anatolia** (ān'  
 ā.tō'l'yā), 271  
**Poland**, (pō'lānd),  
 history, 155-156  
 regional study, 154-155  
 resource-product map,  
 150-151  
**polar calms**, 22  
**polders** (pōldērz), 135  
**Polo, Marco** (pō'lō), 200,  
 215, 266  
**ponies**, 142\*  
**Pope Leo XIII**, 129  
**Pope Pius XII**, 42\*  
 to Italian potters, 47\*  
**Po River** (pō), 52  
**Portland cement**, 99  
**ports**, 61, 80, 91, 127, 133,  
 136, 143, 144, 155, 173,  
 180, 195, 196, 242, 258,  
 271, 273  
**Portugal** (pōr'tū.gāl), 60-68  
 history, 62-66  
 regional study, 61, 66-68  
 resource-product map,  
 60-61  
**port wine**, 61  
**potatoes**, 99, 101-102, 125,  
 157  
**potters and pottery**, 47\*,  
 136, 158\*, 231, 237  
**Poznań** (pōz'nān'y'), Pol.,  
 155  
**Prague** (prā'g) Cz., 157  
 Infant of, 158  
**precious stones**, 243, 266  
**precipitation**. *See* climate,  
 monsoons, and rainfall  
**printing**, 122, 200-201  
 picture story, 123-124  
**Propagation of the Faith**, 83  
**Protestantism** (prō'tēs.tānt-  
 iz'm), 111, 128, 129,  
 142, 177, 261  
**pumpkins**, 177  
**Pyrenees Mts.** (pī'rē.nēz),  
 61, 69, 80\*, 83

## Q

**quarrying** (kwōr'ī.ling), 99,  
 180  
**quicksilver** (kwīk'sīl'vēr),  
 60\*, 61  
**quinine** (kwī'nīn), 247, 266

# R

**racers**, 10-11, 240, 244, 245.  
*See also* people (of various countries)  
**radium** (rā'di.ūm), 157  
**railroads** (rāl'rōdz), 155, 157, 168, 175, 196, 242, 263  
**rainfall** (rān'fōl), 14, 26, 52, 61, 69, 85, 99, 118, 142, 148, 154, 157, 168, 171, 199, 218, 240, 242, 245, 255, 271, 273, 274  
**rayon** (rā'ōn), 81  
**Red Cross Society**, 111  
**"Reds."** *See* Iron Curtain and Communists  
**Red Sea**, 273, 274  
**reforestation** (rē'fōr.ēs.tā'shūn), 77, 83, 224. *See also* foresters and forestry  
**reindeer** (rān'dēr), 145  
**religions, pagan**, 210, 215-216, 217, 229-230, 254, 262. *See also* Moslems  
**resin** (rē'zīn), 83  
**revolution** (rēv'ō.lū'shūn), Christian, 41  
 French, 72  
 Russian, 187  
**Rhine River** (rīn), 118, 127, 128  
**Rhône River** (rōn), 80, 81  
**Ricci, Fr.** (rēt'ehē), 211  
**rice** (rīs), 52, 61, 177, 208-209, 220, 224, 235, 241, 242, 243, 247, 254, 266  
**Rieka.** *See* Fiume  
**rivers**, 69, 148, 218  
 Arno, 50  
 Brahmaputra, 251, 263  
 Danube, 157, 161, 162, 168, 169, 171, 174, 175  
 Don, 187  
 Ebro, 61  
 Elbe, 157  
 Euphrates, 19, 30, 270  
 Ganges, 251, 258, 263  
 Garonne, 80  
 Guadalquivir, 61  
 Hwang, 199-200  
 Indus, 263  
 Irkutsk, 195  
 Irrawaddy, 243  
 Lys, 132  
 Main, 122  
 Mersey, 91  
 Moray, 97\*  
 Nile, 31  
 Oder, 155  
 Po, 50, 52  
 Rhine, 118, 127, 128  
 Rhône, 80, 81, 83  
 Ruhr, 127  
 Seine, 83  
 Shannon, 105  
 Si, 200  
 Thames, 95  
 Tiber, 51  
 Tigris, 19, 30, 270  
 Vistula, 154-155  
 Volga, 194, 195  
 Weser, 118  
 Yangtze, 200, 205, 208  
 Zwyn, 132

**Riviera** (rē.vyā'rā), 81  
**Roman Empire**, 162, 172  
**Romania** (rō.mān'yā), history, 174. *See also* Balkan Peninsula  
 regional study, 174-175  
 resource-product map, 170-171  
**Romans**, 41, 110  
**Rome** (rōm), It., 41, 51.  
*See also* Vatican City  
**romes**, 258  
**roses**, 177  
**Rotterdam** (rōt'ēr.dām), Neth., 136  
**Rouen** (rō.ān'), Fr., 80  
**rubber**, 127, 242-243, 266  
**rubies**, 266  
**rugs**, 32, 175, 258, 267  
**Ruhr River** (rōor), 127  
**Ruhr Valley**, 127  
**Rupert, St.**, 162  
**Russ** (rūsh), 184-185  
**Russia** (rūsh'ā), 184-187.  
*See also* U.S.S.R.  
**Russian Orthodox Church**, 187  
**rye**, 118, 157

# S

**Saigon** (sī.gōn'), V.N., 242  
**St. Isaac's Cathedral**, 197  
**St. Petersburg**, 187. *See also* Leningrad  
**St. Peter's Church**, 43  
**Saints.** *See* names of  
**Sakha** (sāk'h.ān), 219  
**Salkanika** (sāl'nē'ka), Gr., 180  
**salt mine**, 156\*, 235  
**salt water**, feature story, 21  
**Salzburg** (sālzb'ürg), Aust., 162, 163  
**samovar** (sām'ō.vār), 187  
**Sancian I.** (sān'sl.ān), 211  
**sand**, 157  
**sandals**, 231  
**sandalwood**, 258  
**sapphires**, 266  
**Sara, St.**, 164  
**Saracens** (sār'ā.sēnz), 273  
**Sardinia** (sār.dīn'f.ā), 52  
**Saudi Arabia** (sā.sū'dī), 274  
 resource-product map, 268-269  
**savages**, 245  
**Saxons** (sāk'sūnz), 85, 132  
**Scandinavia** (skān'dī.nā'vī.ā), 140-145  
 history, 140-145  
 regional study, 138-144  
 resource-product map, 140-141  
**Scandinavian Peninsula**, 138, 140. *See also* Sweden and Norway  
**schools**, 48\*, 100, 108, 110, 114\*, 124\*, 130\*, 131\*, 149, 156, 187, 201, 211, 226\*, 227\*, 240, 261, 271  
 Asiatic, picture story, 246  
**Scotland** (skōt'lānd), 96, 99  
 resource-product map, 98-99

**Scottish Highlands**, 96  
**seaports.** *See* ports and individual names of cities  
**Seine River** (sān), 80  
**Serbia** (sēr'bl.ā), 172  
**serfs** (sērfs), 175, 186, 187  
**Severinus, St.**, 162  
**Seville** (sē.vīl'), Sp., 61  
**Shanghai** (shāng'hī'), Chin., 205  
**Shannon River** (shān'ūn), 104, 105  
**shepherds and sheep**, 61, 99, 165, 168, 171, 172, 174, 178, 195, 217, 263, 270, 271  
**Shinto** (shīn'tō'), 229  
**shipbuilding and shipyards**, 61, 99, 135-136, 219, 224  
**shipping**, 80, 99, 136, 162, 175, 195, 199, 205. *See also* ports  
 in Great Britain, picture story, 91-93  
**Siam** (sī.ām'), *See* Thailand  
**Siberia** (sī.bēr'f.ā), 18, 196  
 resource-product map, 194-195  
**Sicily** (sī.sī.lī), 52  
 resource-product map, 52-53  
**silk and silkworms**, 61, 81, 178, 205  
 in Japan, picture story, 178  
**silos**, 114  
**silt**, 251  
**Simeon Stylites, St.** (sī.mē'ōn), 33-34  
**Singapore** (sīng'gā.pōr), 243  
**singing towers**, 134  
**Sinkiang** (shīn'jī.āng'), 215  
 resource-product map, 212-213  
**Si River** (sī), 200  
**slaves**, 41, 86. *See also* Communists feature stories  
 Slavs, 155, 169, 184  
**sleighs**, 187, 196  
**Slovakia** (slō.vā'kl.ā\*), 158  
**Slovenia** (slō.vē'nī.ā), 172  
**snails**, 240  
**snakes**, 261, 266  
**Sofia** (sō'fī.ā), Bulg., 175-176  
**soil improvement**, 114-115  
**songs, folk**, 160  
**sorghum** (sōr'gām), 209, 255  
**Southampton** (sou.thām'tān), Eng., 91  
**South China**, 200  
**Southeastern Asia**, 240-249  
 resource-product map, 248-249  
**Southwestern Asia**, 267-274  
 resource-product map, 268-269  
**Soviet Union** (sō'vī.ēt), 182-197  
 history, 184-188, 196-197  
 regional study, 191-197  
 resource-product map, 194-195

**soybeans**, 200, 212\*  
**Spain** (spān), 55-61  
 history, 55-57  
 regional study, 57-61  
 resource-product map, 60-61  
**spices**, 266  
**Spitsbergen** (spīts'būr'gēn), Nor., 144  
**standard of living**, 143, 163  
**steel.** *See* iron and steel  
**Stephen, St.**, 165  
**Stepinac, Aichshagen** (stēp'fī.nāk), 173  
**Stettin** (shē.tēn'), Pol., 155  
**Stockholm** (stōk'hōm), Swed., 143  
**Stoke on Trent, Eng.**, 99  
**Strauss, Johann** (shtrous), 161\*  
**strawberries**, 219-220, 223  
**Sudeten Mts.** (sū.dē'tēn'), 154  
**sugar beets**, 54, 76, 125, 128, 157  
**sugar cane**, 175, 255  
**Sumatra** (sū.ō.mā'trā), 245  
 resource-product map, 248-249  
**surface**, of  
 Albania, 173  
 of Arabia, 273  
 of Austria, 161-162  
 of Balkan Peninsula, 169, 171, 172, 173, 174, 177  
 of Belgium, 128  
 of British Malaya, 243  
 of Bulgaria, 175  
 of Ceylon, 266  
 of China, 199, 215  
 of Crete, 180  
 of Czechoslovakia, 157  
 of Denmark, 141  
 of Finland, 148  
 of France, 69, 83  
 of Germany, 118  
 of Great Britain, 85, 96, 99  
 of Greece, 177  
 of Hungary, 165  
 of Iceland, 142  
 of India, 250-251  
 of Iran, 270  
 of Ireland, 104  
 of Israel, 273  
 of Italy, 40, 52  
 of Japan, 218, 231  
 of Netherlands, 135  
 of Norway, 138, 141, 144  
 of Pakistan, 263  
 of Philippines, 240  
 of Poland, 154  
 of Romania, 174  
 of Spain, 55, 61  
 of Sweden, 138, 141, 144  
 of Switzerland, 110, 114  
 of Tibet, 215  
 of U.S.S.R., 194  
 of Viet-Nam, 242  
 of Yugoslavia, 171, 172.  
*See also* mountains  
**Svalbard** (svā'fār), Nor., 144  
**swamps**, 173



Sweden (swɛ'd'n),  
history, 144-145  
regional study, 138, 140,  
142-143  
resource-product map,  
140-141  
Switzerland (swɪt'sɛr.lənd),  
history, 110-113  
regional study 110, 114-  
115  
resource-product map,  
116-117  
Syria (sɪ'rɪ.ə), 33, 270, 272  
resource-product map,  
268-269

## T

Taj Mahal (tāj mɑ.həl'),  
260  
Tatars (tɑ'tɜ:z), 186  
teakwood (tɛk'wɔ:ð), 245  
tea raising,  
in Ceylon, 266  
in China, 209-210  
in India, 254  
in Japan, 220-221  
in Java, 245\*  
Tehran (tɛ'hɾɑn'), Irn., 270  
Tel Aviv (tɛ'l.ə.vɛv'), Isr.,  
273  
tents, 273  
Teresa of Avila, St.,  
(ɑ'vɪ.lə), 56  
terraces, 219  
textiles (tɛks'tɪlz), 50, 80,  
155  
Thailand (tʰlænd), 244  
resource-product map,  
248-249  
Thames River (tɛmz), 95  
Thérèse of Lisieux, St.,  
(lɛ.zyʊ'), 83  
Thomas, St., 261  
Thomas Aquinas, St., 55  
Tiber River (tɪ'bɛr), 51  
Tibet (tɪ.bɛt'), 215-217  
resource-product map,  
212-213  
tidal wave, 218, 231  
tigers, 251\*  
Tigris River (tɪ'grɪs), 270  
timber. *See* lumbering and  
foresters and forestry  
Timor (tɪ'mɔ:), 245  
resource-product map,  
248-249

tin, 243  
Tirol (tɪ.rɔ'l'), 162, 163  
tobacco (tɔ.bək'o), 178, 247,  
271  
tokonoma, 233  
Tokyo (tɔ'ki.o), Jap., 218,  
228  
Tokyo Bay, 219  
tomatoes, 178\*  
tourists, 75, 81, 104\*, 105,  
143, 144, 157, 162\*, 274  
toys, 126, 224  
trade. *See* merchants and  
trade winds, 22, 273  
Transjordan (trɑns.jɔ:rd'n),  
273  
resource-product map,  
268-269  
transportation (trɑns'pɔ:rt-  
tɑ'shʌn), 51\*, 128, 148,  
168, 178, 187, 196, 199,  
200, 205, 217, 228, 242,  
274  
picture story, 206-207  
Trans-Siberian Railroad,  
195, 196  
Trieste, free port of (trɛ-  
sɛ'tɪ), 173  
Tripoli (trɪp'o.li), Leb., 270,  
272  
tulips, 136  
tundra (tʊn'drə), 195\*  
turf (tɜ:rf), 104-105  
Turin (tʊ'rɪn), It., 50  
Turkey (tɜ:rkɪ), 33-34, 270-  
271  
history, 33-34  
regional study, 270-271  
resource-product map,  
268-269  
turpentine (tɜ:pɛn.tɪn), 83  
typhoons (tɪ'fʊnz), 231, 240

## U

Ukraine (ʊ'kræn), 195  
U.N., 272  
feature story, 146  
unions, 108, 115  
for farmers, 130. *See also*  
guilds  
United Kingdom, 85, 99.  
S. Great Britain  
United Nations, 272  
feature story, 146

United States of Indonesia  
(ɪn'do.nɛ'zɪə), 245-247  
resource-product map,  
248-249  
Ural Mts. (ʊ'ræl), 194, 195  
Urga (ʊ:rkɪ), Mong., 217  
U.S.S.R.  
history, 184-188, 196-197  
regional study, 191-197  
resource-product map,  
194-195

## V

Val des Bois (væl dɑ bwɑ'),  
Fr., 72-73  
Valencia (və.lɛn'shə.lə), Sp.,  
61  
valleys, river, 200  
Vatican City (vətɪ'kæn), It.,  
picture story, 42-43  
vegetables, 68\*, 157, 177,  
215, 223, 247  
Venice (vɛn'ɪs), It., 50, 51\*  
Vesuvius, Mt. (vɛ.sʊ'vɪ.ʊs),  
40\*, 51  
Victoria (vɪk.tɔ:rɪ.ə), H.K.,  
205  
Vienna (vɪ.ɛn'ə), Aus., 161\*,  
162  
Viet-Nam (vɛ.ɪt.nəm), 242  
resource-product map,  
248-249  
Vikings (vɪ'kɪŋz), 144  
village life, 77\*, 154, 157,  
158, 168, 169, 173, 187,  
209-210, 236, 261, 262  
picture stories, 48-49, 225-  
227  
Vincent de Paul, St., 83  
vineyards (vɪn'yɜ:dz), 51,  
52, 75-76  
Vistula River (vɪs'tʊ.lə),  
154, 155  
Vladimir, Prince (vlədɪ'mɪr), 185  
Vladivostok (vlədɪ'vɔs-  
tɔk'), U.S.S.R., 195,  
196  
volcanoes (vɔl.kən'vɔz), 142,  
218, 240, 245  
Volga River (vɔl'gɑ), 194,  
195

## W

Wagner (væg'nɜ:), 126

Wales (wɔ:lz), 96, 99,  
resource-product map,  
98-99  
Walloons (wɔ.lʊnz'), 128  
walnuts, 77, 223  
Warsaw (wɔ:rsɔ'), Pol., 155  
watches, 114\*  
water bodies,  
feature stories, 4, 21  
water buffalo, 242\*, 254  
weather stations, 196  
weaving, 267\*, 240\*  
wells, 270, 273, 274. *See*  
*also* irrigation  
Wenceslaus, Good King  
(wɛn'sɛs.lɔs), 158  
Weser River (vɛ:zɜ:), 118  
westerlies, 22, 194  
wheat, 52, 99, 157, 159, 168,  
174, 220, 273  
White Sea, (hwɪt), 196  
wilt (wɪlt), 101  
windmills, 135  
wine, 75, 83, 126, 172, 178,  
273  
Wolgaw, St., (vɔlf'gɔng),  
165  
wool and wools, 61, 99,  
157, 255

## Y

yak (yæk), 215  
Yangtze River (yæŋg' sɜ:),  
200, 205, 208  
Yellow Plain, 205  
Yemen (jɛm'ɛn), 274  
resource-product map,  
268-269  
Yokohama (yɔ'kɔ.hɑ'mɑ'),  
Jap., 218, 219, 228  
Ysel, Lake (ɪ'sɛl), 135  
Yugoslavia (jʊ'gɔ.sliɑ'  
vlɑ'),  
history, 172. *See also* Bal-  
kan Peninsula  
regional study, 171, 172-  
173  
resource-product map,  
170-171  
yurts (yɜ:rtz), 217  
Z  
Zuider Zee (zi'dɜ: zɛ'), 135  
Zurich, Lake (zʊ:rk'ɪk), 111  
Zwyn River (zɪvɪn), 132

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors are indebted to these individuals and organizations for assistance in preparing this book:

Rev. John J. Considine, M.M.  
Rev. Albert J. Nevins, M.M.  
Maryknoll, N. Y.

Rev. Coleman A. Daily, S.J.  
New York City

Mr. John Conoyer  
St. Louis, University

Mr. James Woodworth  
Miss Helen Barrett  
Ossining, N. Y.

Rev. Carl Dreisoerner, S.M.  
Fribourg, Switzerland

Rev. José A. Sobrino, S.J.  
Mr. Pablo Merry del Val

Spanish Embassy,  
Washington, D. C.

Spanish Tourist Office  
New York City

Mr. Costa Brochado  
Lisbon, Portugal

Rev. Joseph Caccella (Portugal)  
New York City

Direção do Santuário de Fátima  
Cova da Iria, Portugal

Casa de Portugal  
New York City

Rev. G. Frederick Heinzmann, M.M.  
Rome, Italy

Rev. Louis A. Rongione, O.S.A. (Italy)  
Staten Island, N. Y.

Irish Consulate  
Irish Tourist Bureau  
New York City

Mr. Francis V. Scholes  
London, England

Archbishop J. B. Nigris  
Propagation of the Faith  
Rome, Italy

Mr. Robert Butts  
British Information Services  
New York City

Miss Marigold Hunt (Great Britain)  
New York City

Rev. H. Prouvost, M.E.  
Paris, France

Sister Caroline (France)  
Normandy, Mo.

Ambassade de France  
French National Tourist Office  
New York City

Mr. Arthur Egglings (Germany)  
Ossining, N. Y.

Mrs. Henry Laurent  
Belgian Information Bureau  
New York City

Sisters of the Most Precious Blood  
Helsinki, Finland

Rev. Francis W. Anderson, S.J. (Egypt)  
New York City

Egyptian State Department of Tourism  
New York City

Mr. John Briars  
Australian Information Bureau  
New York City

Rev. Robert Waelndner, M.M.  
Japan

Most Rev. Alcuin von Miltenburg,  
O.F.M.

Mother M. Bridget, F.M.C.K.  
New Catholic Colony

Karachi, Pakistan

## PICTURE CREDITS

A. B. C. Press Service, p. 130, center left.  
Charles Belden, p. 80, lower left; Belgian Government Information Center, pp. 130, top and middle, 131, top; Black Star, pp. 18, upper, 19, upper, 65, upper right, upper center, middle left and middle right, 114, lower, 176, 180, 191, center left, 193, upper right, 246, 247; British Information Service, pp. 78, right, 90, background, left and right, 102, lower.

Casa de Portugal, p. 62, upper and lower; Combine, pp. 94, upper left, 102, upper left, 104, upper left, 105, right center and lower right (insert); Cushing, pp. 12, lower left, 13, left, 49, middle right, 58, center, 94, upper right, 103, 104, upper right, 106, lower right, 106, lower insert, 135, insert, 206, lower left, 256, center and lower right, 260, 263, top, 273.

European Picture Service, pp. 49, lower center, 79, lower left, 131, upper right and upper left.

Franciscan Sisters of Christ the King, Karachi, Pakistan, p. 263, bottom; Free Lance Photographers Group, pp. 237, 259, top; French Embassy Information Service, pp. 70, 76, 78, upper left, upper center and upper right, 79, middle; French National Tourist Office, pp. 71, 81.

Ewing Galloway, pp. 6, 15, right, 17, left, 19, lower, 29, top right, 40, 58, upper left, 97, 104, center and lower, 105, lower right, 135, top, 146, right, 149, right, 158, 179, 191, lower, 215, top, 259, center left and center right, 262, left and upper right, 266; Philip Gendreau, pp. 10, left, 12, lower right, 13, right and lower left, 15, left, 16, 20, 29, upper right, 48, center right, 49, upper right, 54, 71, 77, 78, middle and upper left, 79, upper right and lower right, 87, left, 94, lower right, 95, bottom, 96, 100, 105, upper left, upper right and lower left, 106, lower right, 107, upper center, upper right and center right, 112, upper right, 118, background, 130, center right, 131, lower right, 136, 137, 145, 163, 168, 206, lower right, 207, upper left, and center right, 219, 223, 229, left, 242, 243, upper, 245, 251, 255, 256, upper, lower left, 257, 258, 259, lower left and lower right, 262, lower right, 272, right; Paul-Guillotte, Inc. p. 208, right.

Holiday Magazine, The Curtis Publishing Company, p. 107, lower.

Irish Press, p. 105, upper center; Irish Times, p. 106, center left; Irish Tourist Association, pp. 102, upper right, 106, top, center right and lower left, 107, upper left and center left.

Japan Institute, p. 220; Jesuit Missions, pp. 261, 270.

Life Magazine, photographer David D. Duncan, p. 24, photographer Mark Kauffman, p. 153, photographer Thomas McAvoy, p. 189, all Copyright Time Inc.

William McGreal, p. 142, top left and top right; Magnum, pp. 13, center right, 126, right; Maryknoll, pp. 10, right, 12, upper right, 13, center left, 18, insert, 28, center lower, lower left and lower right, 29, lower left and lower right, 32, 42, lower left, 43, upper right, center left and lower left, 48, balance, 49, lower right, 58, center right, 64, center, 65, middle center, 70, 74, 78, lower right, 80, center, 94, lower left, 112, lower, 114, center, 173, 199, 201, right, 206, upper left and upper right, 207, lower, 208, left, 210, 225, 226, 227, 228, right, 230, left and right, 241; Monkmeier, pp. 12, upper left, 28, upper left and center left, 29, right lower center, 51, 142, lower right, 174, 192, upper left and lower center right, 262, lower center.

National Film Board, p. 28, upper right; New York Times, p. 161.

Petits Chanteurs de Notre Dame, p. 112, upper left; Pix, pp. 42, center, 43, upper left, 49, lower left, 80, upper left, upper right and lower right, 123, 124, 139, 144, 201, left, 243, lower, 272, left; Press Association, pp. 64, upper 146, background, 178.

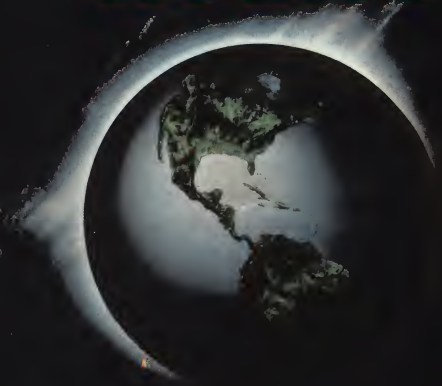
Religious News, pp. 17, right, 42, upper left, center left and insert left, 43, center right, lower right and lower left, 44, left lower center, 45, upper, 63, 65, lower right, 101, 131, lower left, 154, 156, 162, 164, 208, center, 215, insert, 230, center.

Francis V. Scholes, pp. 91, 92, 93, 97, insert; Shostal, pp. 21, photographer, B. Wall, 35, photographer Dave Forbert, 47, photographer, Dave Forbert; Sisters of the Most Precious Blood, Helsinki, p. 148; Soil Conservation Service, p. 27; Sovfoto, pp. 29, right upper center, 184, 185, 186, 191, top, 192, balance, 193, balance; Spanish Tourist Bureau, 58, upper right and lower; Stella Photo, Hauptstrasse, Einsiedeln, pp. 44, balance, 45, balance; Swiss National Tourist Office, pp. 113, 114, upper.

Three Lions, pp. 49, upper left, upper center and middle left, 64, lower left, lower center and lower right, 65, upper left, 67, 76, lower right and lower right insert, 118, left and right, 126, background and left, 130, bottom, 131, center right, 232, 238, 267, 271.

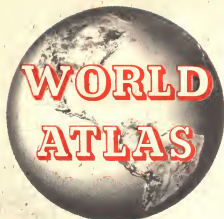
Wide World, pp. 68, 94, center left, 95, top, 191, center right, 207, upper right.

# WORLD ATLAS



*"The Earth in Space"*

THE CATHOLIC GEOGRAPHY SERIES



# INTRODUCTION

The pages of maps of this atlas cover the entire world. They have been collected together so that you can turn to them whenever you need a good map. The detailed maps are there for reference and they should be used constantly for obtaining all kinds of geographic information.

The maps employ different colors to indicate different political sub-divisions such as states and countries. Other symbols are used to show such features as mountains, large bodies of water, rivers, capital cities, etc. The relative size and importance of cities are indicated by the size of the type used to name them. A scale of miles is given with many of the maps so that the distance between places can be accurately measured. Parallels and meridians are indicated to help you locate places with respect to the equator and the prime meridian.

Get into the habit of consulting your atlas frequently. It will help you gain a better understanding of the way geography influences people's lives in our country and in other lands. Use the maps to make comparisons and to help you solve geographic problems. Your atlas should be used as a reference in just the same way as you use your dictionary or an encyclopedia.

# CONTENTS

WESTERN HEMISPHERE.....	Front Cover
EASTERN HEMISPHERE.....	Back Cover
THE WORLD	PLATE
(Mercator Projection).....	1
UNITED STATES.....	2-3
UNITED STATES	
Northeastern Section.....	4-5
UNITED STATES	
Southeastern and South Central Section ..	6-7
UNITED STATES	
North Central Section.....	8-9
UNITED STATES	
Western Section.....	10-11
ALASKA .....	11
HAWAII .....	11
NORTH AMERICA .....	12-13
SOUTH AMERICA.....	14-15
EUROPE .....	16-17
WESTERN AND CENTRAL EUROPE .....	18-19
BALKAN STATES .....	20
UNION OF SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLICS European Part .....	21
ASIA.....	22-23
AFRICA .....	24-25
AUSTRALIA AND NEW ZEALAND.....	26
ARCTIC OCEAN .....	27
ANTARCTICA.....	27
WORLD POLAR PROJECTION.....	28-29

Published by W. H. SADLER, INC., 11 Park Place, New York 7, N. Y.

Copyright by C. S. HAMMOND & CO. MCMLVII

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA





















**UNITED STATES**  
*Southeastern and  
South Central Section*

POLYCONIC PROJECTION

SCALE OF MILES

0 50 100 150 200 250

- National Capital
- State and Provincial Capitals
- International Boundaries
- State and Provincial Boundaries
- Canals

Copyright by C.S. HAMMOND & Co., N. Y.

















**NORTH AMERICA**

Compiled by G. S. HAMMOND & CO., N. Y.

SCALE OF MILES  
0 100 200 300 400 500 600 700

SCALE OF KILOMETERS  
0 100 200 300 400 500 600 700

National Capitals  
State & Provincial Boundaries

**CANAL ZONE**

SCALE OF MILES  
0 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90 100

SCALE OF KILOMETERS  
0 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90 100

National Capitals  
State & Provincial Boundaries

**Puerto Rico**

**Virgin Islands**

SCALE OF MILES  
0 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90 100

SCALE OF KILOMETERS  
0 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90 100

National Capitals  
State & Provincial Boundaries

# SOUTH AMERICA

LAMBERT AZIMUTHAL EQUAL-AREA PROJECTION

SCALE OF MILES

0 100 200 400 600

SCALE OF KILOMETERS

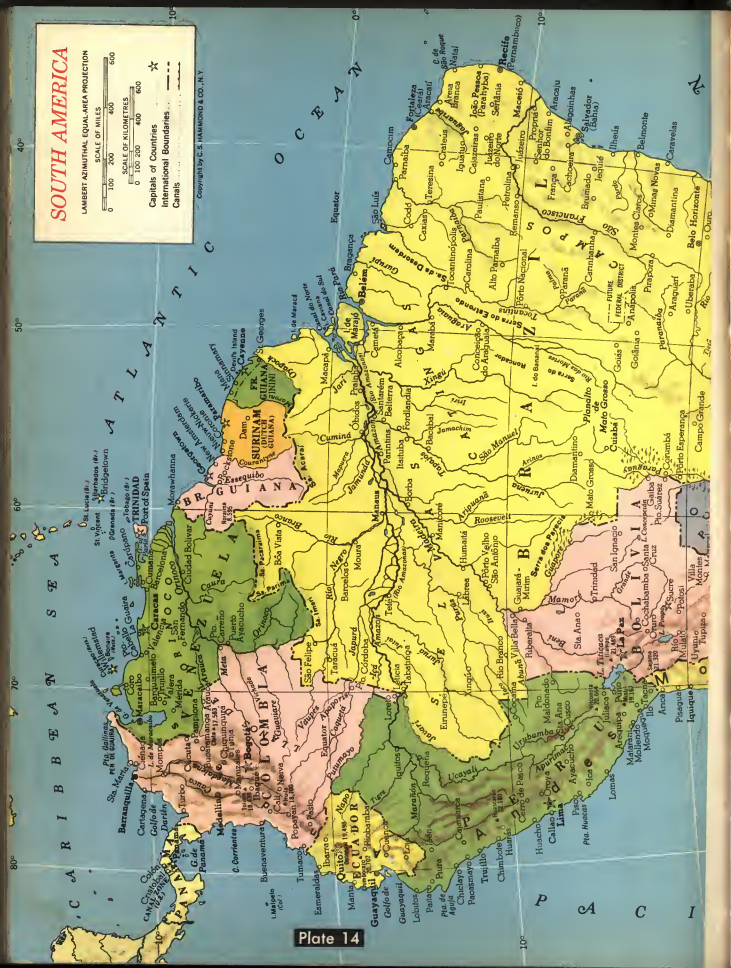
0 100 200 400 600

Capitals of Countries

International Boundaries

Canals

Copyright by C.S. HAMMOND & CO., N.Y.





















# UNION OF SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLICS

European Part

CONIC PROJECTION



National Capitals  
Capitals of Union Republics  
International boundaries  
Union Republic boundaries  
Canals

Copyright by C. S. HAMMOND & CO., N. Y.



The government of the United States does not recognize the incorporation of Estonia, Latvia and Lithuania into the Soviet Union. Post-war territorial changes shown on this map do not necessarily represent the final status of such boundaries. Only after the signing of peace treaties can changes be considered official and definite.











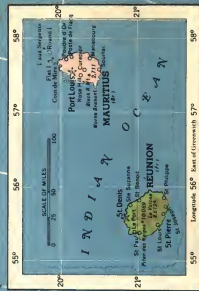


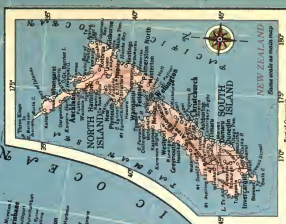
Plate 25



**AUSTRALIA  
AND  
NEW ZEALAND**



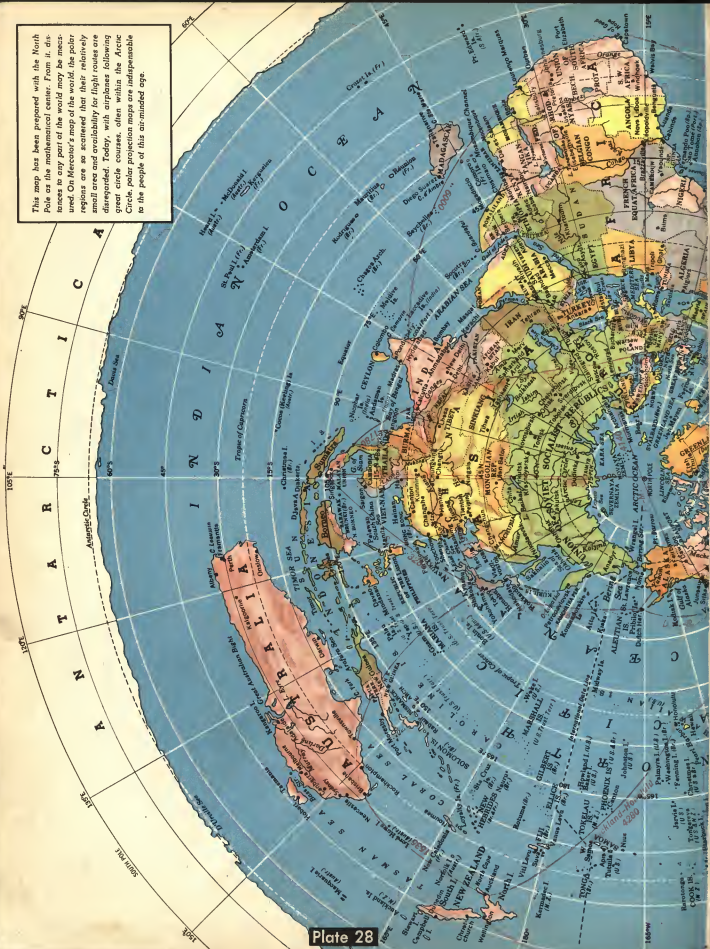
Plate 26





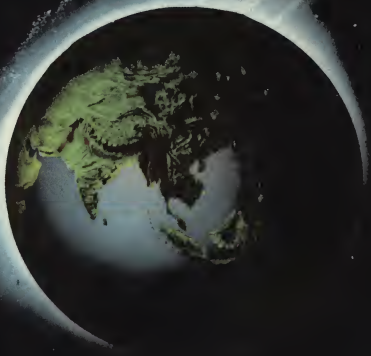


This map has been prepared with the North Pole as the mathematical center. From it, distances to any part of the world may be measured. On Mercator's map of the world, the polar regions are so scattered that their relatively small area and availability for flight routes are disregarded. Today, with airplanes following great circle courses, often within the Arctic Circle, polar projection maps are indispensable to the people of this air-minded age.





The Air Age is making great changes in the lives of people all over the earth. The greatest permanent change will result from increased use of the air for transportation. The airplane is free to move in any direction. This has made possible new routes of travel that will save thousands of miles over the old routes that crossed the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian oceans. In flying from our country to parts of Europe and Asia, for example, the shortest routes cross the North Polar Region. This map shows why these routes are shorter, and so it is useful in mapping great circle routes. Any straight line drawn through the North Pole on this map projection represents a great circle route. A straight line drawn between two places on any other map projection would not indicate the shortest route.



*"The Earth in Space"*

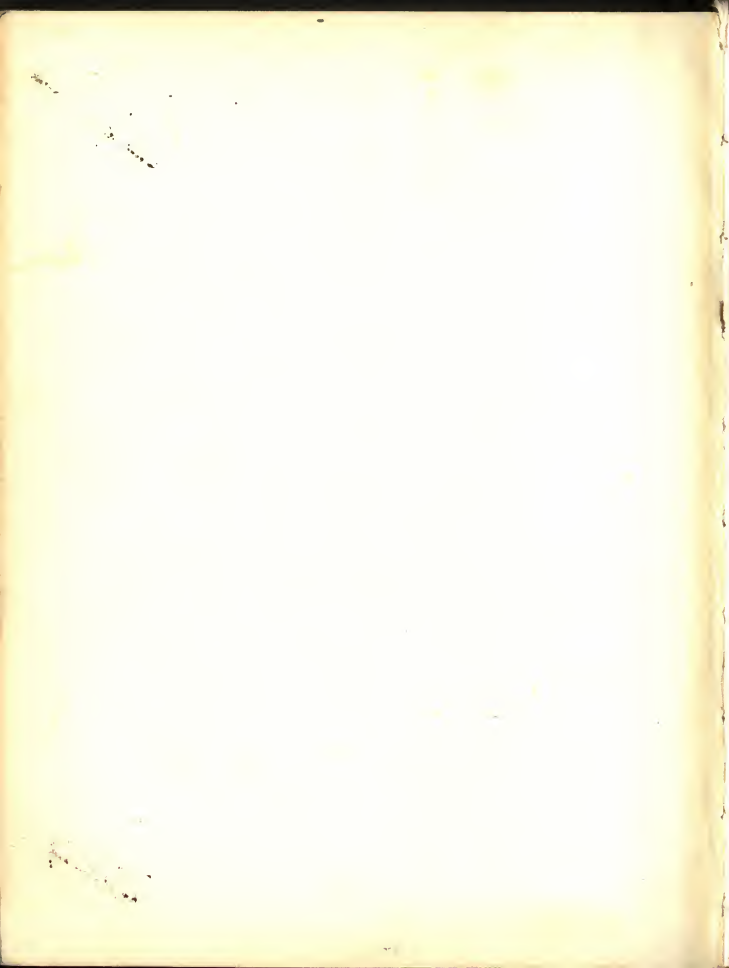
NEW YORK

W. H. SADLER, INC.

CHICAGO









*[Faint, illegible handwritten text]*